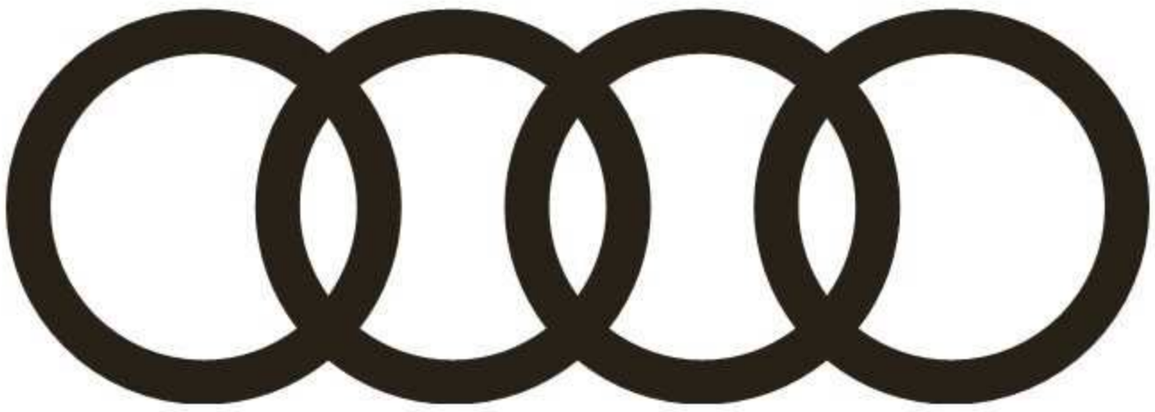


Owner's Manual

2020 R8

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi – we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment that a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle, and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

4S1012721BA

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 5

Summary 6
Quick access 6
Cockpit overview 6
Indicator lights overview 7

Display and operation 10
Instrument cluster 10
Instrument cluster overview 10
Coolant temperature indicator 10
Tachometer 11
Odometer 11
Outside temperature display 11
Fuel level 12
Multifunction steering wheel 12
Vehicle functions 14
Messages 16

Starting and driving 21
Opening and closing 21
Central locking 21
Luggage compartment lid 27
Power windows 28
Garage door opener 29

Power top 32
Automatic power top 32
Wind deflector 34
Rear window 35
Power top emergency operation 35

Lights and Vision 40
Exterior lighting 40
Interior lighting 45
Vision 45
Windshield wipers 47
Digital compass 49

Seats 50
General information 50
Front seats 50

Stowing and using 53
Power sources 53
Storage 53
Luggage compartment 54

Warm and cold 56
Climate control system 56

Driving 59
General information 59
Steering 60
Starting and stopping the engine 60
Start/Stop system 62
Electromechanical parking brake 65
Starting to drive 66
Sporty driving 67
Automatic transmission 67
Trailer towing 73

Driver assistance 74
Assist systems 74
Speed warning system 74
Cruise control system 74
Lap timer 76
Audi drive select (drive settings) 78

Parking aid 81
Introduction 81
Parking system plus 81
Rearview camera 83
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 84
Error messages 85

Intelligent Technology 86
Electronic stabilization control (ESC) 86
Brakes 88
Steering 89
All wheel drive (quattro) 89
Rear spoiler 90
Energy management 91
Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules 91

Infotainment system 93
Multi Media Interface 93
Traffic safety information 93
Introduction 93
MMI On/Off knob with joystick function . . 93
MMI operation 94
MMI touch 95
Control knob with joystick function 97

Letter/number speller 99
Free text search 100
Menus and symbols 101

Voice recognition system 104
Operating 103
Command overview information 104
Commands 105

Telephone 110
Introduction 110
Setup 110
Using the Audi phone box 112
Using the telephone 114
Favorites 116
Messages 117
Listening to voicemail 119
Emergency call functions 120
Directory 120
Settings 122
Safety belt microphone 122
Troubleshooting 123

Audi connect 124
General information 124
Audi connect Infotainment 124
Using a Wi-Fi hotspot 126
Audi connect Infotainment services 126
Settings 128
Data Privacy 130
Troubleshooting 130

Navigation 131
Opening navigation 131
Entering a destination 132
Home address 136
Favorites 136
Directory contacts 137
Additional settings 137
Map 139
Satellite map 142
Accessing traffic information 142
Troubleshooting 145

Radio 146
Opening the radio 146
Radio functions 146
Radio menu 148
Presets 148
Additional settings 149
Troubleshooting 149

Media 150
Introduction 150
Notes 150
Media drives 151
Bluetooth audio player 153
Wi-Fi audio player 153
Online media and Internet radio 154
Multimedia connections 155
Playing media 157
Additional settings 160
Supported media and file formats 162
Troubleshooting 163

Audi smartphone interface 165
Setup 165
Operating 166
Troubleshooting 166

System settings 167
Setting the date and time 167
MMI settings 167
Connection manager 168
System update 170
Sound settings 171
Volume settings 171
Restarting the MMI (reset) 172
Software license information 172

Safety first 173
Safe driving 173
Basics 173
Correct passenger seating positions 174
Driver and passenger side footwell 176
Pedal area 176
Active rollover protection system 177

Safety belts 180
General notes 180
Why safety belts? 181
Safety belts 183
Safety belt tensioner 185

4S1012721BA

Airbag system 187
Important information 187
Front airbags 191
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 198
Knee airbags 202
Side airbags 204
Side curtain airbags 207

Child safety 211
Important information 211
Child safety seats 216
Securing child safety seats 220
Additional information 224

Maintenance and Care 226
Checking and Filling 226
Fuel 226
Refueling 227
Emissions control system 228
Engine compartment 229
Engine oil 233
Cooling system 236
Brake fluid 239
Electrical system 240
Battery 240
Windshield washer system 242
Service interval display 243

Wheels 244
Wheels and Tires 244
Tire pressure monitoring system 261

Care and cleaning 265
General information 265
Car washes 265
Cleaning and care information 266
Taking your vehicle out of service 270

Do It Yourself 271
Emergency assistance 271
General information 271
Equipment 271
Tire mobility kit 271
Replacing wheels 273
Jump starting 277
Towing 278

Fuses and bulbs 281
Fuses 281
Bulbs 282

Customer information 284
Accessories and technical changes 284
Warranty 284
Audi Literature Shop 284
Driving in other countries 284
Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications 284
Accessories and parts 286
Reporting Safety Defects 286
Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems 287

Technical data 289
Identification data 289
Vehicle data 289

Index 291

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustration.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING”within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

4S1012721BA

Quick access

Cockpit overview

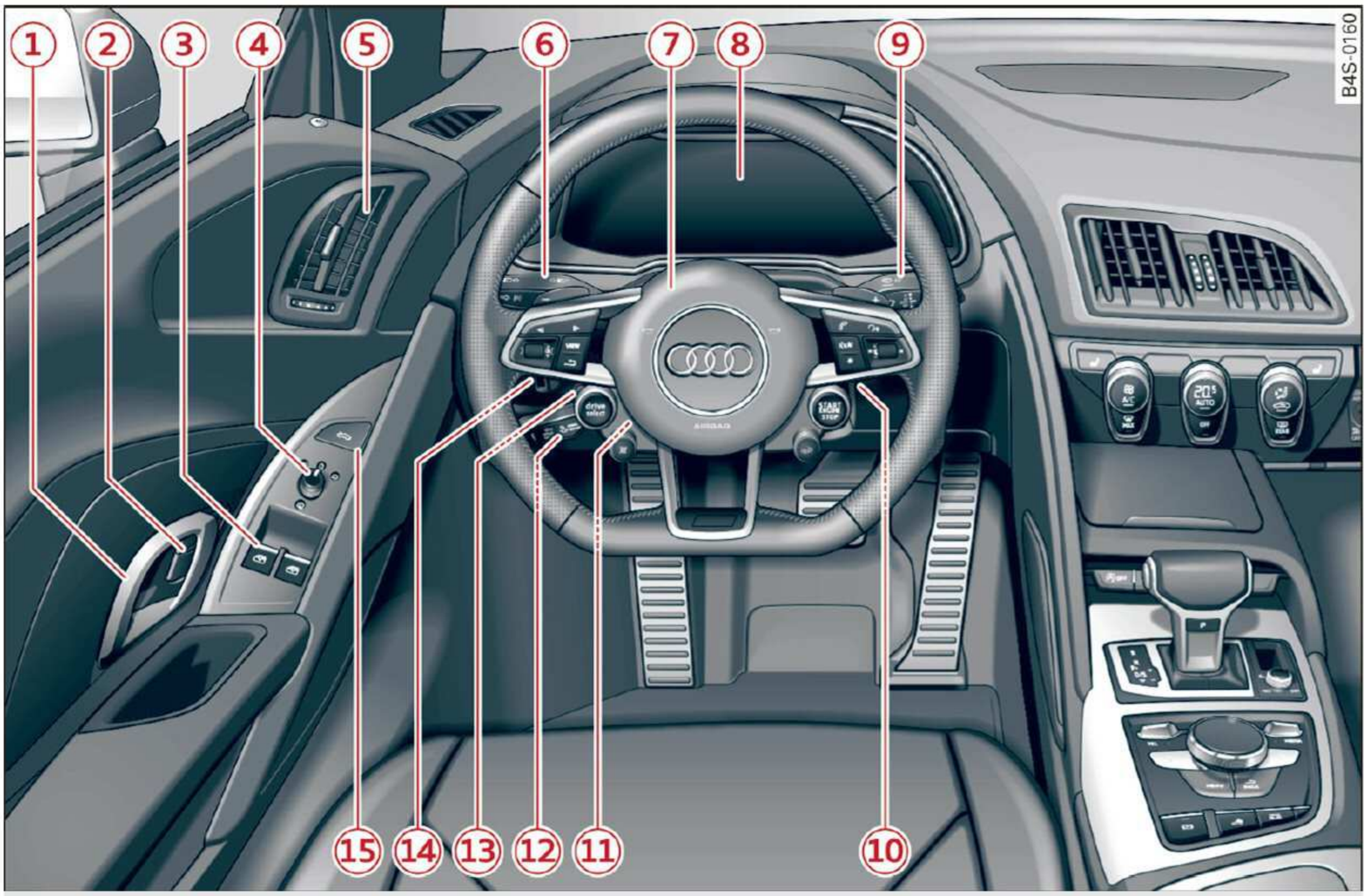


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

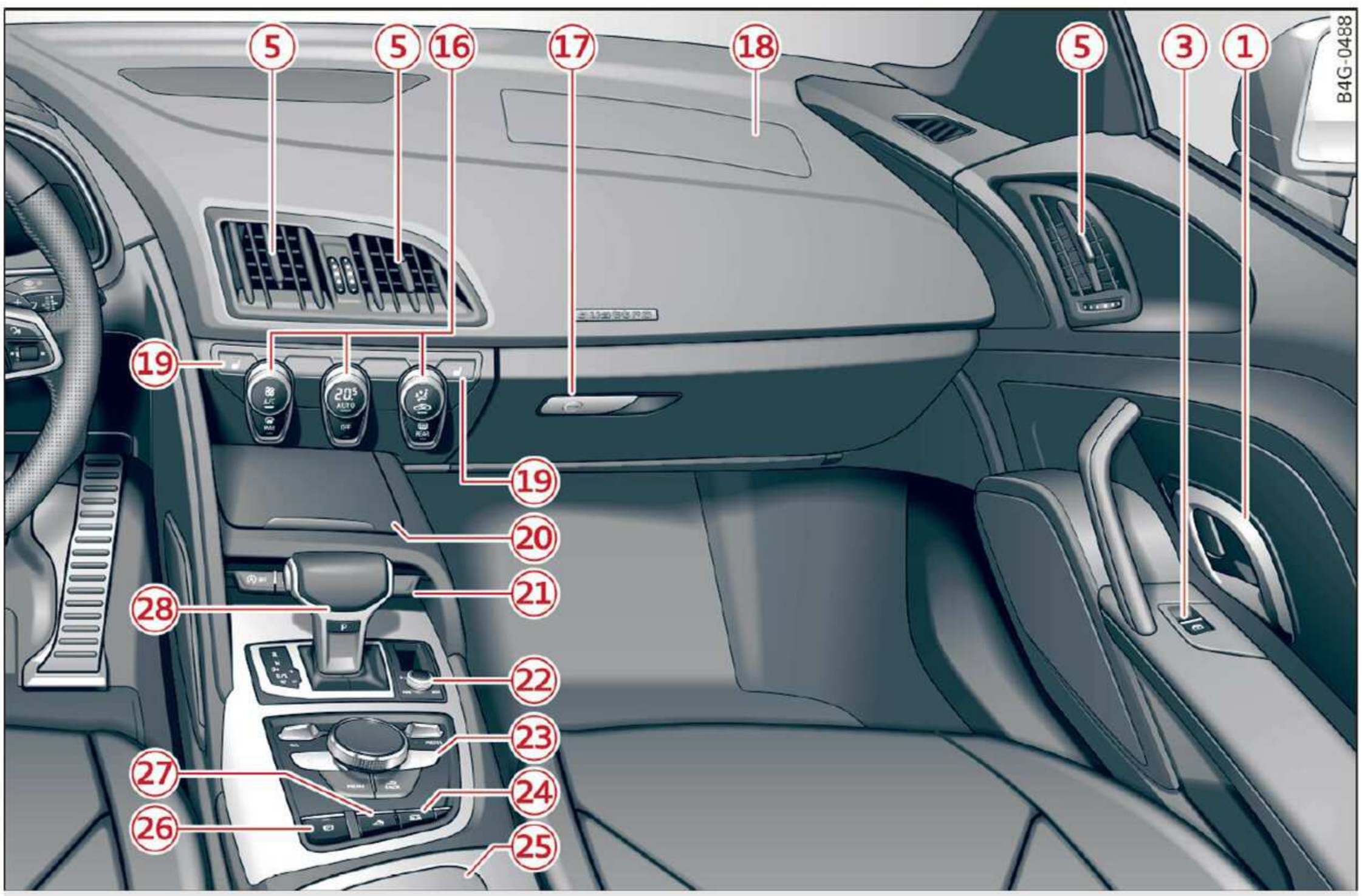


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Door handle
② Central locking switch 25
③ Power windows 28
④ Power exterior mirror adjustment . 45
⑤ Air vent with thumbwheel
⑥ Lever for:
– Turn signals and high beams 42
– High beam assistant 43
⑦ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 191
– Buttons for the virtual instrument cluster, including the driver information system, audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition system 12
– Shift paddles 71
– START ENGINE STOP button . . . 60
– Sound button for exhaust door control
– Audi drive select button 78
– Performance mode button 79
⑧ Audi virtual cockpit (instrument cluster) 10
⑨ Windshield washer system lever . . 47
⑩ Starting the engine if there is a malfunction 62
⑪ Adjustable steering column 60
⑫ Cruise control lever 74
⑬ Instrument illumination 45
⑭ Headlight control switch 40
⑮ Luggage compartment release . . . 27
⑯ Controls for climate control system . 56
⑰ Lockable glove compartment
⑱ Front passenger's airbag 191
⑲ Seat heating 58
⑳ Depending on equipment, center console with:
– Socket 53
– Multimedia compartment for cell phone 156
– Audi phone box 112
㉑ Depending on equipment, buttons for:
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 86
– Emergency flashers 44
– Retractable rear spoiler 90
㉒ Infotainment system on/off button . 93
㉓ Infotainment system unit 93
㉔ Button for rear window operation . 35
㉕ Depending on equipment:
– Storage compartment
– Cup holder 53
㉖ Parking brake 65
㉗ Power top button 32
㉘ Selector lever (S tronic) 67

Tips

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

Indicator lights overview

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages may be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the second tab for messages with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 12*.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

The following indicator lights may be available, depending on the vehicle equipment: ▶

4S1012721BA

Red indicator lights

BRAKE	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
(!)	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
PARK	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 17*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 17*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 233*
MIN	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 233*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 240*
	Engine stop while driving ⇨ *page 18*
	Engine control ⇨ *page 19*
	Safety belt ⇨ *page 18*
	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 89*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 18*
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 19*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 18*
	Transmission malfunction ⇨ *page 72*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 90*

Yellow indicator lights

	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 18*
OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 18*
ABS	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 18*
(ABS)	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 18*
	Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 16*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 17*
(!)	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 261*
TPMS	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 261*
	Engine control ⇨ *page 19*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 229*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 11*
MIN	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 233*
MAX	Engine oil level (MAX) ⇨ *page 233*
SENSOR	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 233*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 240*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 19*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 19*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 19*
?	Remote control key ⇨ *page 61*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 23* ▶

	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 19*
	Headlight range control system ⇨ *page 19*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 20*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 20*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 72*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 18*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 18*
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 19*
	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 89*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 20*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 90*
	All wheel drive ⇨ *page 20*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 20*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 75*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 75*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 62*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 17*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 72*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 17*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 17*

	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 74*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 74*
	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 74*
	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 74*
	High beams ⇨ *page 43*
	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 43*
	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 43*
	Laser lights ⇨ *page 41*

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview (Audi virtual cockpit)

① Engine coolant temperature ... 10
② Left dial
– Tachometer ... 11
③ Tab area
④ Central area
⑤ Status line (one or two lines)
⑥ Right dial
– Convenience display
⑦ Fuel level ... 12
⑧ Right additional display with speedometer
⑨ Left additional display with:
– Gear ... 67
– Audi drive select mode ... 78

Tips

- You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the Infotainment system.
- Speeds are displayed in mph (miles per hour) or km/h (kilometers per hour).
- If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature display ① ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To reduce the risk of engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 17*.

Note

- Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load. ▶

– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer (2) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the "D" or "S" selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed limitation

If the indicator light turns on, the engine will be automatically limited to the RPM displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

The needle in the tachometer may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time before there is a risk of damaging the engine. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

Odometer



Fig. 4 Instrument cluster: odometer and reset button

The trip odometer and odometer are displayed in the status line (5) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3*.

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Resetting the trip odometer

▸ Press the reset button 0.0 on the instrument cluster. The trip odometer will be reset to zero.

Tips

Distances are displayed in mi (miles) or km (kilometers).

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line (5) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3*.

If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to heat radiating from the engine.

At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the ▶

outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Fuel level

The display ⑦ ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* only works when the ignition is switched on. When the display has reached the reserve mark, a red LED turns on and the ⛽ indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 19*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 290*.

Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Multifunction steering wheel

Operating

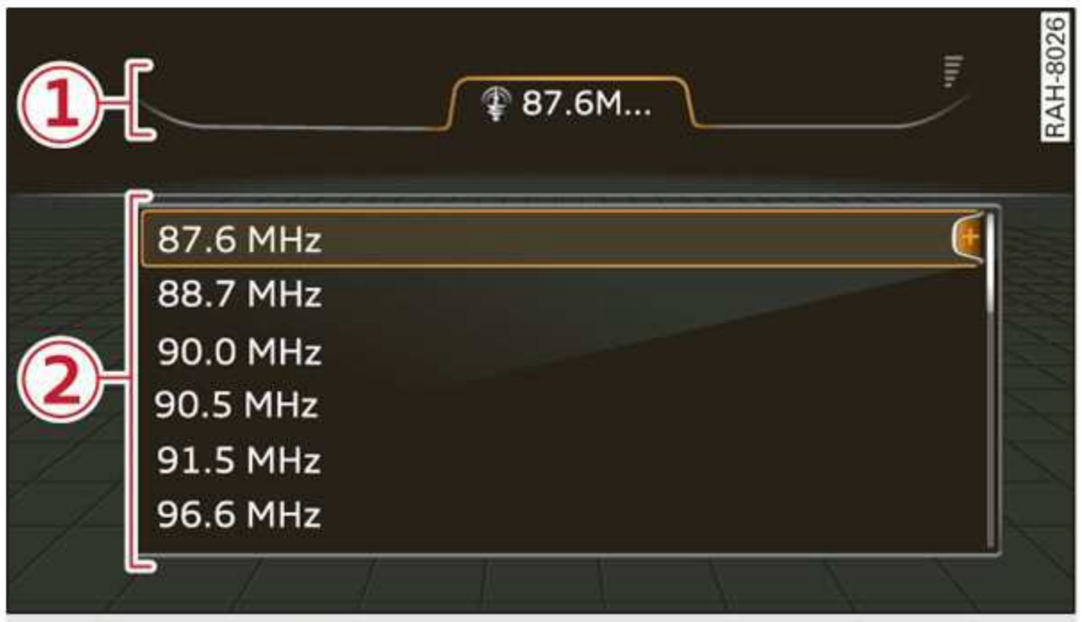


Fig. 5 Driver information system display

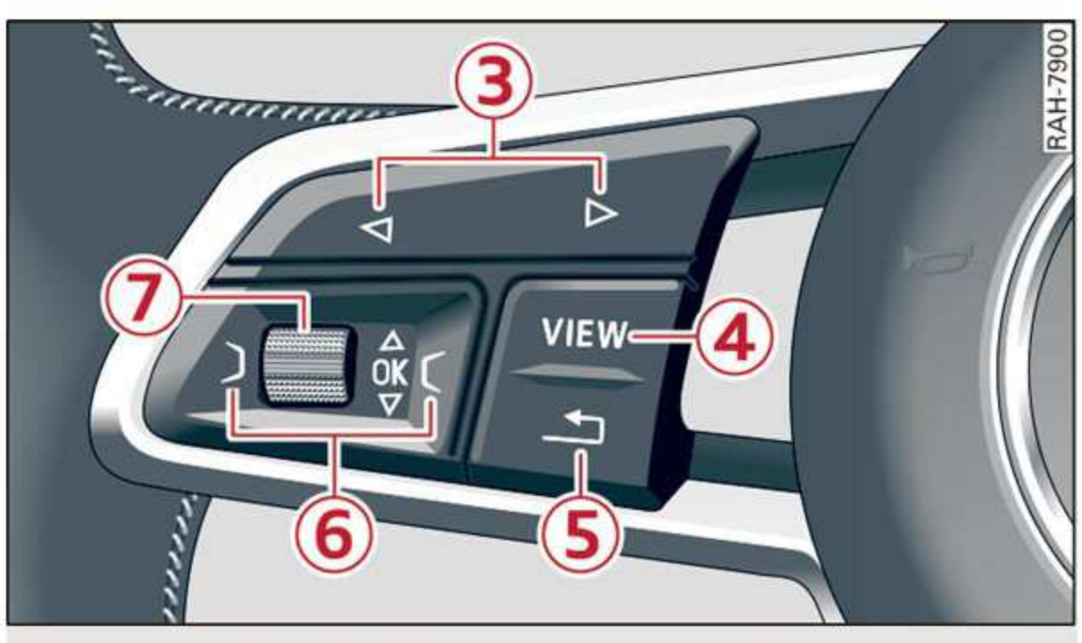


Fig. 6 Left side of multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: The ignition must be switched on.

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① that display various information ②.

The following tabs may be available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle functions
Second tab	Driver messages (this is only displayed if at least one indicator light/message is being displayed) ⇨ *page 16*
Third tab	Radio ⇨ *page 146*
	Media ⇨ *page 150*
Fourth tab	Telephone ⇨ *page 110*
Fifth tab	Navigation ⇨ *page 131*
	Map ⇨ *page 139*
Sixth tab	Sound⇨ *page 167*
	Audi connect ⇨ *page 124*
	Settings ⇨ *page 167*

③ ◁ ▷ button

Switching tabs: press the ◁ ▷ button repeatedly until the desired tab is shown (for example, Radio).

④ VIEW button

Changing the view ⇨ *page 13*.

⑤ ⮌ button

Return to functions at higher levels.

⑥ ❩ and ❨ control buttons

Open/close the selection menu or options menu ⇨ *page 13*.

⑦ Left thumbwheel

– **Selecting a function in a menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function in a menu or list (such as selecting a station, Lap times*).
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel (for example, confirm the station).
– **Zooming in or out on the map**: when a map is displayed, turn the left thumbwheel up/down to zoom in/out on the map.

Control buttons

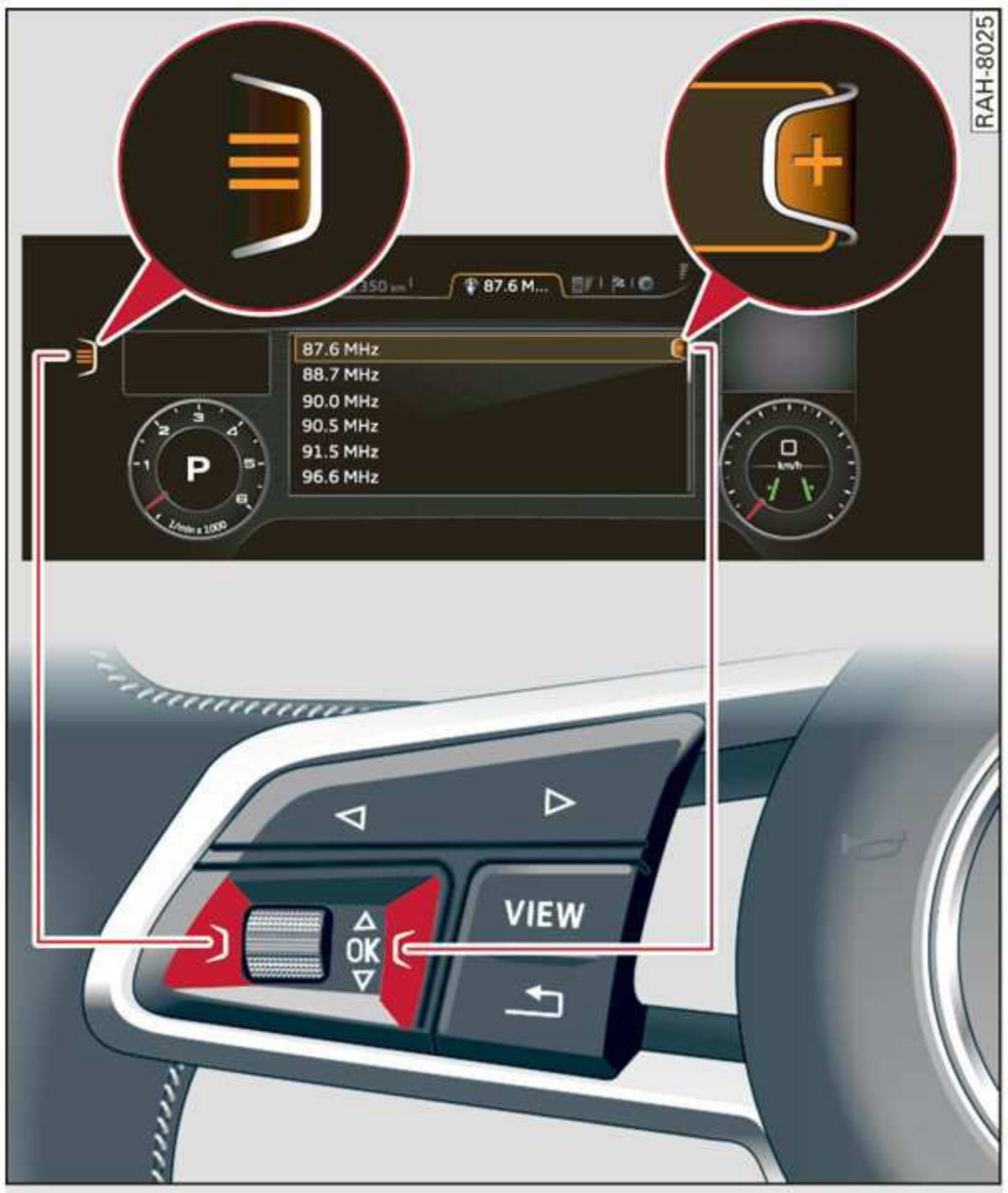


Fig. 7 Opening the selection and options menu

Left control button

– **Opening and closing a selection menu**: Press the respective left control button on the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 7*. You can now select and confirm a function in the selection menu using the left thumbwheel (for example, selecting a frequency band).

Right control button

– **Opening and closing the options menu**: Press the respective right control button on the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 7*. You can now adjust any context-dependent functions and settings using the left thumbwheel (for example, sound settings).

Switching views



Fig. 8 Standard view: classic/sport



Fig. 9 Enhanced view

Switching the view

- Press the VIEW button ④ ⇨ *page 12, fig. 6* to switch from the default view ⇨ *fig. 8* to the enhanced view ⇨ *fig. 9*.
- To return to the default view, press the VIEW button again.

Setting the default view

- Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Layout** > **Sport layout** or **Classic layout**.

Adjusting the additional display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the additional displays that can be selected may vary.

- ▸ Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ Select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Additional display**.
- ▸ Select the desired additional display.

Tips

Always set the desired default view before driving, because the display functions will not be available for several seconds.

Preset buttons

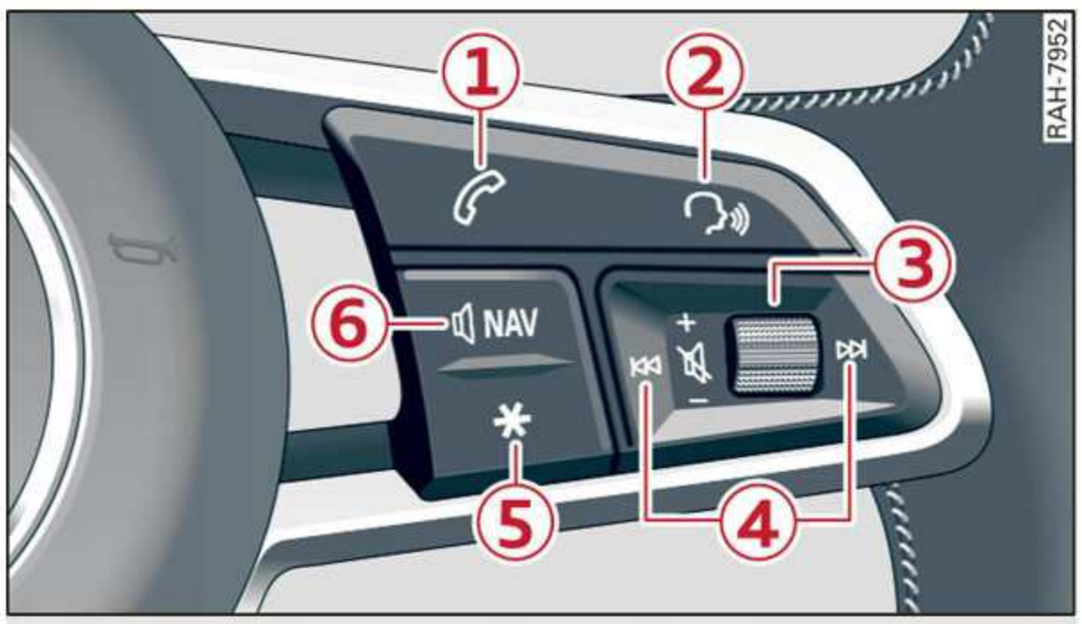


Fig. 10 Multifunction steering wheel, right side

① ✆ button

– **Accepting a call**: press the ✆ button when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a call**: press the ✆ button during a phone call to end the call.
– **Opening the call list**: if no phone call is in progress and there are no incoming calls, press the ✆ button.

② button

– **Switching the voice recognition system on**: briefly press the button. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.
– **Switching the voice recognition system off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, see ⇨ *page 104, Voice recognition system*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel up. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.

④ ⏮ ⏭ button

– **Selecting the previous/next track or station**: press the ⏮ or ⏭ button.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding audio files**: press and hold the ⏮ or ⏭ button until the desired location in the file is reached.

⑤ ✳ button

– **Programmable steering wheel button - opening a function**: press the ✳ button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - requesting a function**: press and hold the ✳ button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - changing a function**: select the first tab > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

⑥ NAV button

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the NAV button when route guidance is active.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: when route guidance is active, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward during a navigation prompt.

Vehicle functions

On-board computer

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to access the following information in this order on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* ④:

– Time and date ⇨ *page 167*
– Average consumption
– Short-term memory overview ▶

– Long-term memory overview
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 15*
– Driver assistance
– Traffic sign recognition

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Energy consumers*

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three equipment items. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A chart also shows you the current total of all other consumers.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel through one of the following functions:

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar will move toward .

Engine oil and transmission temperature indicator

Applies to: Engine oil and transmission temperature indicator

The engine oil and transmission temperature indicator are only shown in the enhanced view or in the sport view ⇨ *page 13*.

Engine oil temperature indicator

The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176 °F (80 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the ⇨ *page 233* or ⇨ *page 233* indicator lights do not turn on.

Transmission temperature indicator

The current transmission temperature is indicated by a bar.

Shift light indicator

Applies to: vehicles with shift light indicator

The shift light indicator informs the driver when the rpm limit is reached.

Accessing the shift light indicator

Requirement: tiptronic mode must be activated ⇨ *page 71*.

▸ Select the sport view ⇨ *page 13*. The shift light indicator is displayed with green, yellow and red ranges in the upper areas of the tachometer.

The shift light indicator will blink red when approaching the engine speed limit. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time.

Sport displays

Applies to: vehicles with sport displays

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the sport displays may include the G-meter, the engine data and the tire pressure monitoring system. You can access the sport displays in the central area or in the additional display in the driver information system.

Accessing the sport displays in the central area

▸ Open the first Vehicle tab (trip computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
▸ Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Sport displays**.
▸ Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until the desired sport display appears in the instrument cluster. ▶

Accessing the sport displays in the additional display

- ▸ Select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Additional display**.
- ▸ Select the desired additional display.

G meter*

The G meter displays the longitudinal and lateral acceleration. The maximum values that are reached are stored and displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▸ To reset the stored values, select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Reset values**.

Engine data*

The engine data displays the current power and torque.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

The tire pressure monitoring system displays the current tire pressures and temperature. Also see ⇨ *page 261, Tire pressure monitoring system*.

Messages

BRAKE/(!)/(○) Brake system

If this indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

BRAKE (!) Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE / (!) Warning! No brake booster function

If the brake booster is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE / (!) Brakes: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

If ABS / (ABS) and (car) also turn on, there is a malfunction in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE / (!) Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
– If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

The (○) indicator light turns on when the brake pads are worn. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the brake pads checked.

Applies to: USA models: The (○) indicator light turns on together with the BRAKE indicator light.

⚠ WARNING

– If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may be malfunctioning. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the ▸

vehicle will slide. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the malfunction corrected.

PARK/Ⓟ/Ⓟ Electromechanical parking brake

If the PARK / Ⓟ indicator light turns on, the parking brake has been set.

PARK / Ⓟ Parking brake: warning! Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away, even on a small incline.

Ⓟ Parking brake: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

PARK BRAKE / Ⓟ Parking brake: warning! Vehicle parked too steep

There is not enough braking force to hold the vehicle in place. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away, even on a small incline.

PARK BRAKE / Ⓟ Parking brake: applied

If this message appears, press the brake pedal first and then release the parking brake if necessary.

Tips

For additional information on the parking brake, see ⇨ *page 65*.

Cooling system

Turn off engine and check coolant level. See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 236*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 237*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run while vehicle is stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

– Never open the engine compartment lid if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine compartment with caution.
– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 229, General information*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the indicator light turns on as this increases the risk of engine damage.

Safety systems

The indicator light monitors the safety systems.

Safety system

If the indicator light turns on or blinks, there is a malfunction in a safety system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

WARNING

Have the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during a collision, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Safety belt

The indicator light stays on until the driver's and front passenger's* safety belts are fastened. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

Tips

For additional information on safety belts, see ⇨ *page 180*.

Steering lock

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Engine start system

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the engine start system.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Engine stop while driving

If the indicator light turns on, there may be a malfunction in the engine or fuel supply.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is fully functional.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was switched off using the OFF button ⇨ *page 87*.

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual ▶

If the indicator lamp and the ABS / ABS indicator lamp turn on and the driver message appears, the ABS or electronic differential lock is malfunctioning. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, see ⇨ *page 86*.

Engine control

If the / indicator light turns on, there is an engine control malfunction. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

Central indicator light

If the or indicator light turns on, check the message in the instrument cluster.

Tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 3.3 gallons (12 liters) of fuel left in the tank.

Please refuel immediately

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the fuel tank is almost empty. Refuel the vehicle immediately.

Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the tank system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

For the sake of the environment

Fuel should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.

Tips

For more information on fueling, see ⇨ *page 227*.

Washer fluid level

If the indicator light turns on, the washer fluid is almost out. Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *page 242*.

Windshield wipers

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a windshield wiper malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Bulb failure indicator

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

Replace the bulb immediately.

Vehicle lights: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Headlight range control system

Headlight range control: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers. ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the adaptive lights. The headlights still function.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Light/rain sensor

Applies to: vehicles with light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual

Automatic wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. You can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all wiper functions that are independent of the rain sensor.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a malfunction in the suspension control. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

All wheel drive

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

All-wheel drive: malfunction! You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the all wheel drive.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

All-wheel drive: too hot. Please adapt driving style. See owner's manual

The all wheel drive temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

Turn signals

If the or indicator light blinks, a turn signal is turned on. If both indicator lights are blinking, the emergency flashers are on.

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 23*
– Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 24*
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 26*, or
– Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 25*

Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

The vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the central locking system switch is used or one of the door handles is pulled.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective door unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 25*.

Turn signals

The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If the blinking continues, one of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is not closed or the ignition is still switched on.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and the remote control key is not in the vehicle. This reduces the risk of locking yourself out accidentally.

The following conditions prevent you from locking your remote control key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or by touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– If the most recently used convenience key* is inside the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid will automatically open again after closing it.
– If the last convenience key* that was used is detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside for a brief time ⇨ (!).

Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

– If the convenience key* that was last used is detected inside the passenger compartment, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. If you do not open the vehicle within a short time to remove the vehicle key, then the vehicle will lock automatically. This prevents the vehicle from being left unlocked for long periods of time. The key will then be locked inside the vehicle.
– If the convenience key* that was used last is detected inside the luggage compartment, it will not be possible to lock the luggage compartment and the luggage compartment lid will open. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. The doors will lock. Always take the convenience key with you, or unauthorized people may be able to enter the vehicle.

Tips

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

4S1012721BA

Key set

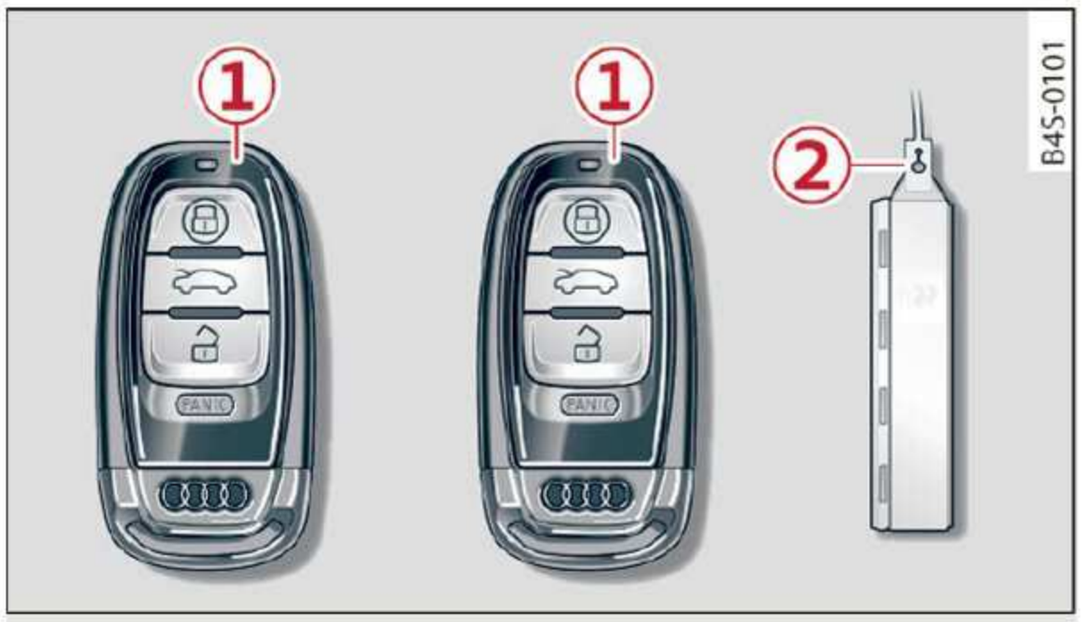


Fig. 11 Your vehicle key set

① Remote or convenience key*

The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 24* and ⇨ *page 60*.
You can unlock/lock your vehicle with the remote control key. A mechanical key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 23*.

② Key tag with vehicle code*

The vehicle code* on the key tag can be rubbed off. It does not have a function.

Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have *this* key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. To do this, select the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle may not be able to start if there is a remote control key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the master key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your convenience key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs.

Personal convenience settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses “their own” master key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

– Climate control system
– Driver's seat adjustment* with power seats ⇨ *page 50*
– Parking aid*
– Drive select

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, open the doors or turn on the ignition.

WARNING

If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Note

Protect the remote control key against high temperatures and direct sunlight.

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of remote control keys in household trash. They contain materials that can be recycled. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Tips

– The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working ▶

in the same frequency range (such as a cell phone or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked!

– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 287*.

Removing the mechanical key

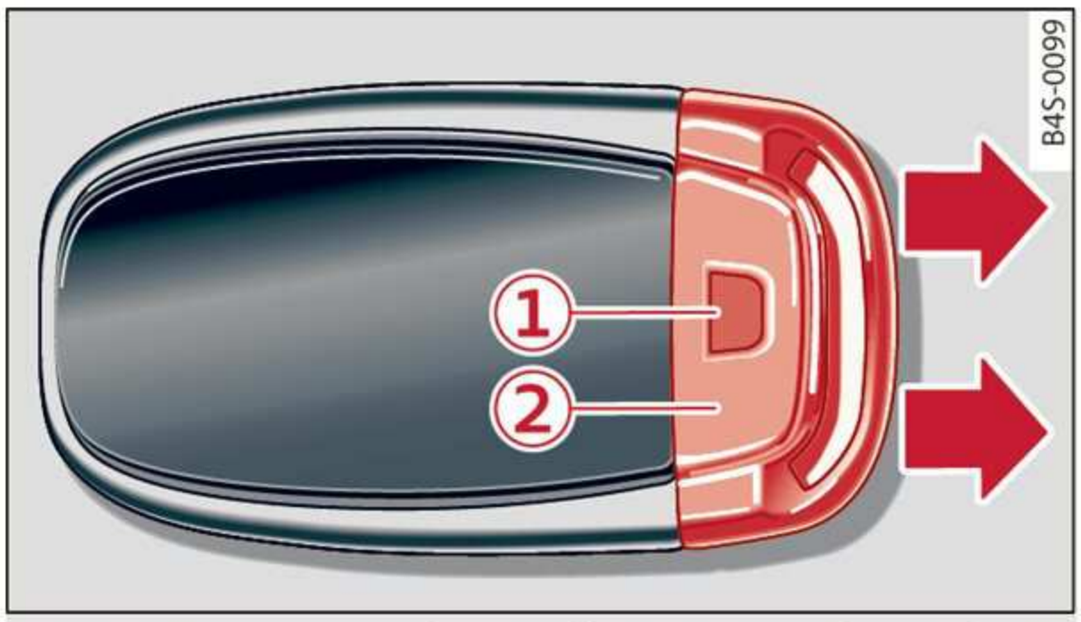


Fig. 12 Remote control master key: removing the mechanical key

- ▸ Press the release button ① ⇨ *fig. 12*.
- ▸ Pull the mechanical key ② out of the remote control key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– Lock or unlock the glove compartment.
– Manually lock or unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 26*.
– Mechanically lock the doors ⇨ *page 26*.

LED and batteries in the remote control key

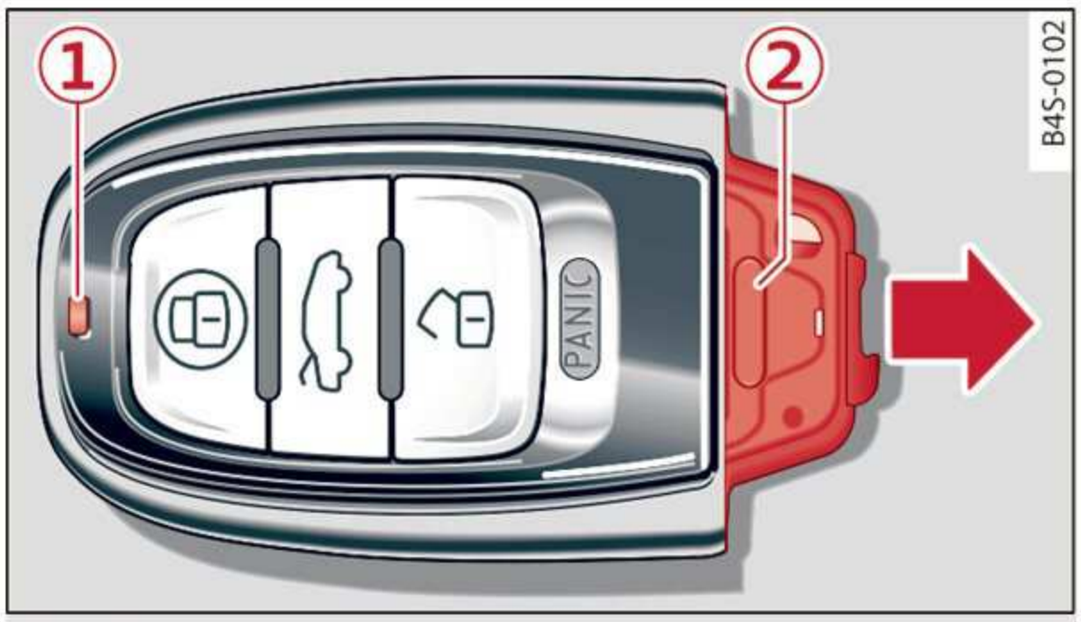


Fig. 13 Remote control key: removing the battery holder

LED on the remote control key

The LED ① indicates the remote control key function.

- ▸ If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- ▸ If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- ▸ If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is drained. The indicator light turns on and the message **Remote control key: replace key battery** appears in the driver information system. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the remote control key battery

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Press the release button ② on the battery holder and pull the battery holder out of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow at the same time.
- ▸ Insert the new battery with the “+” facing down.
- ▸ Slide the battery holder carefully into the remote control key.
- ▸ Insert the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

Replacement batteries for the remote control key must meet the same specifications as the original battery.

Unlocking and locking by remote control

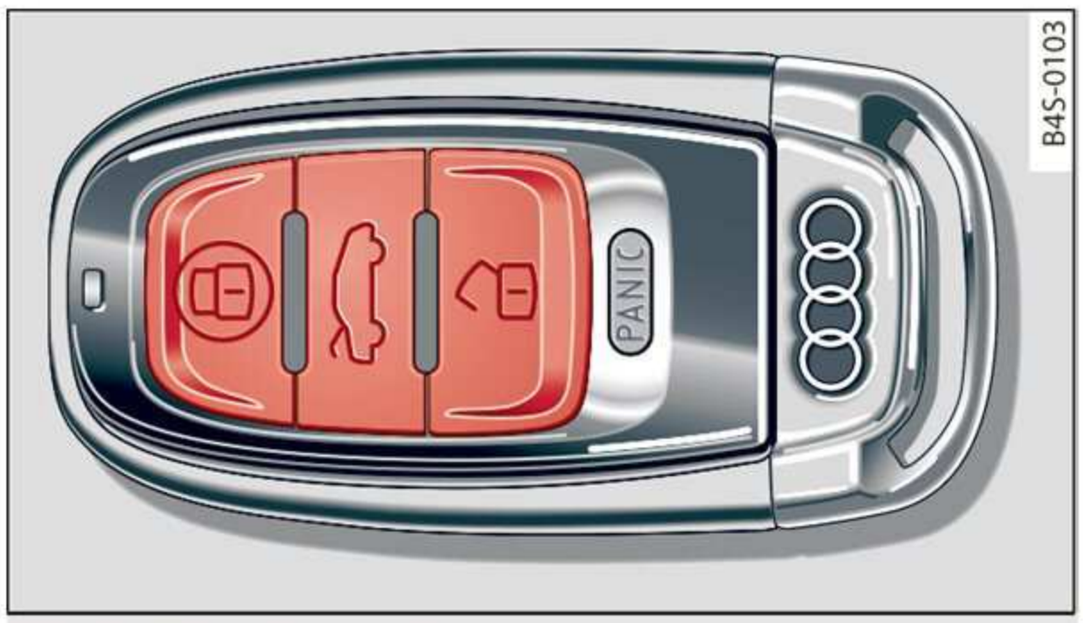


Fig. 14 Remote control key: button programming

- ▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *fig. 14*.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.
- ▸ To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the button.
- ▸ To trigger the alarm, press the red PANIC button. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers will activate.
- ▸ To switch off the alarm, press the red PANIC button again.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open any of the doors, the engine compartment lid, or the luggage compartment lid within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked for a long period of time.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 25*.

WARNING

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 26*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

- – Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
- – The "P" position must be engaged to lock the vehicle.
- – Only use the panic function in an emergency.

Unlocking and locking with the convenience key

The doors can be unlocked/locked without using the remote control key.

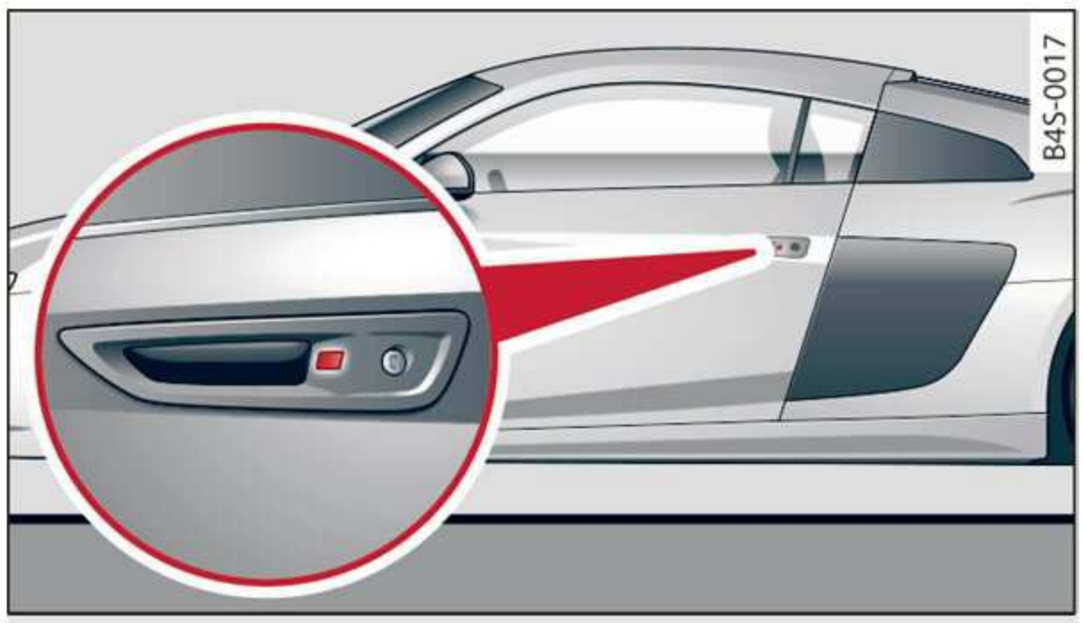


Fig. 15 Door handle: sensor

Unlocking the vehicle

- ▸ Grip the door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- ▸ Pull on the door handle to open the door.

Locking the vehicle

- ▸ Select the "P" position. The vehicle cannot be locked if "P" is not selected.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 15*. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.

You can unlock/lock the vehicle at every door. The convenience key must no be more than approximately 5 feet (1.5 m) away from the door handle. The function should not be impaired if the convenience key is in your jacket pocket or in your briefcase, for example.

If you hold the door handle while locking, this can impair the locking function.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 25*.

WARNING

No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 26*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

WARNING

Read and following all WARNINGS. ⇨ ⚠ *in Key set on page 22*

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:

– To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, the energy management gradually switches off convenience functions that are not needed. You then may no longer be able to unlock your vehicle with the sensors.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 287*.

Central locking switch



Fig. 16 Driver's door: central locking switch

▸ To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– The doors and the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened from the *outside* for security reasons, such as to prevent unauthorized opening while stopped at a light.
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the 🔒 button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 21*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the 🔓 button in the central locking switch.

Setting the central locking system

You can adjust the central locking system to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings**.

Door unlocking - You can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver** door should unlock. If you select **Driver**, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

Long press to open windows - You can select if all windows should open using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 29, Convenience opening and closing*. If you press and hold the 🔒 button on the vehicle key, all of the windows will close. ▶

All doors will be unlocked if you press the button twice on the convenience key when the **Driver** setting is selected.

Lock when driving[1] - If you select **On**, all doors and the luggage compartment lid will be locked automatically when driving (Auto Lock).

Fold mirrors - If you select **On**, the exterior rear-view mirrors fold will in automatically when you press the button on the remote control key or touch the sensor* in the handle.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the doors

If the central locking fails, you must unlock or lock the doors separately.

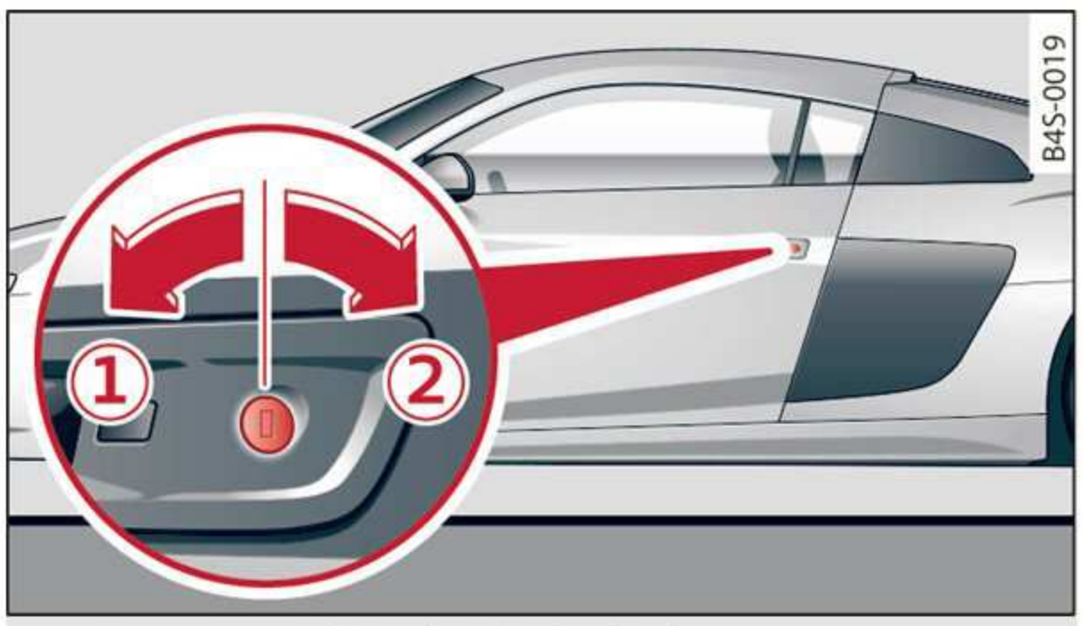


Fig. 17 Driver's door: door lock cylinder

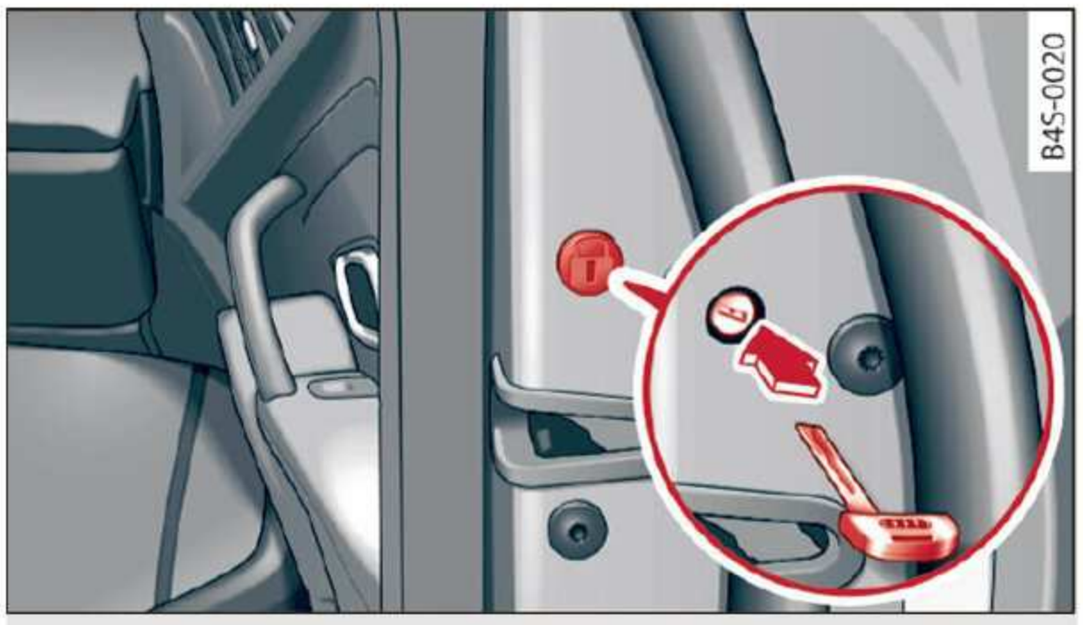


Fig. 18 Front passenger's door: emergency release

Unlocking and locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position in the direction of arrow ① ⇨ *fig. 17*.
- ▸ To lock the driver's door, select the P position and turn the key **once** to the closing position ②.

Locking the front passenger's door with the mechanical key

The mechanical lock is located on the edge of the front passenger's door. It is only visible when the door is open.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 23*.
- ▸ Remove the cap from the opening ⇨ *fig. 18*.
- ▸ Insert the key into the slot inside and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or to the left (left door*).

Once the front passenger's door is closed, it is no longer possible to open it from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

Anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is switched on or off when locking or unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- ▸ To switch the alarm off, press the button on the remote control key or switch the ignition on.

Break-in security feature

The alarm will sound if there is a break-in at the doors, engine compartment lid, and/or luggage compartment lid.

1) This function is not available in all countries.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 19 Driver's door: unlocking the luggage compartment lid

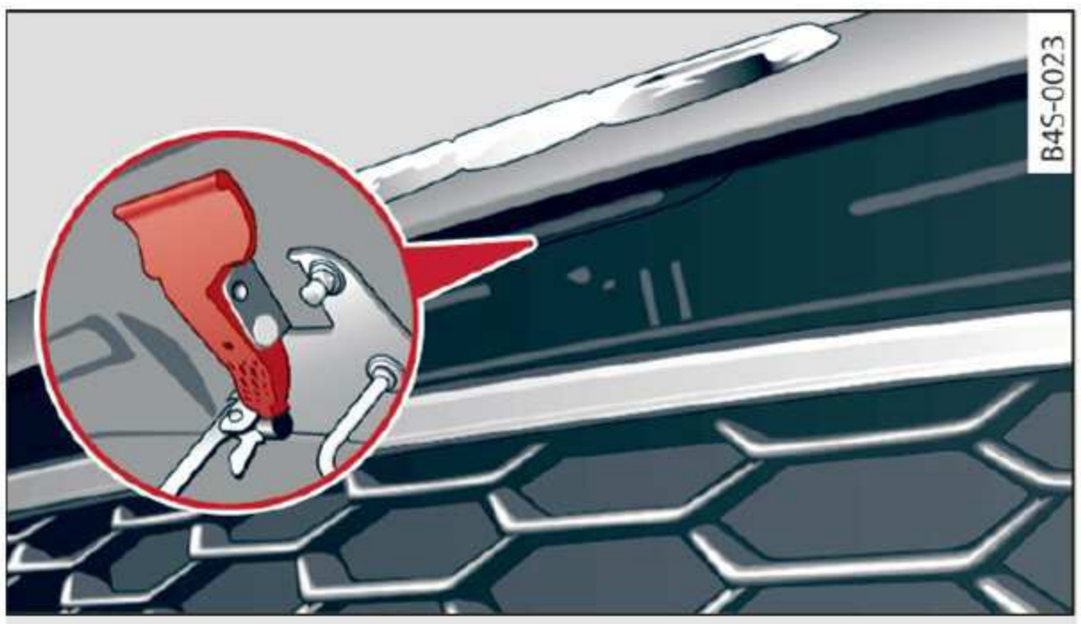


Fig. 20 Unlocked luggage compartment lid

When opening the luggage compartment lid, the windshield wipers must be switched off and the wiper arms must be folded against the window. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ► To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the button on the remote control key. Or
- ► Press the button in the driver's door.
- ► Press the tab. This releases the catch.
- ► Lift the luggage compartment lid.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ► Push the luggage compartment lid down until you override the force of the struts.
- ► Close the luggage compartment lid.
- ► Carefully push the luggage compartment lid closed using both hands until it audibly engages ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- – After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. Otherwise the luggage compartment lid could open suddenly when driving, which increases the risk of an accident.
- – Never leave your vehicle unattended when the luggage compartment lid is open. A child could crawl into the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was then closed, the child would be trapped in the vehicle and unable to escape. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid and the doors closed when the vehicle is not in use.
- – Always make sure no one is in the luggage compartment lid's range of motion when it is closing, especially near the hinges. Fingers or hands could be pinched.

Tips

- – When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
- – In case of an emergency or a faulty handle, the luggage compartment lid can be opened manually from the inside ⇨ *page 28*.

Mechanically unlocking the luggage compartment lid

The luggage compartment lid can be released from the inside in an emergency.



Fig. 21 Front passenger footwell: cover

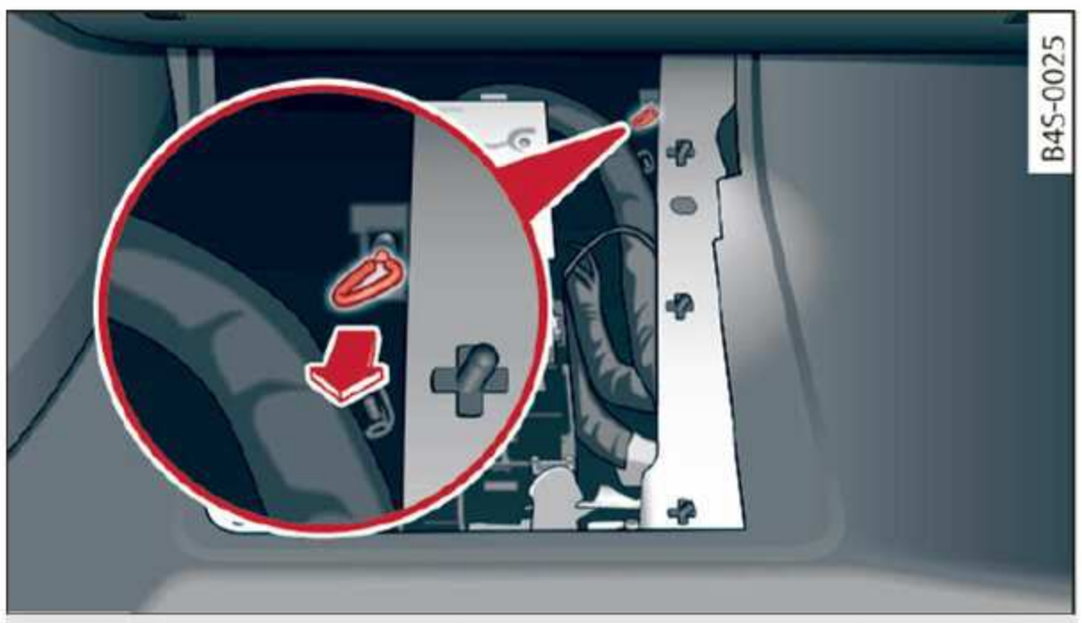


Fig. 22 Front passenger footwell: emergency release

- ▸ Remove the floor mat.
- ▸ Remove the cover ⇨ *fig. 21*.
- ▸ Pull the red plastic cord in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 22*.

Trunk escape handle

In case of an emergency, the front lid can be opened from the inside using the trunk escape handle.

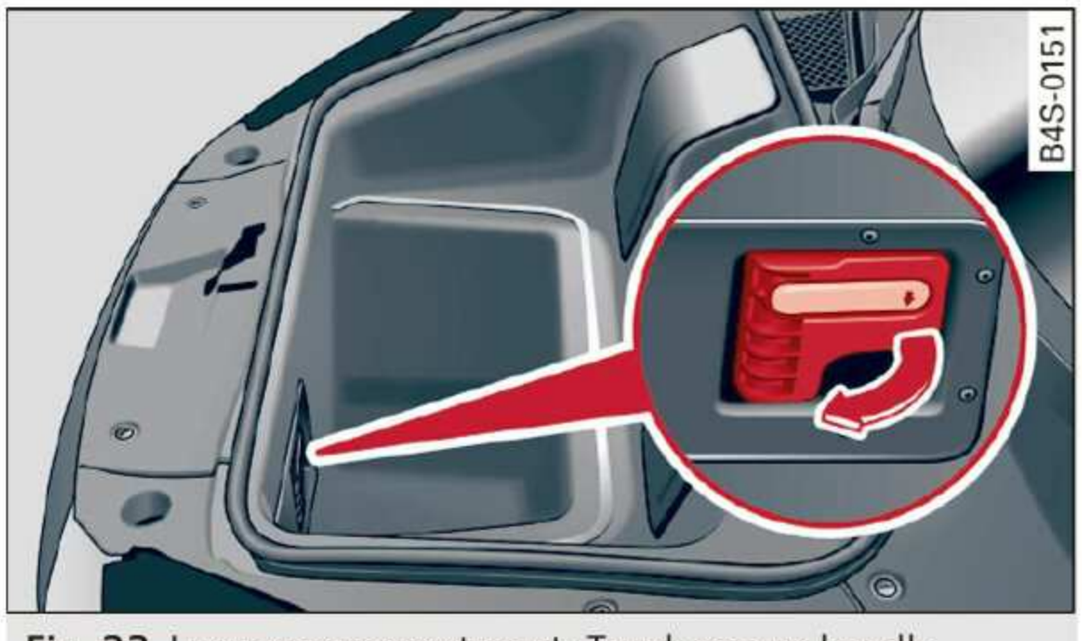


Fig. 23 Luggage compartment: Trunk escape handle

- ▸ To open the front lid pull the handle.

The trunk escape handle inside the luggage compartment is made of fluorescent material to glow in the dark.

WARNING

The trunk escape handle is to be used only in an emergency.

Power windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

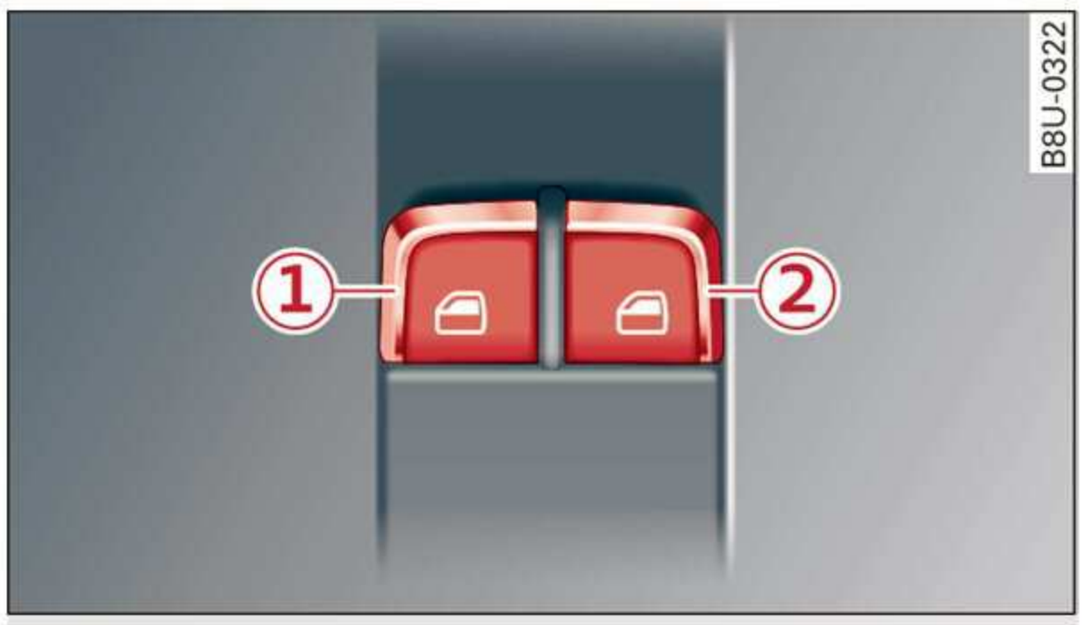


Fig. 24 Driver's door: power window controls

All power window switches have a two-stage function:

Opening and closing the windows

- ▸ To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed or pulled again.
- ▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press or pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Power window switches

① Left door

② Right door

WARNING

– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. Pinching could cause serious injuries.

– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

You can still open and close the windows for approximately 10 minutes after turning the ignition off. The power windows do not switch off until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.

Convenience opening and closing

All windows can be opened and closed at the same time.

For power top* convenience opening/closing, refer to the information in ⇨ *page 33*.

Convenience opening feature

- Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all windows reach the desired position.

Convenience closing feature

- Hold the key in the driver's door lock in the lock position until all windows are closed ⇨ ⚠.

Setting convenience opening in the Infotainment system

The function can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 25*.

WARNING

– Never close the windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– For security reasons, the windows can only be opened and closed with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6 ft (2 m) away from the vehicle. When pressing the button, always watch the windows while they are closing so that no one is pinched in the window. The closing process will stop immediately when the button is released.

Correcting power window malfunctions

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

- Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
- Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

Garage door opener

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener



Fig. 25 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener, you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. Up to three remote control functions can be programmed to the three buttons that are integrated in the control unit above the rearview mirror.

To be able to operate systems using the garage door opener, the buttons in the control unit must first be programmed.

WARNING

When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.

Tips

– For security reasons, we recommend that you clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.

– For additional information about HomeLink, visit www.homelink.com.
– For the Declaration of Conformity with the provisions from the FCC in the United States and Industry Canada, see ⇨ *page 287*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

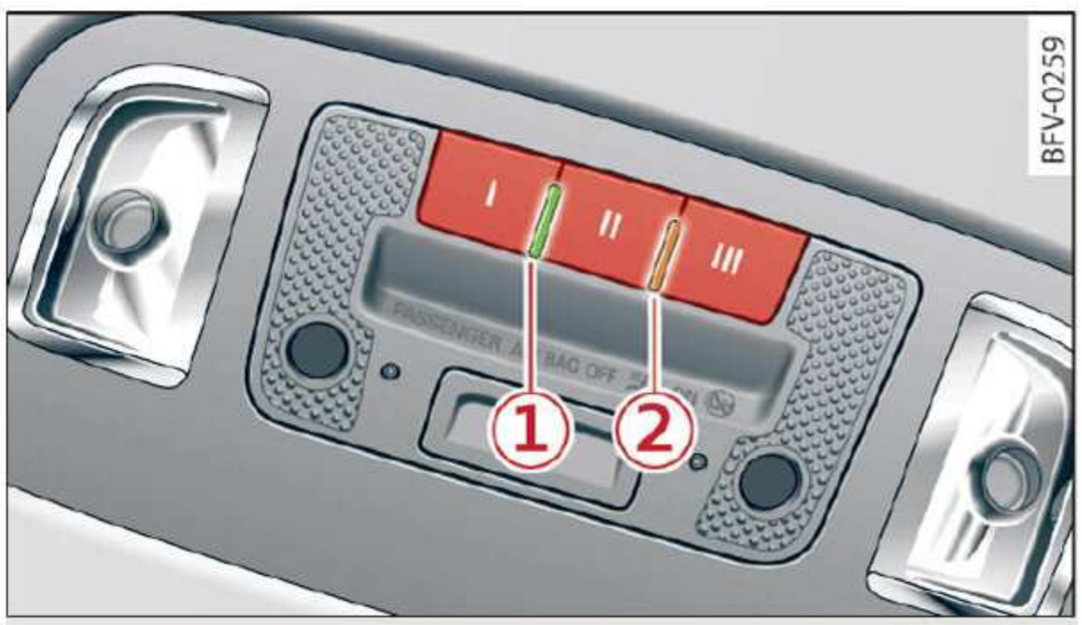


Fig. 26 Control panel above the interior rearview mirror

Requirement: the button in the control panel must be programmed ⇨ *page 30* and the vehicle must be located within range of the system, such as the garage door.

- ▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The green LED ① blinks or turns on.
- ▸ Press the button again to close the garage door.

Tips

When opening or closing the garage door, do not press and hold the button longer ten seconds or the garage door opener will switch to programming mode.

Programming the transmitter

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

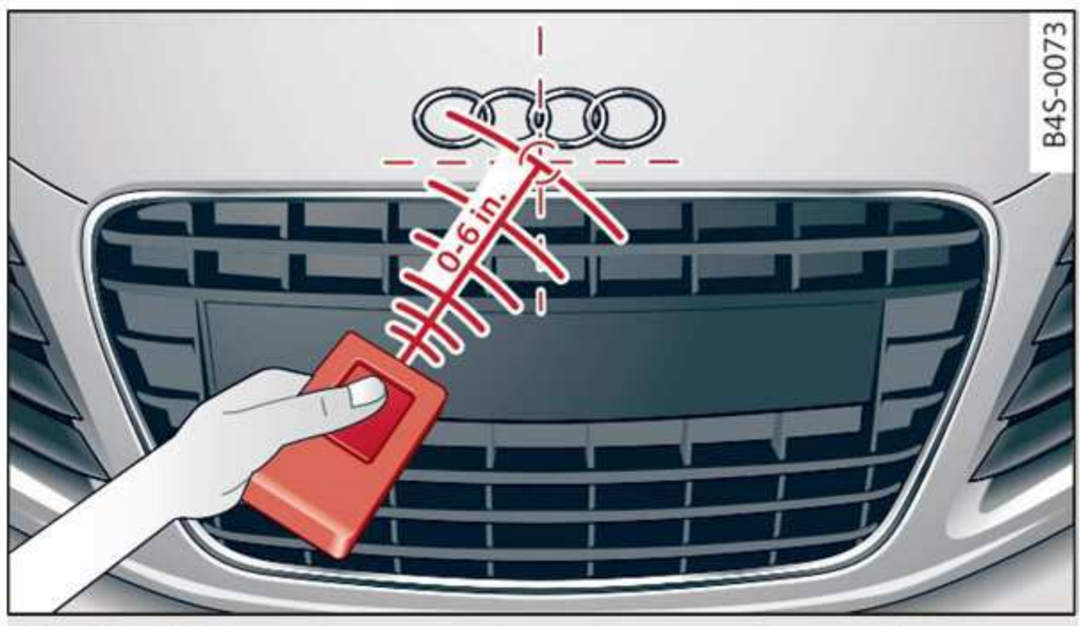


Fig. 27 Distance between the radiator grille and the remote control transmitter

Programming the button: step 1 on the control panel

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press both of the outside buttons on the control unit ⇨ *page 30, fig. 26* until the yellow LED ② turns off and the green LED ① turns on. This procedure clears the standard codes that were set at the factory and does **not** need to be repeated again to program the other buttons.
3. Briefly press the button in the control panel that you want to program.
4. Wait until the yellow LED ② blinks. The programming mode is active for five minutes.
5. Go in front of the vehicle with the original remote control transmitter for the system that you are programming to the control panel button.

Programming the button: step 2 at the radiator grille

6. Hold the remote control transmitter at the vehicle radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 27*.
7. Now press the remote control transmitter until the turn signals on your vehicle blink. This can take up to 30 seconds.
8. If the emergency flashers blink three times, the programming was successful. If the emergency flashers only blink one time, the five-minute time limit for programming has expired or the programming was unsuccessful. Repeat the programming procedure starting from the third step or change the distance to the radiator grille. ▶

9. If the garage door or other systems do not open with the HomeLink buttons even if the programming was successful, the system may use a rolling code instead of a fixed code. You must also then perform **rolling code programming** ⇨ *page 31*.

The other two buttons in the control panel can be programmed using the instructions given above. Start with step 3.

Deleting button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be deleted individually. They must be deleted all at once. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press both of the outside buttons on the control unit until the yellow LED ② turns off and the green LED ① turns on.

Reprogramming buttons

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ To reprogram an individual button, press the desired button until the green LED ① turns off and the yellow LED ② starts to turn on (after approximately 10 seconds). Release the button immediately. The programming mode is active for 5 minutes and is indicated by a blinking yellow light.
- ▸ Continue with step 5.

Tips

– The distance needed between the remote control transmitter and the garage door opener module in the radiator grille ⇨ *fig. 27* depends on the system you are programming.
– Depending on the system model, you may need to release the button on the remote control transmitter while it is programming and press it again. Hold every position you try when programming for at least 15 seconds before trying a new position. Keep an eye on the vehicle turn signals while doing this.

Rolling code programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

On some systems, programming a rolling code is also necessary.

Identifying a rolling code

After programming a rolling code successfully (in front of the vehicle), the yellow LED stays on when returning to the vehicle. It turns off the next time the button is pressed. It will then blink green and the garage door opener will send the required signal. The garage door opener will also send the signal and the LED will blink green whenever the button is pressed after that.

- ▸ Program the rolling code as follows:

Activating the system motor unit

- ▸ Locate the programming button on the system motor unit. The exact location and color of the button may vary depending on the brand.
- ▸ Press the programming button on the system motor unit (usually this will activate a “display” on the motor unit). You now have approximately **30 seconds** to program the button in the control panel.

Programming the button in the control panel

- ▸ Press and hold the previously programmed button in the control panel for two seconds.
- ▸ To complete rolling code programming, press and hold the button again for two seconds.
- ▸ On some systems, the button might need to be pressed a third time to end the programming procedure.

After programming, the system should recognize the signal and operate when the button in the control panel is pressed. Now you may program the other buttons as needed.

Tips

– The rolling code can be programmed more quickly and more easily with the help of a second person.
– If any difficulties occur when programming the rolling code, it may be helpful to read the system operating manual.

Power top

Automatic power top

General information

Applies to: vehicles with power top

The power top opens and closes automatically. When open, the power top is stored completely in the power top compartment. The power top can be opened or closed at speeds up to 30 mph (50 km/h). The power top will not open when the temperature is below 5 °F (-15 °C).

Under normal conditions, the power top is wind- and waterproof. In rare cases, small droplets of water may form under extreme weather conditions such as torrential or prolonged rain. That is normal and no cause for concern.

Follow the care instructions to keep the power top free of leaks and to maintain its appearance ⇨ *page 265, Care and cleaning*. Also observe the following:

– Open and stow the power top only when it is clean and dry. Stowing the power top when it is damp can create imprints in it, and if it is left that way for long periods of time, mildew and other damage can form. To prevent scratching or damaging the power top, do not use any sharp-edged objects to remove ice and snow. The rear window may be cleared with a standard ice scraper.
– Do not leave the power top open for several weeks or the creases in it may become discolored.
– Do not open the power top when the temperature is below 32 °F (0 °C). The fabric in the power top loses elasticity in sub-zero temperatures.

Opening and closing the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 28 Center console: power top switch

Requirement: the engine compartment lid must be closed.

Opening and closing the power top

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ To open or close the power top, pull or press and hold the switch until it is completely opened or closed.

Opening/closing the power top using the one-touch function

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ To open/close the power top all the way, briefly pull/press the power top switch. It is not necessary to hold the switch. The one-touch function is only available at speeds between 4 mph (6 km/h) and 30 mph (50 km/h).

The status of the power top is shown in the instrument cluster when operating the power top switch.

A message will appear in the instrument cluster if the power top cannot be opened or closed.

WARNING

– When operating the power top, make sure the function is not affected by wind or other factors and that it does not interfere with other drivers.
– Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle. ▶

– Make sure no one will be injured by the power top supports and other moving components when opening and closing the top.
– Visibility to the rear is limited when operating the power top. Avoid operating the top while driving in reverse.

Note

– To prevent damage to the power top:
  – do not store any objects in the power top storage compartment.
  – make sure there is enough space above the vehicle when opening or closing the power top.

Tips

– To prevent the vehicle battery from draining unnecessarily, do not open or close the power top repeatedly when the engine is switched off.
– A message will appear in the instrument cluster if there is a malfunction in the power top ⇨ *page 34*.
– If there is a malfunction, the power top can also be operated manually as a temporary solution ⇨ *page 35, Power top emergency operation*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility should diagnose and correct the cause of the malfunction immediately.
– If the vehicle is parked with the power top open, the vehicle interior is not protected from damaging weather or unauthorized access. Lock any items you leave behind in the luggage compartment. Close the power top before leaving the vehicle.
– The side windows automatically lower slightly when opening or closing the power top.

Power top convenience opening and closing

Applies to: vehicles with power top

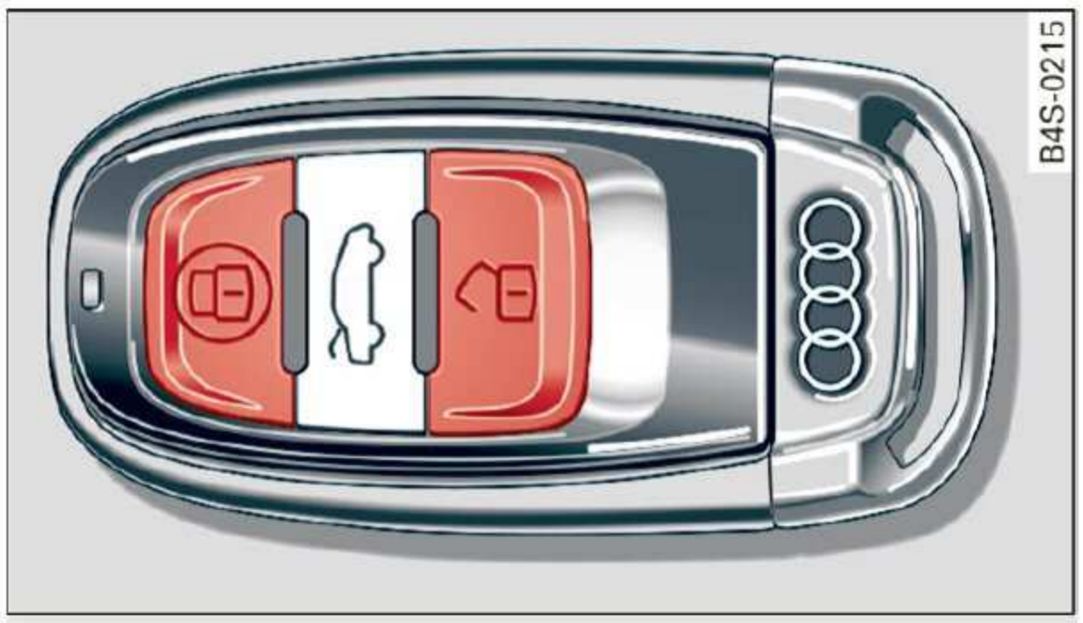


Fig. 29 Remote control key: button programming

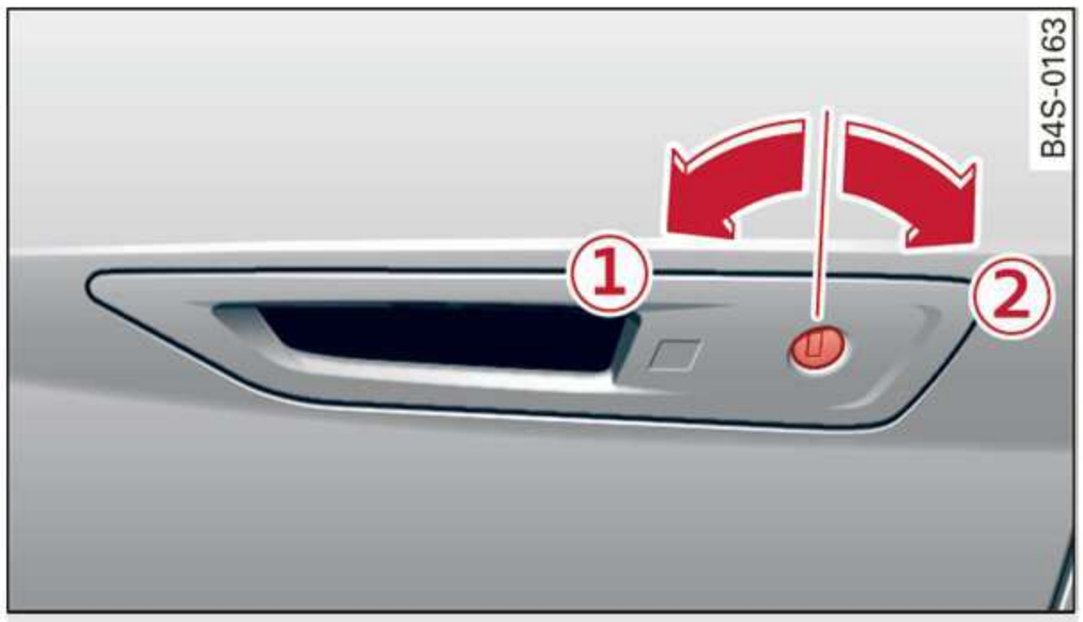


Fig. 30 Turning the key to open and close

Convenience opening with the driver door lock

► Press the button on the remote control key to unlock the vehicle.
► Turn the key once in the driver door lock to the unlock position ①.
► Turn the key to the opening position again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top opens completely.

Convenience closing with the driver door lock

► Turn the key once in the driver door lock to the lock position ②.
► Turn the key to the closing position again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top closes completely.

Convenience opening with the convenience key*

► Press the button on the convenience key* to unlock the vehicle.
► Press the button a second time **within two seconds** and hold it until the power top opens completely. ▶

Releasing the key stops the opening or closing process **immediately**. Opening and closing with the convenience key* is possible from up to approximately 13 feet (4 meters) away from the vehicle.

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Opening and closing the power top on page 32*.

Tips

When operating automatically, the rear window must be closed with the rear window switch after the power top finishes running.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with power top

Power top: malfunction! Unable to operate

This message appears when there is a malfunction. The power top can be operated manually ⇨ *page 35*.

Power top: operation currently not possible

If the power top is operated continually for a long period of time, the overload protection activates for approximately 15 to 30 minutes. You can open or close the power top again after that.

Power top: malfunction! You may continue driving (limited functionality). See owner's manual

This message appears if there is a malfunction in the system. Try to open or close the power top again. If the message still appears, then have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility correct the malfunction. Do not drive more than 30 mph (50 km/h) until it is corrected.

WARNING

Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Wind deflector

Applies to: vehicles with wind deflector

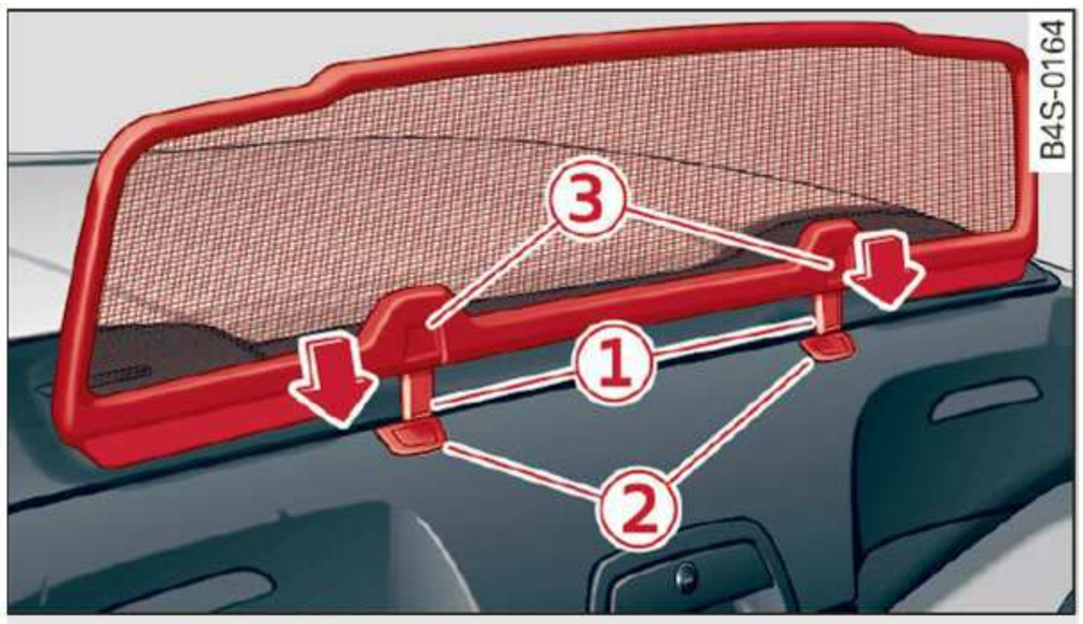


Fig. 31 Installing the wind deflector

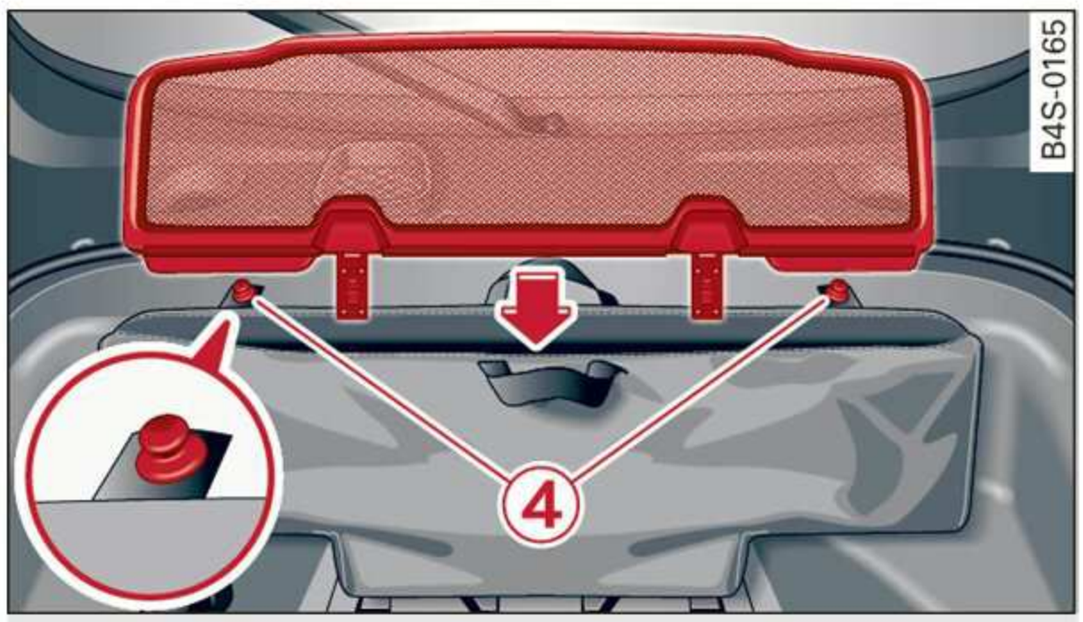


Fig. 32 Luggage compartment: storing the wind deflector

The wind deflector reduces air movement in the passenger compartment in order to increase driving comfort.

The wind deflector is located in the luggage compartment. Installing it from the side of the vehicle that is farthest from traffic is recommended for safety reasons. Follow the installation instructions provided in the storage bag.

Installing/removing the wind deflector

- ▸ To install the wind deflector, slide the retaining pin ① into the mount ② ⇨ *fig. 31*. The wind deflector is secure when it clicks into place and the red marks on both buttons are no longer visible.
- ▸ To remove the wind deflector, press both buttons ③ and pull the deflector upward and out.

Storing the wind blocker

- ▸ Slide the wind deflector into the storage bag with the retaining pins facing downward.
- ▸ Engage the storage bag into the retainers ④ in the luggage compartment ⇨ *fig. 32*. ▶

WARNING

– Do not use the wind deflector to secure cargo.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, pay attention to traffic when installing the wind deflector.

Tips

– The wind deflector works best when all of the windows are rolled up while driving.
– To prevent mildew, do not store the wind deflector when it is damp.

Rear window

Applies to: vehicles with extendable rear window

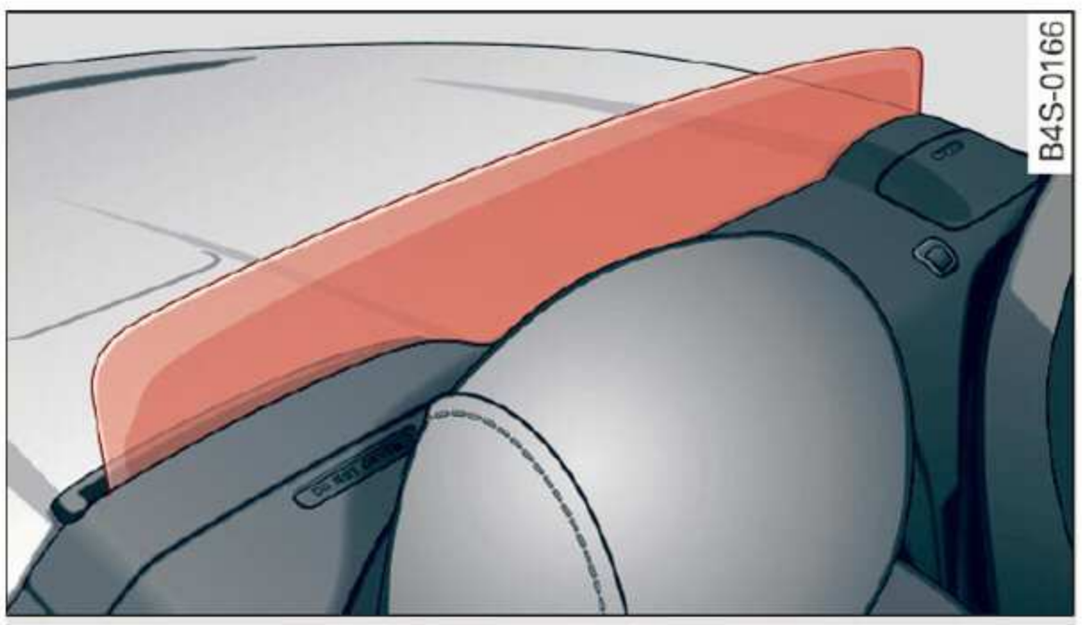


Fig. 33 Rear window in wind deflector position



Fig. 34 Center console: rear window switch

The rear window can only be operated when the ignition is switched on. The rear window can be raised slightly when the power top is open to reduce air movement inside the vehicle and increase comfort ⇨ *fig. 33*.

Retracting/extending the rear window

- To retract/extend the rear window, press/pull the switch until the retracting/extending process is complete.
- To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch until the rear window reaches the desired position.
- To fully retract the rear window, press the switch briefly. There is no need to hold the switch. To cancel the retracting process, press the switch again.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of injury, do not use the rear window to secure cargo or other objects.
– Never retract or extend the rear window carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner. Pinching could cause serious injuries.

Power top emergency operation

General information

Applies to: vehicles with power top

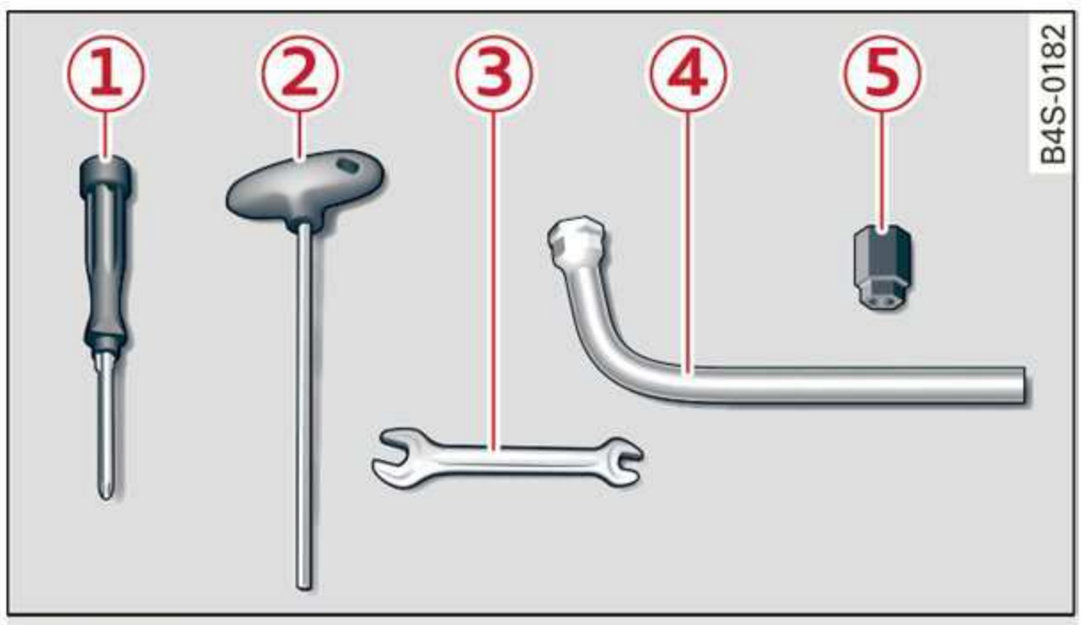


Fig. 35 Tool

The power top can be closed manually if there is a malfunction.

- Set the parking brake.
- Open all windows.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Pull the button ⇨ *page 32, fig. 28* for approximately 10 to 15 seconds to reduce the pressure in the power top hydraulics.
- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Remove the screwdriver (1), the hex socket wrench (2), the open end wrench (3), the wheel wrench (4) and the adapter (5) ⇨ *fig. 35* from the vehicle tool kit.

Only close the power top manually in an emergency. Have a second person assist. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- There is a risk of pinching the hands or other people during all of the power top emergency operation steps.
  - Make sure all windows are lowered during emergency operation.
  - Do not reach into the power top supports or other moving components.
- Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Tips

Emergency locking is not intended for long-term use or long drives. The power top will not be completely waterproof after using the emergency locking procedure because the seals will not be seated correctly. Only close the power top manually in an emergency. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Step 1: Retract the rear window

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 36 Storage compartment between the seat backrests: removing the cover



Fig. 37 Storage compartment between the seat backrests: using the hex socket wrench to roll down the rear window

The rear window must be retracted in order to close the power top. If the rear window cannot be operated with the switch ⇨ *page 35*, you can roll down the rear window.

- ▸ Open the storage compartment between the seat backrests.
- ▸ Remove the cover with the screwdriver.
- ▸ Press the hex socket wrench firmly into the opening until it audibly engages.
- ▸ Turn the bolt clockwise until the rear window is lowered.

Step 2: Open the power top storage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with power top

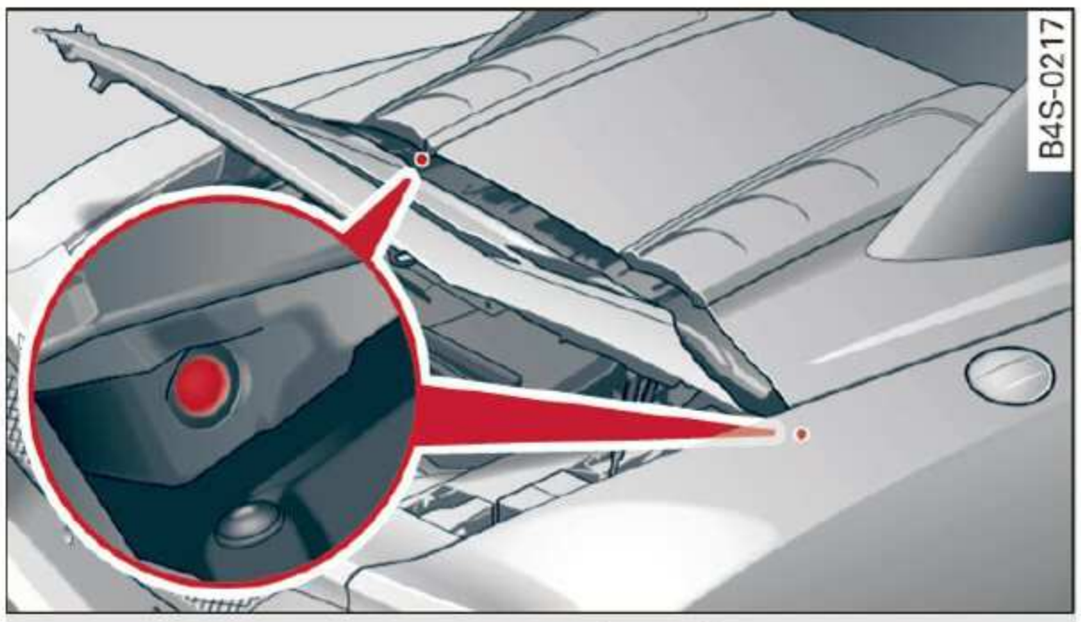


Fig. 38 Power top: emergency release for power top storage compartment lid

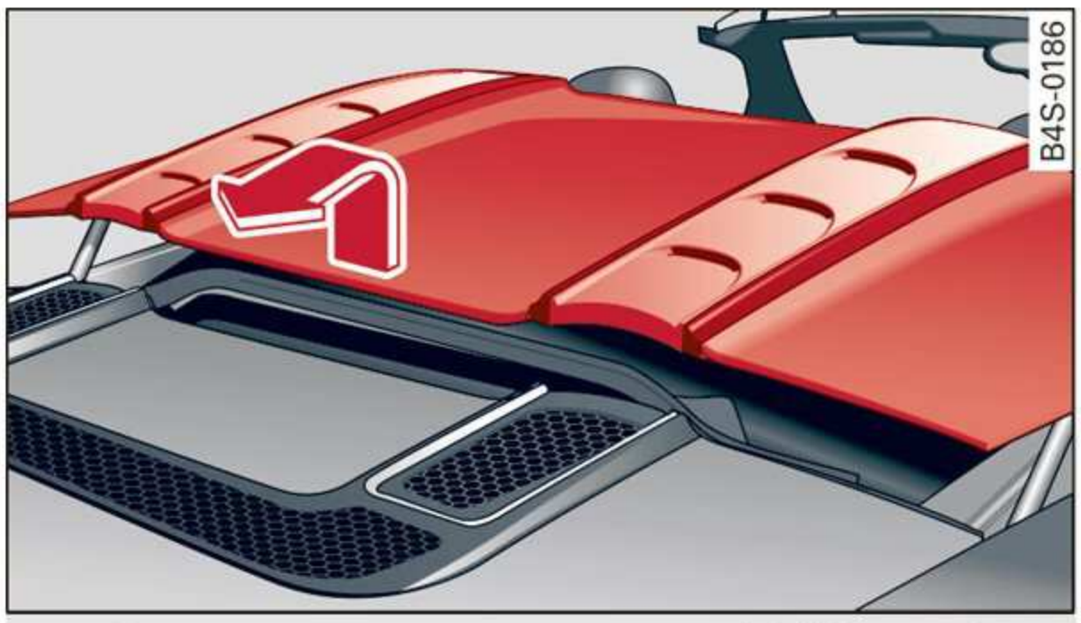


Fig. 39 Power top storage compartment lid: lifting and pulling back

You must open the engine compartment lid before you can release the power top storage compartment lid ⇨ *page 231*.

Releasing the power top storage compartment lid

- ► Pierce the plastic cover with the hex socket wrench ⇨ *fig. 38*. Continue to push the hex socket wrench in against the power top storage compartment lid lock so that the lock releases.
- ► Use the hex socket wrench to perform the emergency release on the left and right side in the engine compartment. The power top storage compartment lid will lift approximately 0.4 inches (1 cm) away from the body.
- ► Close the engine compartment lid.

Opening the power top storage compartment lid

- ► From the rear of the vehicle, reach into the center ventilation slot in the power top storage compartment lid with both hands and raise the lid approximately 11.8 inches (30 cm).
- ► Hold the power top storage compartment lid in this position and pull it toward you until it stops.

WARNING

Read the warnings on ⇨ *page 229, General information* before you open the engine compartment lid.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle, only open the power top storage compartment lid when the engine compartment lid is closed.

Step 3: Remove the covers

Applies to: vehicles with power top

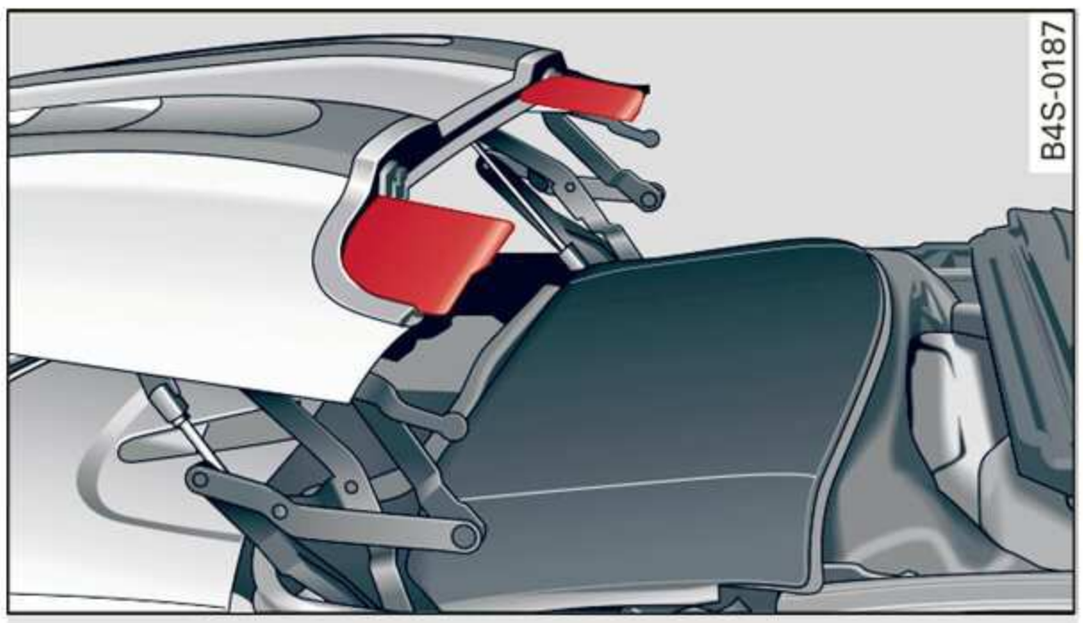


Fig. 40 Power top storage compartment lid: cover marked

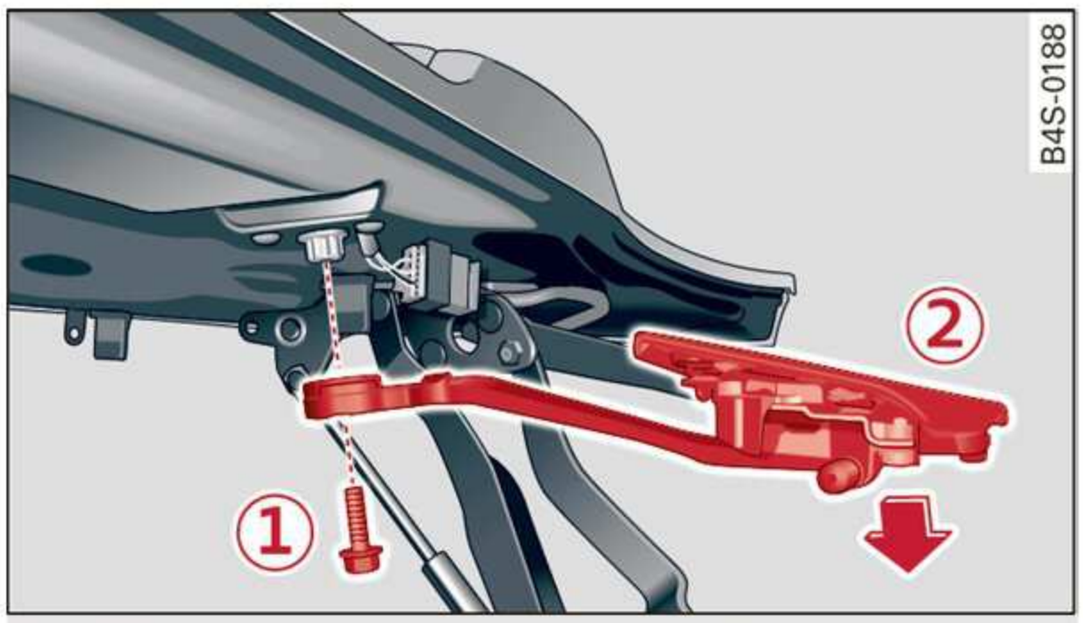


Fig. 41 Power top storage compartment lid: removing the cover

The following steps must be performed on both sides of the vehicle.

- ► Remove the bolt in the cover on the bottom side of the power top storage compartment lid using the open end wrench (1).

▸ Move the cover up and down carefully until it can be pulled downward from the teeth ②.

Step 4: Lift out the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

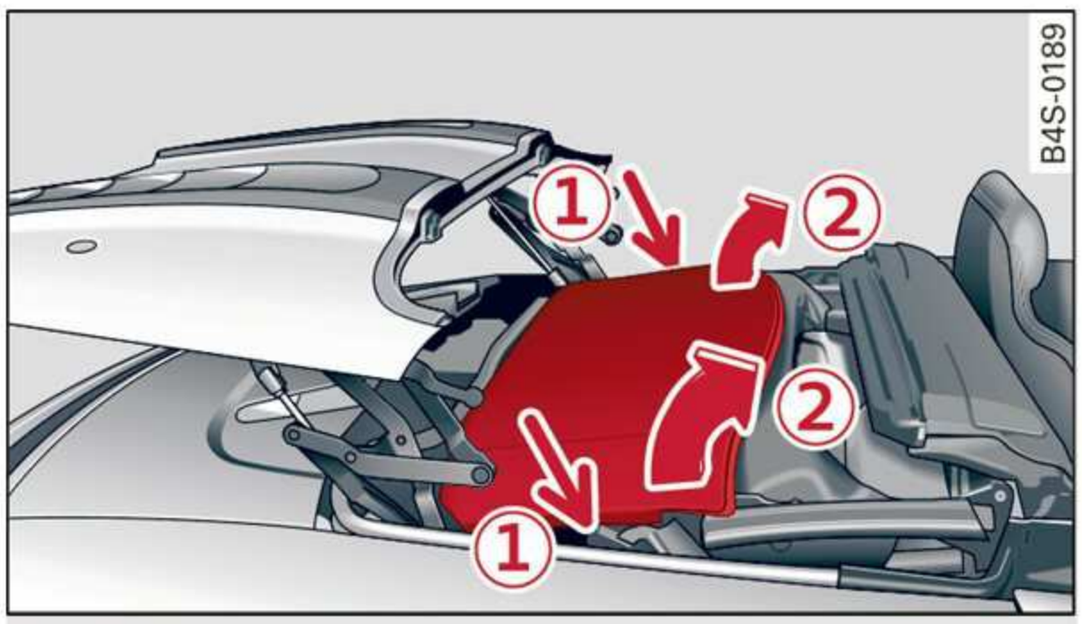


Fig. 42 Power top storage bay: lifting the power top out

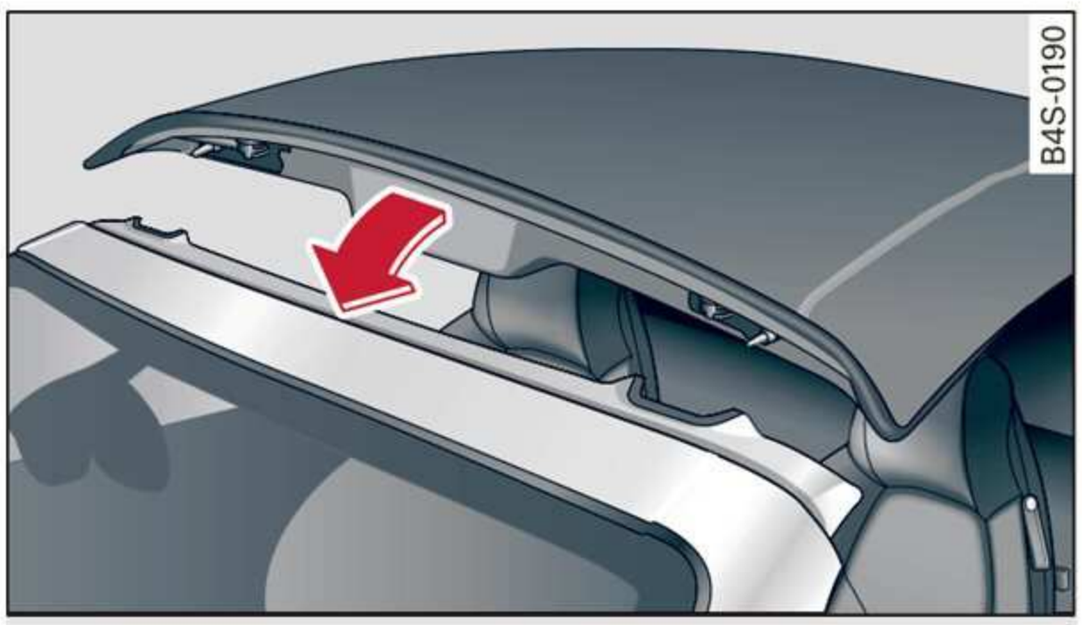


Fig. 43 Windshield frame: pressing the power top forward

Have a second person assist when positioning the power top. That person should stand on the opposite side of the vehicle and perform the same steps.

▸ Hold the power top at the position ① (arrows) and lift it carefully ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Pull the power top all the way out toward ②. Position the fins upward at the same time.
▸ Push the power top as far forward toward the windshield frame as possible.

⚠ WARNING

– When positioning the power top, avoid contact with the supports or other moving parts. Otherwise, you could pinch your hands and increase the risk of injury.
– When pressing the power top toward the windshield frame, make sure that you do not pinch yourself or anyone else because this could cause injury.

Step 5: Lock the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

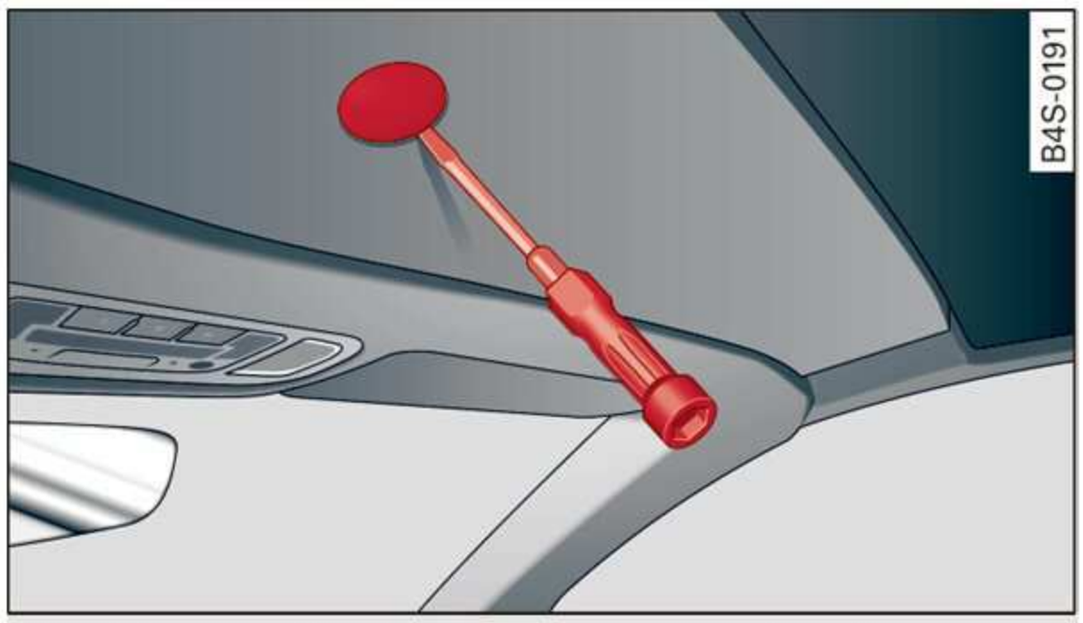


Fig. 44 Inner side of the power top: removing the cap

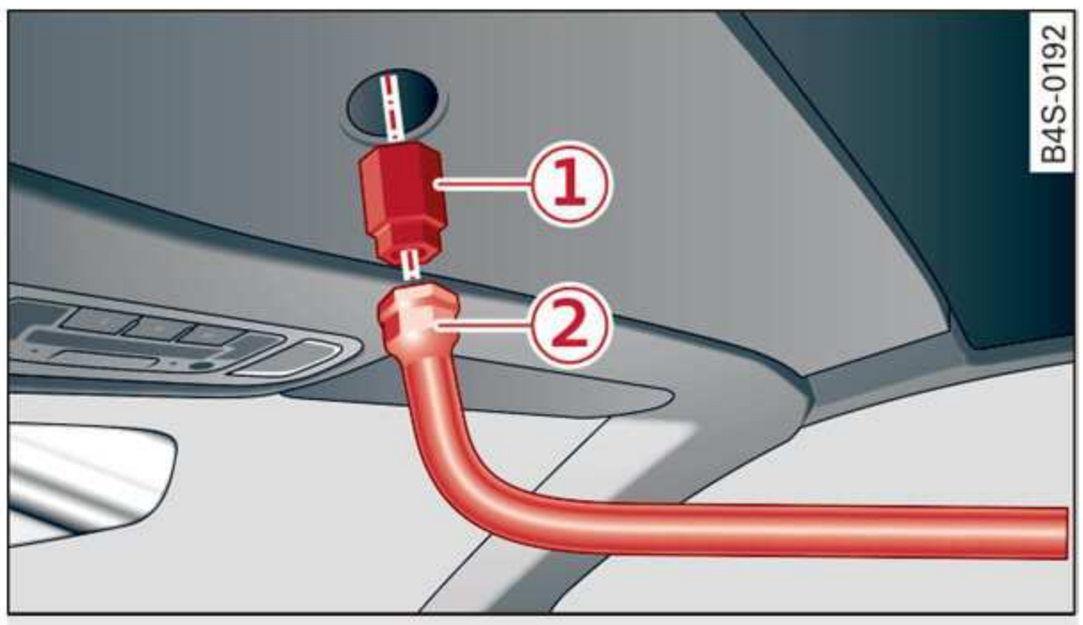


Fig. 45 Inner side of the power top: positioning the wheel wrench

▸ Remove the cap in the center of the power top using the screwdriver. The emergency locking mechanism is located behind it.
▸ Insert the adapter ①.
▸ Position the wheel wrench and turn the bolt firmly to the left ② until the power top is completely locked.
▸ Remove the wheel wrench and the adapter from the opening.
▸ Cover the opening with the cap.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the power top is locked securely. Otherwise the wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Step 6: Secure the fins on the body

Applies to: vehicles with power top

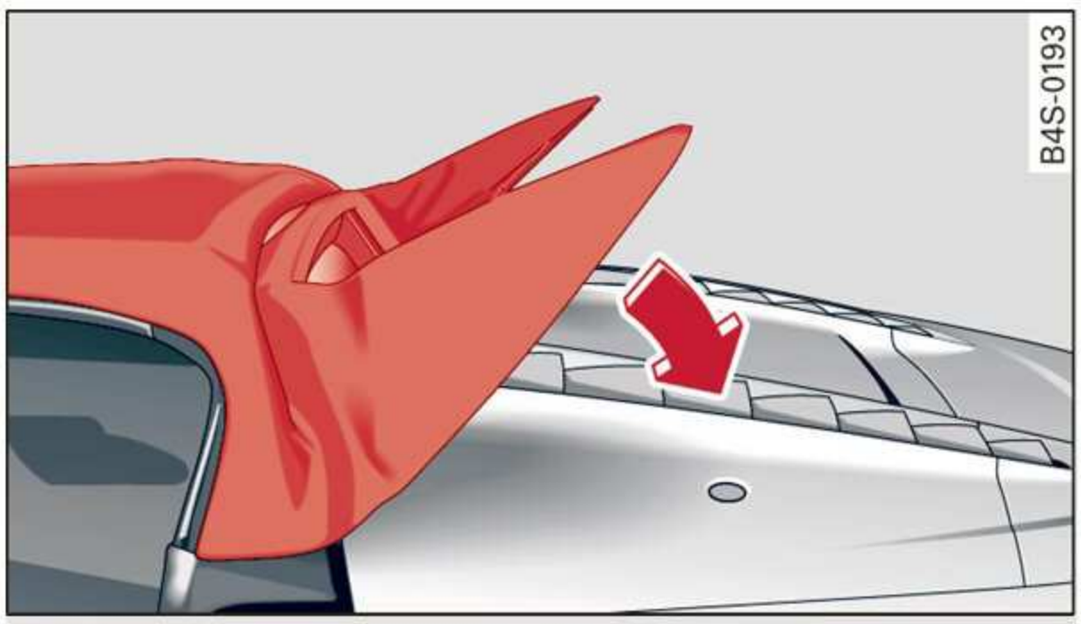


Fig. 46 Power top: pressing the fins downward

▶ Press the fins downward firmly.

WARNING

Make sure the fins lie on the body. Otherwise the power top will not lock securely and it could open while driving. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage, do not lift the fins up again under any circumstances.

Step 7: Extend the rear window

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 47 Storage compartment between the seat backrests: extending the rear window

▶ Press the hex socket wrench firmly into the opening until it audibly engages.
▶ Turn the bolt counterclockwise until the rear window is extended.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage to your vehicle when extending the window, make sure the rear window is in the guide in the power top and the fins are resting on the power top storage compartment lid.
– Drive a maximum of 30 mph (50 km/h) and have the malfunction corrected immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 48 Instrument panel: light switch

Light switch

Turn the switch to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

0 - lights are off (in some markets, the daytime running lights* are switched on when the ignition is switched on.)

- **USA models:** The daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in the **0** or **AUTO** position (only in daylight). The **Daytime running lights** can be switched on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 44* ⇨ ⚠.
- **Canada models:** The daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in the **0**, or **AUTO** position (only in daylight) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO* - automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels.

- Parking lights

- Low beam headlights

- All-weather lights*

- Rear fog light(s)*

All-weather lights*

In vehicles with all-weather lights, the front lights are adjusted automatically so that you are less likely to see glare from your own headlights, for example when driving on a wet road.

Light functions

The following light functions may be available depending on vehicle equipment and only function when the light switch is in the AUTO position.

Static cornering light - the cornering light switches on automatically when the steering wheel is turned at a certain angle at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km/h), and when the turn signal is activated at speeds up to approximately 25 mph (40 km/h). The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

Intersection lighting: on vehicles with a navigation system*, intersections can be illuminated.

WARNING

- Automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .
- To reduce glare for traffic behind your vehicle, the rear fog lights* should only be turned on in accordance with the legal regulations in the country where you are operating the vehicle.
- If the battery has been discharging for a while, the parking light may switch off automatically. Always make sure your vehicle is parked and adequately illuminated according to the legal regulations in the country where you are operating the vehicle. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.
- Observe the legal regulations in the country where you are operating the vehicle when using the lighting system that is described.

Tips

- The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is in the rearview mirror mount. Do ▶

not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
– Some exterior lighting functions can be adjusted ⇨ *page 44*.
– If you turn off the ignition while the exterior lights are on and open the door, a warning tone sounds.
– In some markets, the tail lights will switch on when the daytime running lights switch on.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals, and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Laser lighting

Applies to: vehicles with laser lighting



Fig. 49 headlight: sticker

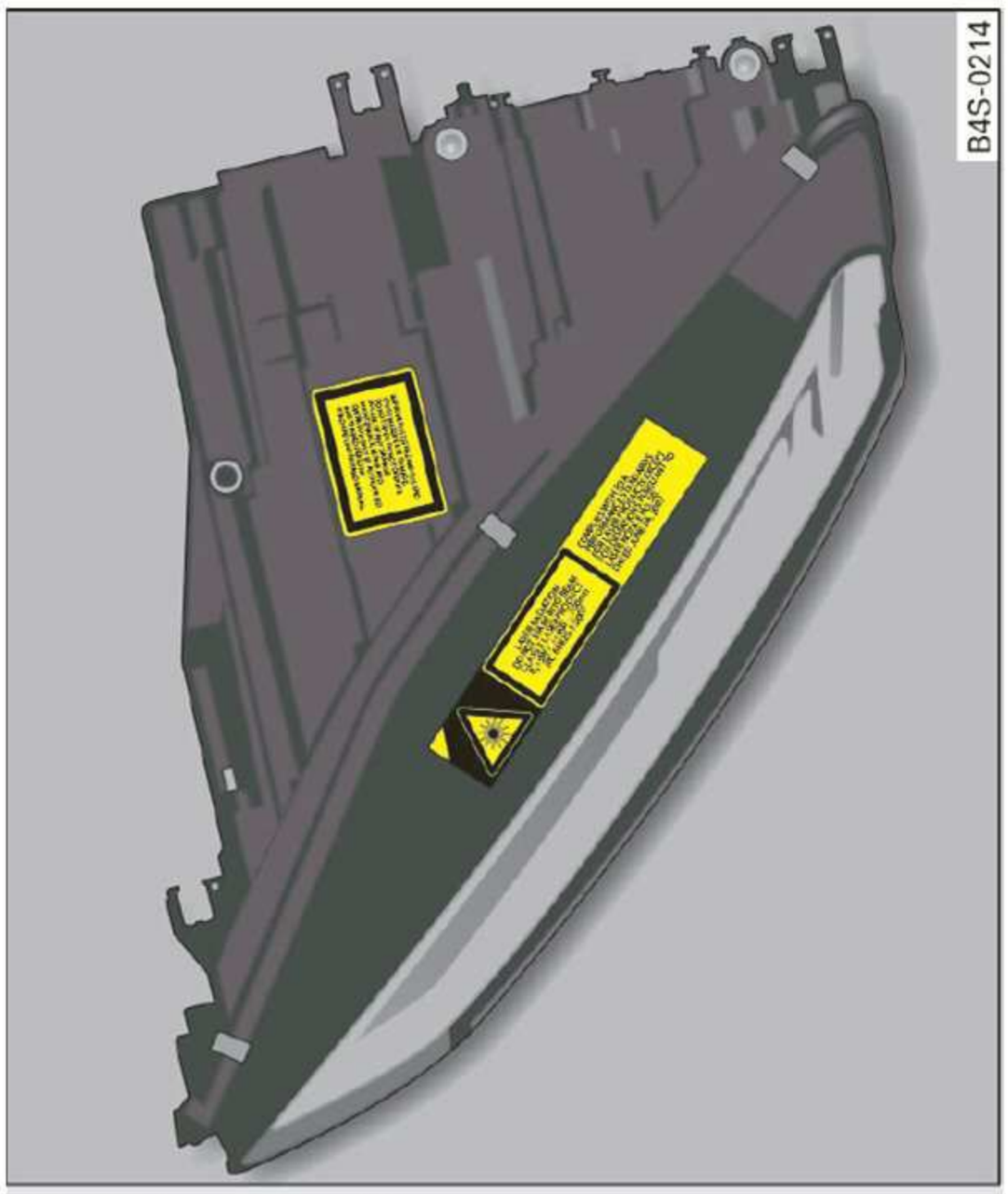


Fig. 50 headlight: sticker

The laser high beams increase the range of the headlights.

The LED high beam is controlled by the high beam assistant.

Activating high beam assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be set to AUTO, the low beams must be switched on and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 44*.

▸ to activate the high beam assistant, press the lever ③ ⇨ *page 42, fig. 51*. The AUTO indicator light appears in the Infotainment system display and the high beams switch on/off automatically. The indicator light AUTO turns on if the high beams were switched on.

Technical changes to LED headlights have significantly increased the range. An additional module integrated in the headlight converts a blue laser light into a white light using a luminescent material. The headlight contains a class 2 laser. A converter transforms the laser beam so that there is no danger when it is used for its intended purpose. ▶

The following symbol in the instrument cluster indicates when the laser lights in the high beam headlights are activated: AUTO.

WARNING

Every repair procedure on the headlights must be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility that will perform work according to Audi factory specifications. Incorrect repairs could result in eye injury, impair the function and may void the vehicle's operating license. Opening the laser module is not permitted and could cause permanent damage to the eyes.

- Laser radiation emitted from the headlamp was classified according to IEC 60825-1:2007
- The accessible emission is below the limit for laser class 2*.
- Maximum radiant power: 5 W (continuous wave), wavelength: λ= 400 nm – 700 nm
- Lighting functions of the headlamp were evaluated according to IEC 62471
- The radiation emitted from the headlamp is classified as Risk Group 2**
- Hazardous laser radiation exposure could occur if any covers or housings are removed from the headlight assembly.

Note

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights. However, if there is a malfunction of the headlight, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

- The headlight assembly should not be serviced and no maintenance should be performed.
- The entire unit must be replaced in the event that the headlamp assembly is not working properly.

Tips

The LED high beam is controlled by the high beam assistant. The laser high beams switch on approximately one second after activating the LED high beams if the following requirements are met

- The low beam headlight must be switched to the AUTO light switch position.
- The laser high beam is switched on starting at speeds of 44 mph (70 km/h).
- The laser beam is switched back off when the speed decreases below 30 mph (50 km/h) or when the headlight assistant switches the LED headlights off.

Turn signal and high beam lever

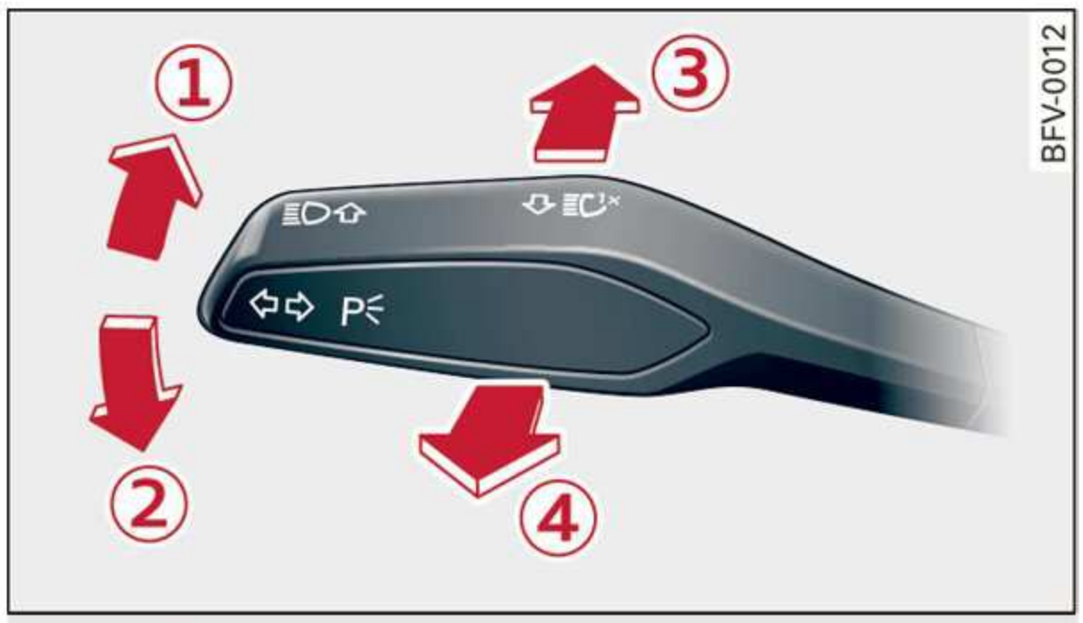


Fig. 51 Turn signal and high beam lever

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

The turn signal activates when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on. The respective ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light flashes.

① - Right turn signal

② - Left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - High beams on

④ - High beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster will turn on. ▶

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

High beam assistant

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

The high beam assistant automatically turns the high beams on or off depending on the surrounding conditions.

A sensor on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed, and other environmental and traffic conditions.

Activating high beam assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be set to AUTO, the low beams must be switched on and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 44*.

- To activate the high beam assistant, press the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 42, fig. 51*. The AUTO indicator light appears in the Infotainment system display and the high beams switch on/off automatically. The indicator light AUTO turns on if the high beams were switched on.

Switching the high beams on or off manually

If the high beams did not switch on or off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

- To switch the high beams on manually, press the lever into position ③. The indicator light turns on.
- To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

- To operate the headlight flasher when the high beam assistant is activated and high beams are switched off, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant remains active.

Messages in Infotainment display

High beam assistant: malfunction! See owner's manual

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. You can still switch the high beams on or off manually.

High beam assistant: currently unavailable. Camera view limited due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The camera view is blocked, for example by a sticker or debris.

The sensor is located between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.

WARNING

High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and switching them manually depending on light and visibility conditions. It may be necessary to operate them manually in situations such as:

- In adverse weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain, blowing snow or spraying water.
- On roads where oncoming traffic may be partially obscured, such as expressways.
- When there are road users that do not have sufficient lighting, such as bicyclers or vehicles with dirty tail lamps.
- In tight curves and on steep hills.
- In poorly lit areas.
- With strong reflectors, such as signs.
- If the area of the windshield near the sensor is fogged over, dirty, icy or covered with a sticker.

Tips

The high beam assistant is deactivated if you manually switch the high beam high beam headlights on or off ③ instead of waiting for the system to do it automatically.

4S1012721BA

Adjusting the exterior lighting

The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - You can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium**, or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Headlight assistant* - You can switch the high beam assistant* on and off. On vehicles with laser high beams, the laser light can be activated or deactivated.

Daytime running lights*

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on or off using the MMI. Select **On** or **Off**.

Canada models: The daytime running lights cannot be turned off. The lights activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on. This menu item is shown with a “gray background”.

Entry/exit lighting

The entry lighting function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you unlock the vehicle when it is dark. To switch on the function, select **Entry/exit lighting**.

The exit lighting function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you turn the ignition off and open the driver's door when it is dark. To switch on the function, select **Entry/exit lighting**.

The entry/exit lighting only works when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Emergency flashers



Fig. 52 Center console: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

- Press the ⚠ button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Tips

You should switch the emergency flashers on if:

– you are the last car in a traffic jam so that all other vehicles approaching from behind can see your vehicle
– your vehicle has broken down or you are having an emergency
– your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing another vehicle

Interior lighting

Interior lighting



Fig. 53 Headliner: interior lighting

- Door contact switch. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

A switch is no longer needed to switch the reading lights on. A swiping movement or a brief tap on the light is all that is needed to switch the light on or off. If you hold your finger on the reading light when switching it on, this can dim the light down to a certain level.

Interior lighting

There are other optional interior lighting functions that are available. Several functions can be set in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting**.

Instrument illumination



Fig. 54 Instrument illumination

The brightness of the instrument cluster and the center console can be adjusted.

- Press the knob to release it.
- Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Engine compartment lights

Applies to: vehicles with engine compartment lighting

The lights are located inside the engine compartment.

The lights switch on automatically when the engine is stopped and the entry/exit lighting is activated.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 55 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position:

/ - Adjusts the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heats the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folds the exterior mirrors*. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 25*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's exterior mirror. ▶

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. When using these mirrors to estimate your distance to vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

If the mirror housing was moved by force (for example, by running into an object when maneuvering the vehicle), the mirror must be folded all the way in using the power folding function. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this could impair the function of the mirror mechanism.

Tips

If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.

Dimming the mirrors

Automatic dimming rearview mirror

► The interior and exterior mirrors* dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from automatic dimming mirrors if the glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes and airways.

– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the eyes, flush them thoroughly with plenty of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes, and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors

Applies to: vehicles with vanity mirror

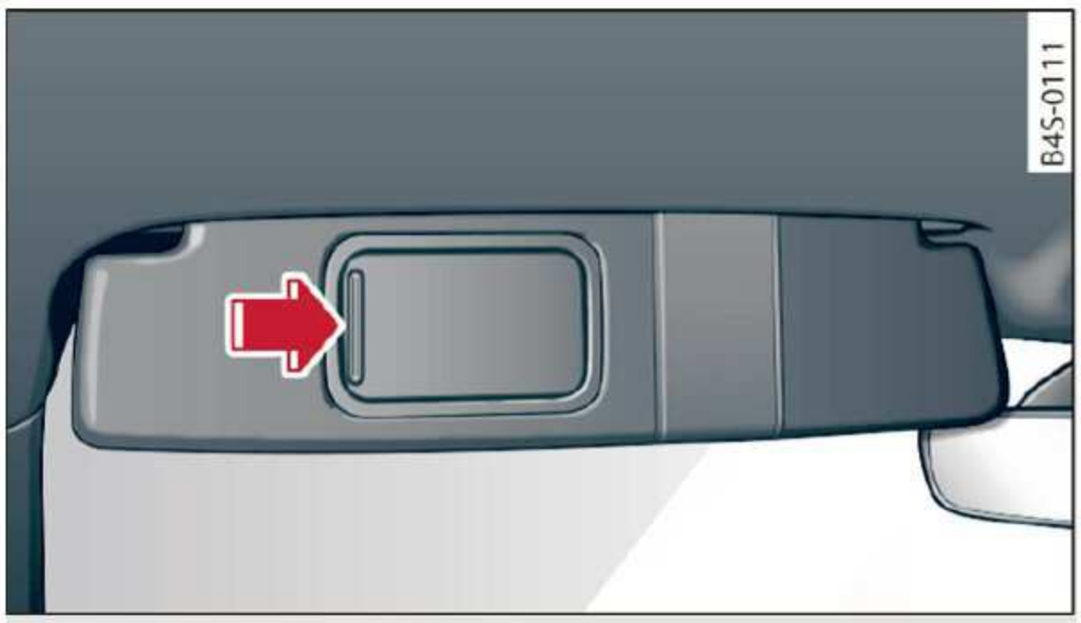


Fig. 56 Sun visor

The vanity mirrors on the sun visors have covers. Slide the cover in the direction of the arrow.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

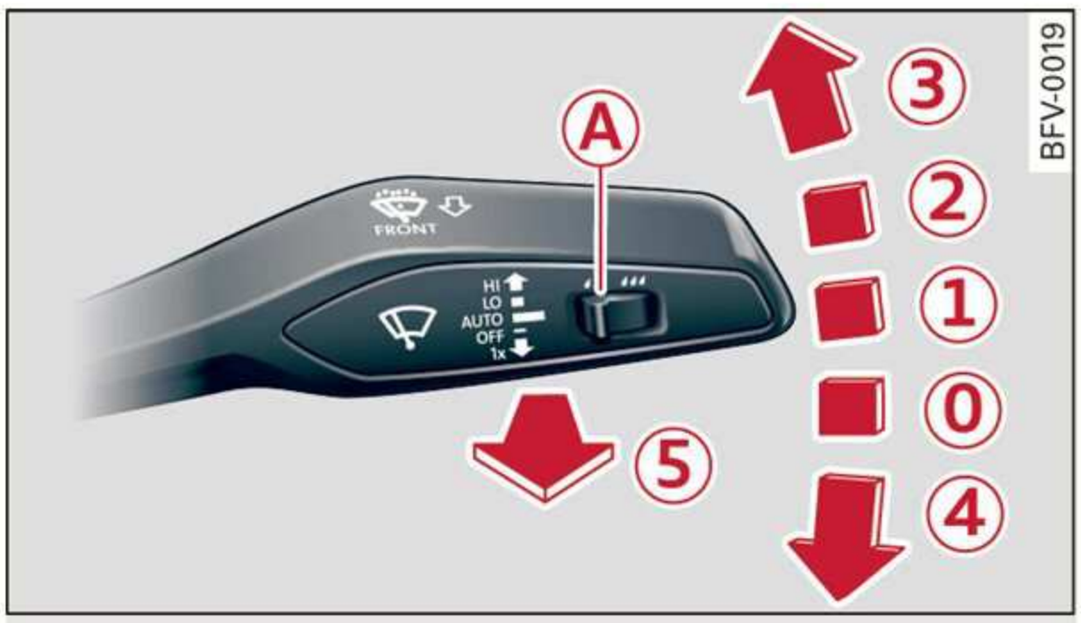


Fig. 57 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wipers off

① - Interval mode. To increase/decrease the wiper intervals, move the switch Ⓐ to the left/right. In vehicles with a rain sensor*, the wipers turn on in the rain once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor* is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode* in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Rain sensor** > **Off**.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - Clean the windshield. To eliminate water droplets, the windshield wipers perform one afterwipe after several seconds while driving in temperatures above 39 °F (4 °C). You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

WARNING

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
- The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. They can also cause wiper blade chatter.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 48, Replacing windshield wiper blades*.

Note

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
- The windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0) before using a car wash. This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the ▶

windshield wipers after the ignition is switched on again by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
– Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor* function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles in the windshield washer system are heated* at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Clean the wiper blades with a soft towel and glass cleaner.

- ▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 48*.
- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing windshield wiper blades

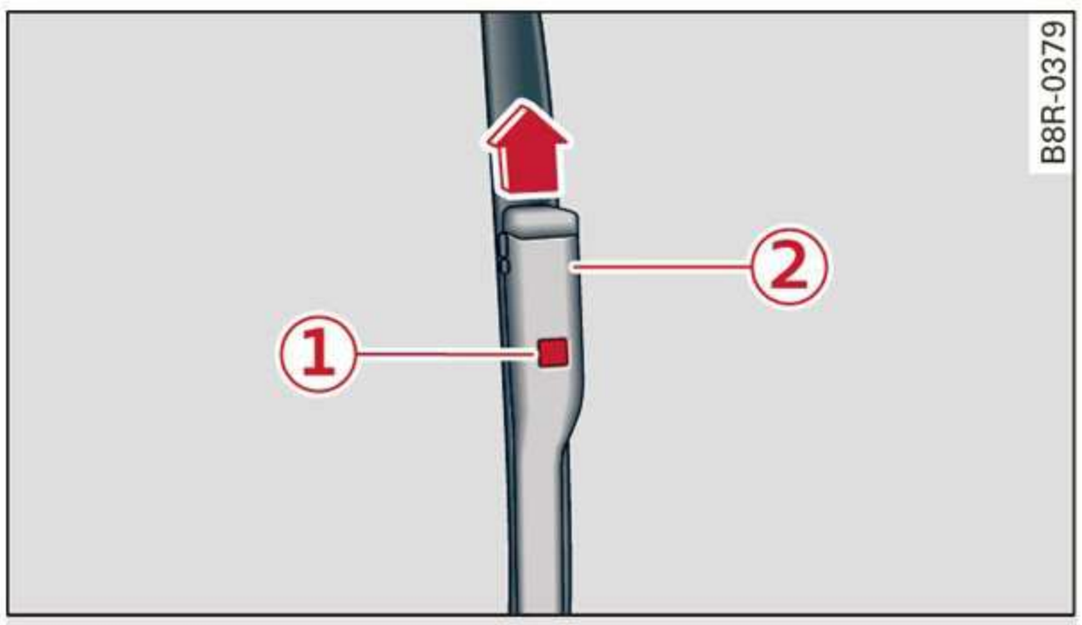


Fig. 58 Removing windshield wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

- ▸ To bring the windshield wipers into the service position, turn the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ ⇨ *page 47, fig. 57*.
- ▸ To bring the wipers into the starting position, turn the ignition on and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ for at least two seconds ⇨ *page 47, fig. 57*.

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 58* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- ▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

- ▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until you hear it latch into place.
- ▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- ▸ Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

– The windshield wipers must only be folded up when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the front lid or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not drive your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the front lid and windshield.

Tips

You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

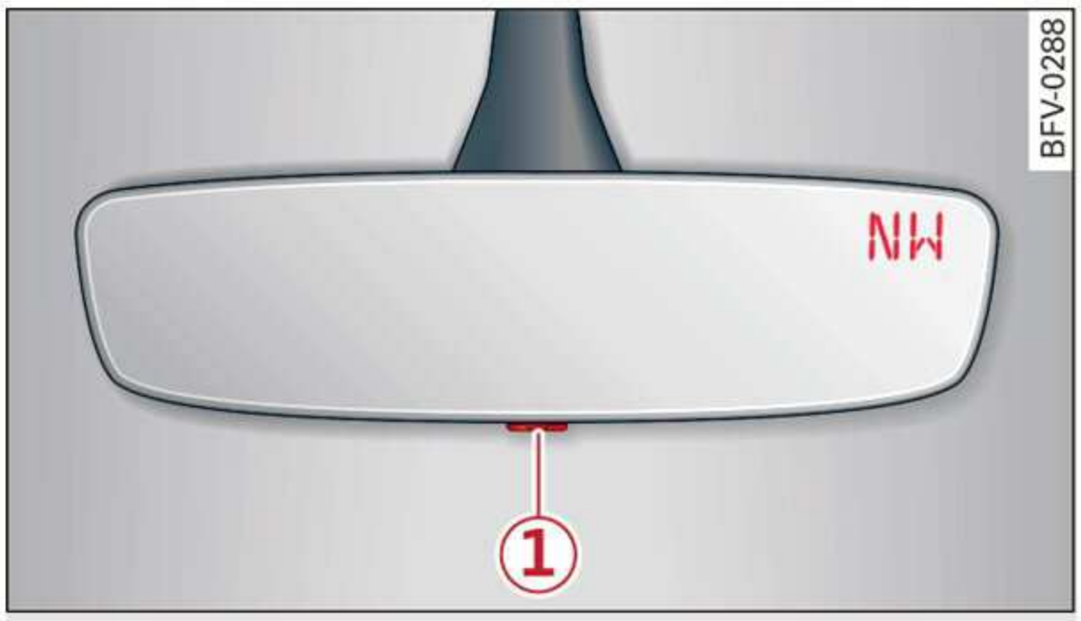


Fig. 59 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on

► To turn the compass on or off, press the button (1) until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

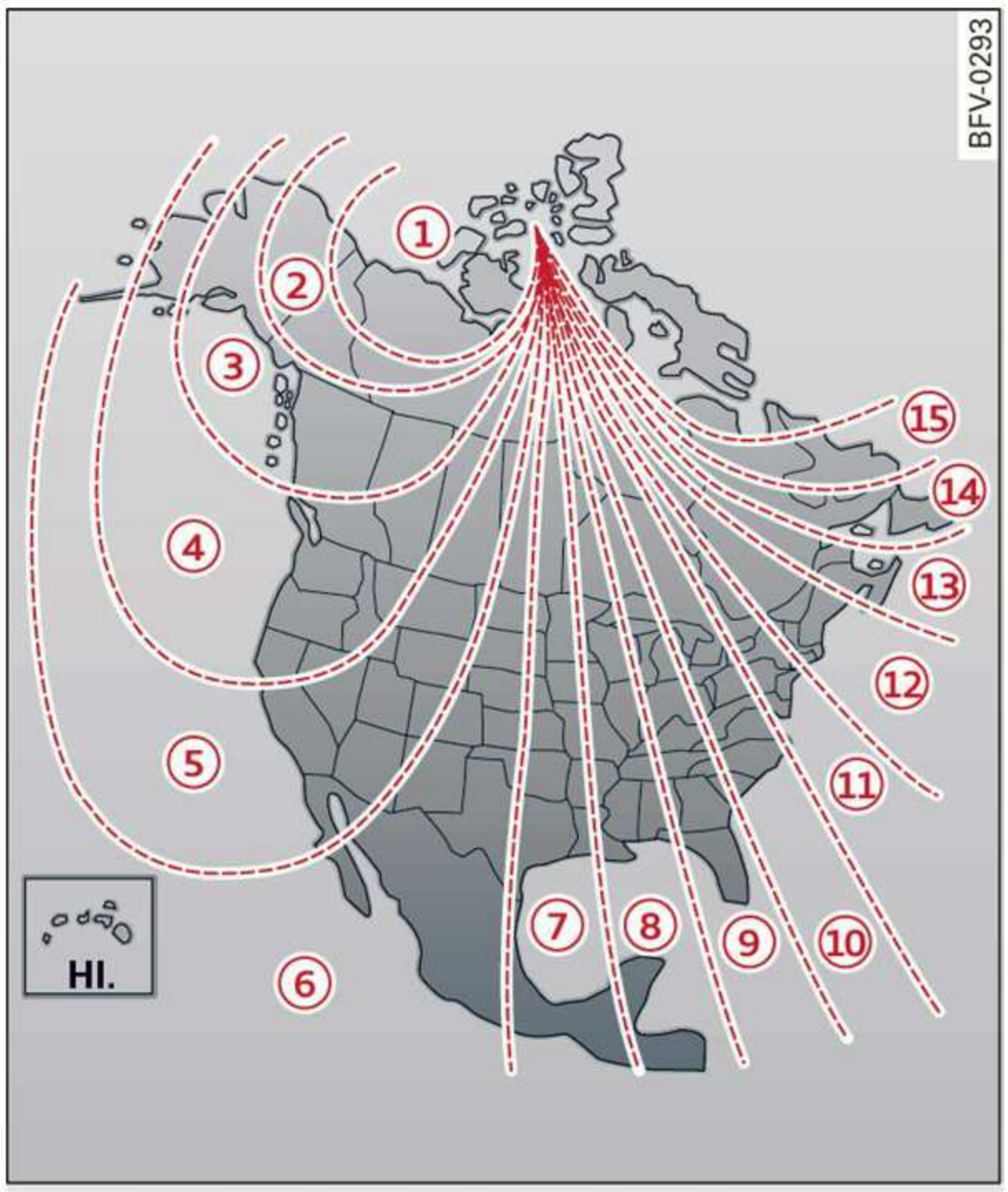


Fig. 60 North America: magnetic zone map

► Press and hold the button (1) ⇨ *page 49, fig. 59* until the number of the magnetic zone appears in the interior rearview mirror.

► Press the button (1) repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

If the display is incorrect or inaccurate, the compass must be recalibrated.

► Press and hold the button (1) until a **C** appears in the interior rearview mirror.

► Drive in a circle at about 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk to yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

– Always pay attention to the traffic and the area around your vehicle if you are reading the compass while driving.

Seats

General information

WARNING

See ⇨ *page 173, Safe driving* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

Front seats

Sport seat adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable seats



Fig. 61 Front seat: adjusting the seat (version A)

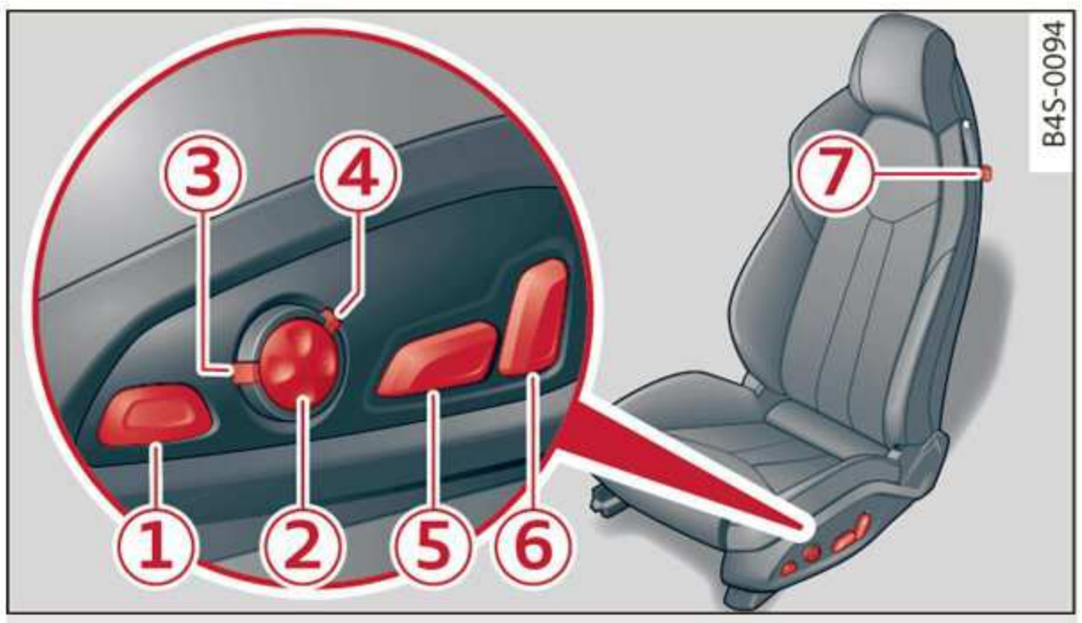


Fig. 62 Front seat: adjusting the seat (version B)

Adjusting the seat (version A) ⇨ *fig. 61*

① - Moving the seat forward/back: pull the lever and slide the seat.

② - Adjusting the lumbar support: press the button at the corresponding position.

③ - Moving the seat up/down: press the button upward/downward. To adjust the front seat cushion, press the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

④ - Adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

⑤ - Releasing the backrest: pull the strap and fold the backrest forward.

Adjusting the seat (version B) ⇨ *fig. 62*

① - Moving the upper thigh support forward/back: press the button forward/back.

② - Adjusting the lumbar support: press the button at the corresponding position.

③ - Inflating/deflating* the seat bolsters

④ - Inflating/deflating* the backrest bolsters

⑤ - Moving the seat up/down: press the button upward/downward. To adjust the front seat cushion, press the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

⑤ - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

⑥ - Adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

⑦ - Releasing the backrest: pull the strap and fold the backrest forward.

Memory function

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable seats (version B)

The memory function in the remote control key stores the driver's personalized seat profile.

The driver's seat profile is stored again and assigned to the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When you open the door, the seat profile is automatically recalled. If two people use the vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses their “own” remote control key.

The function must be switched on in the Infotainment system so that the driver's seat profile will be assigned to the remote control key when locking the vehicle.

Select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** > **Store settings on remote control key**. ▶

Check the box is checked off ✓, the function is switched on.

WARNING

– Only adjust the front seat when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident
– The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle because they could be injured.
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
– For safety reasons, the seat backrests must always be locked while driving.
– The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.
– To minimize the risk of injury during sudden braking or a collision, the driver and the front passenger must not drive or ride with the backrest in the reclined position. The safety belts and airbag system can only provide the greatest protection possible when the backrests are in the upright position and the safety belts are worn correctly. The more a backrest is reclined, the greater the risk of injury due to an incorrect seating position and safety belt position.

Tips

If you do not wish to have the seat profile for another driver assigned to the remote control key, switch the memory function off in the Infotainment system.

Adjusting bucket seats

Applies to: vehicles with bucket seats



Fig. 63 Bucket seat: adjusting the seat

① - Moving the seat forward/back: pull the lever and slide the seat.

② - Moving the seat up/down: press the button upward/downward.

③ - Releasing the backrest: pull the strap and fold the backrest forward.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the seat when the vehicle is stationary.
– The power seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle because they could be injured.
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Adjusting the seat carelessly or without checking can pinch hands and fingers.
– For safety reasons, the seat backrests must always be locked while driving.
– Never drive with a safety belt through the openings in the backrest. Otherwise the backrest could fold forward while driving and cause an accident.

Center armrest

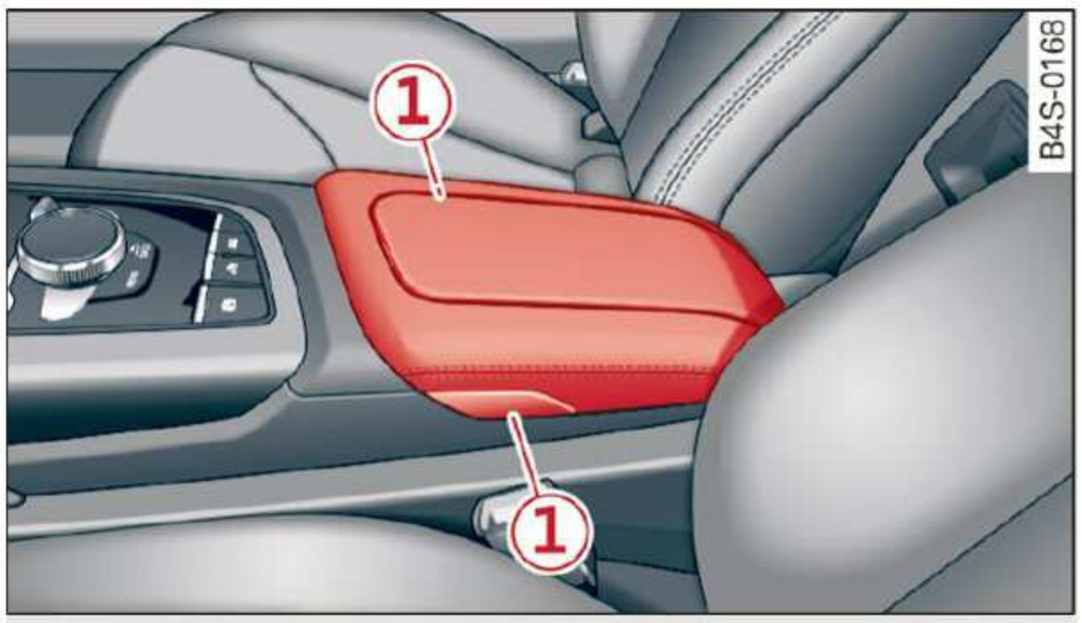


Fig. 64 Cockpit: center armrest

Opening the storage compartment

▸ To open the storage compartment, press one of the release buttons (1).

WARNING

– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– In certain positions, the front center armrest can interfere with the driver's arm movement, which increases the risk of injury.

Stowing and using

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, you may be able to use the electric power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

12 volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 volt sockets. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

The 12 volt sockets are labeled with the or 12V symbol. They are located in the front center console* and on the side trim panel in the luggage compartment*.

USB ports

Applies to: vehicles with USB port

You can charge mobile devices using the USB ports. The USB ports are labeled with the or symbol or CHARGE ONLY.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, store all connected devices securely when driving so that they do not move around inside the vehicle when braking or in the event of an accident.
- Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

- Read the operating manuals for the connected devices.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power to the power sources.
- Do not connect any device whose network class (voltage) does not match the network class designed for the socket.
- Disconnect the connectors from the power sources carefully to reduce the risk of damaging them.

Storage

Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders

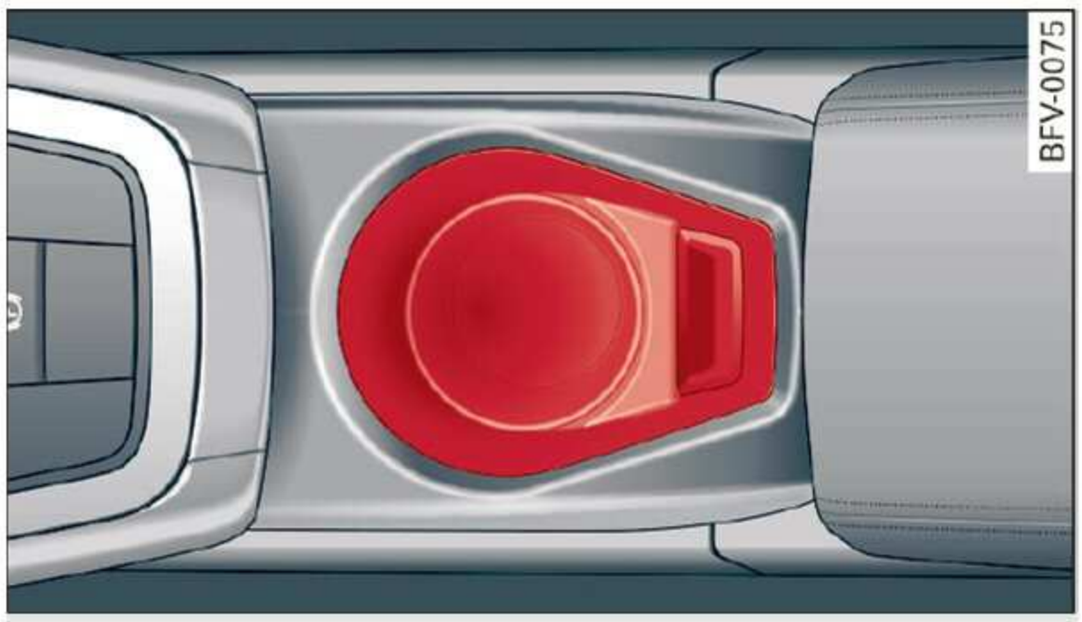


Fig. 65 Center console: Cup holders

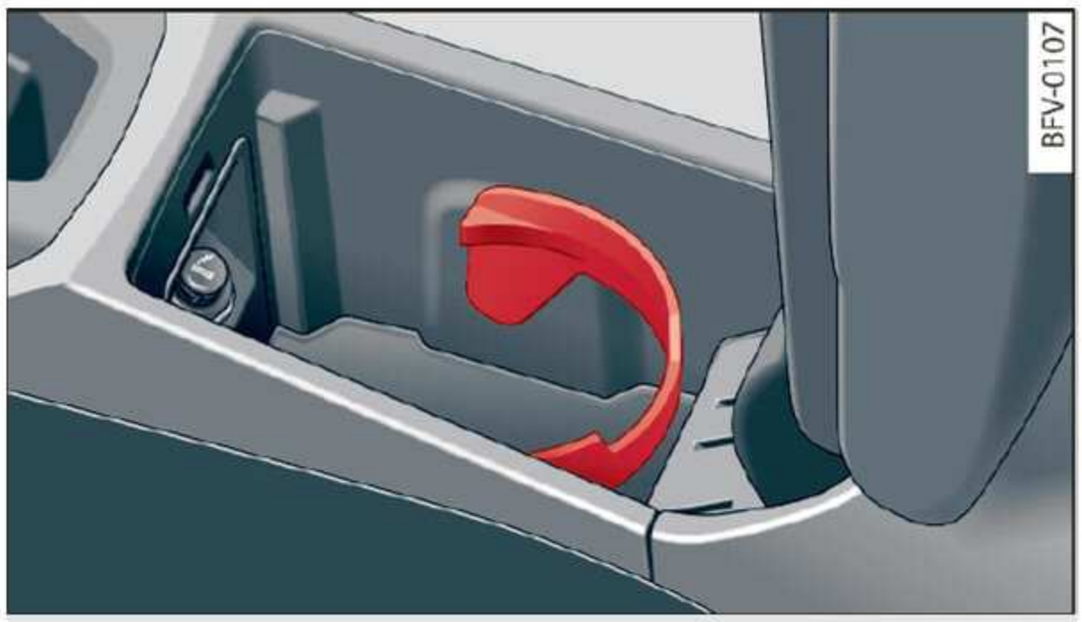


Fig. 66 Center armrest folded up: Cup holders

- To use the cup holder under the center armrest, fold it upward ⇨ *page 52*.
- Fold the plastic bracket toward the rear, if necessary ⇨ *fig. 66*.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- Never drive with containers that contain hot liquid such as coffee or tea. The hot liquid could spill and cause burns during a collision, sudden braking or other vehicle movement. Spilled hot liquid can also increase the risk of accidents and injuries.
- Only use soft containers in the cup holders. Hard cups and glasses can increase the risk of injury during a collision.
- Never use the cup holder or the adapter as an ashtray because this is a fire hazard. ▶

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment.

Additional storage compartments

You will find a variety of storage compartments and holders at various locations in the vehicle.

- Compartments in the doors
- Storage area in the glove compartment. The glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 23*.
- Storage compartment under the center armrest*
- Key compartment in the center console
- Coat hooks
- Storage compartment between the seat backrests*

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of injury, make sure all storage compartments are always closed while driving.
- Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
- Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects that will not stick out of the compartment and impair the function of the side airbags.
- Make sure your view toward the rear is not blocked, for example by hanging clothing or objects in the vehicle.
- Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.

Note

Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Luggage compartment

General information

All pieces of luggage or objects must be securely stowed.

Even small and light objects can absorb so much energy during a collision or an accident that they can cause severe injuries.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of injury, always stow objects securely in the luggage compartment.
- When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle characteristics will change due to the shift in the center of gravity, which increases the risk of an accident. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.
- Never exceed the permitted axle and load and vehicle weight ⇨ *page 290*.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the luggage compartment lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment and close the luggage compartment lid from the inside. This creates the risk of fatal injury, since the children would be locked in and may not be able to escape by themselves.
- Do not allow children to play in or on the vehicle. Close and lock the luggage compartment lid as well as all other doors when you leave the vehicle.
- Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be correctly secured with the safety belts in the vehicle ⇨ *page 180*.

Note

Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Tips

– The tire pressure must be adapted to the load ⇨ *page 254*.
– You can purchase straps at specialty stores.

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

The climate control system warms, cools and removes humidity from the air in the vehicle interior. It functions most effectively when the windows are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

Key recognition

Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the vehicle key being used.

WARNING

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

- For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
- Become familiar as quickly as possible with the correct use and function of the climate control system, especially with the defrosting and defogging function.
- When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

Note

- If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. Have it inspected by an authorized Audi dealership or a qualified electronics store.

For the sake of the environment

Reducing the amount of fuel used also reduces the amount of pollutants that enter the air.

Tips

- To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow, or leaves.
- Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
- The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.
- The flows through the vents under the rear window. Make sure the openings are not covered when placing clothing on the luggage compartment cover.

Automatic climate control system



Fig. 67 Automatic climate control system: controls

You can control the functions through the dial, buttons in the dial and the buttons. Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

Pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C) is recommended. The automatic climate control system automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. The air temperature coming from the vents, the blower speed, and the air distribution are also automatically adjusted. In all heating mode functions except *defrost*, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

Blower

The blower speed can be adjusted in small increments using the dial ①. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. You can adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

A/C **Cooling mode**

You can turn the cooling system on or off by pressing the A/C button. The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. Cooling mode switches off automatically when the outside temperature is below zero.

The temperature can be adjusted with the control ②.

Temperature

The temperature can be adjusted in small increments using the dial ②.

AUTO **Automatic mode**

The AUTO button turns on automatic mode. AUTO mode switches off once a button in the climate control system is pressed. Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

Air distribution

The **air distribution** can be adjusted with the control ③. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

The air vents in the cockpit are adjustable.

To keep the front side windows from fogging up in damp weather, we recommend opening the side air vents and tilting them to the side.

Recirculation mode

The recirculation mode can be turned on manually or automatically*. ▶

– Switching manual recirculation mode on and off: Press the button.
– Automatic* recirculation mode: auto recirculation needs to be activated in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Air conditioning** > **Auto recirculation**. The air quality sensor that is designed for diesel and gasoline exhaust automatically switches the recirculation mode on or off depending on the level of pollutants in the outside air.

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. Switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic is recommended ⇨ ⚠.

Pressing the button, AUTO or the MAX button switches recirculation mode off.

MAX Defrosting

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The optimum amount of air flows mainly out of the vents under the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature is controlled automatically.

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

OFF climate control system

The climate control system is switched on and off by pressing the button. It also switches on when you press another button or a knob. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

REAR Rear window defogger

If the rear window defogger is activated when the ignition is switched on, the battery management determines based on the battery charge if it is possible to turn on. Otherwise, the rear window defogger functions with the engine running and switches off automatically after approximately 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than two seconds. This remains stored up to approximately 15 minutes after turning off the ignition.

Seat heating*

If you press the button the seat heating is switched on at the highest level (3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

The seat heating switches automatically from setting 3 to setting 2 after approximately ten minutes.

WARNING

– You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time, because no fresh air is drawn in and the windows can fog when cooling mode is switched off. This increases the risk of an accident.
– Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage to the seat heating elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.

Tips

– The setting for the seat heating on the driver's side is assigned to the key that is in use.
– If the front passenger's seat heating is turned on, it will not turn on again automatically if more than 10 minutes have passed between switching the ignition off and switching it on again.

Driving

General information

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in within the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) so that all moving parts work smoothly together, which helps to increase the service life of the engine.

Do not drive higher than two-thirds of the maximum permitted engine RPM during the first 600 miles (1,000 km) and do not use full acceleration. The engine can be increased RPM gradually during the next 300 miles (500 km).

Reducing the risk of vehicle damage

Note

When driving on poor roads, over curbs, and on steep ramps, make sure that components that hang below the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust system, are not struck because they could be damaged. This especially applies to vehicles with low ground clearance and vehicles that are heavily loaded.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to reduce the risk of vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water or mud, the effectiveness of the brakes may be reduced due to moisture on the brake rotors and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes and restore the full braking effect.

Note

– Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension, or electrical system, can be severely damaged by driving through water.
– Always switch the Start/Stop system* off when driving through water ⇨ *page 62*.

Tips

– Determine the depth before driving through water.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse, or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water, because this can cause corrosion.

Efficient and environmentally-conscious driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact, and the wear to the engine, brakes, and tires depends mostly on your driving style. Note the following information for efficient and environmentally-conscious driving:

– Do not let the engine run while the vehicle parked.
– Use the Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 62*.
– Turn off electrical equipment that is not needed, for example seat heating*.
– Anticipate upcoming traffic situations while driving to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
– Utilize the engine braking effect.
– Avoid driving short distances or at high speeds when possible.
– Avoid adding extra weight to the vehicle if possible, for example by not leaving roof racks or bike racks installed when they are not needed.
– Have maintenance performed regularly on the vehicle.
– Do not drive with winter tires during the summer.
– Make sure the tire pressure is correct ⇨ *page 254*. ▶

Tips

The amount of noise produced by the vehicle can increase significantly when driving with a sporty style. Show respect to others around you and the environment with the way you operate your vehicle, especially at night.

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The steering wheel position is fully adjustable up and down and forward and back.

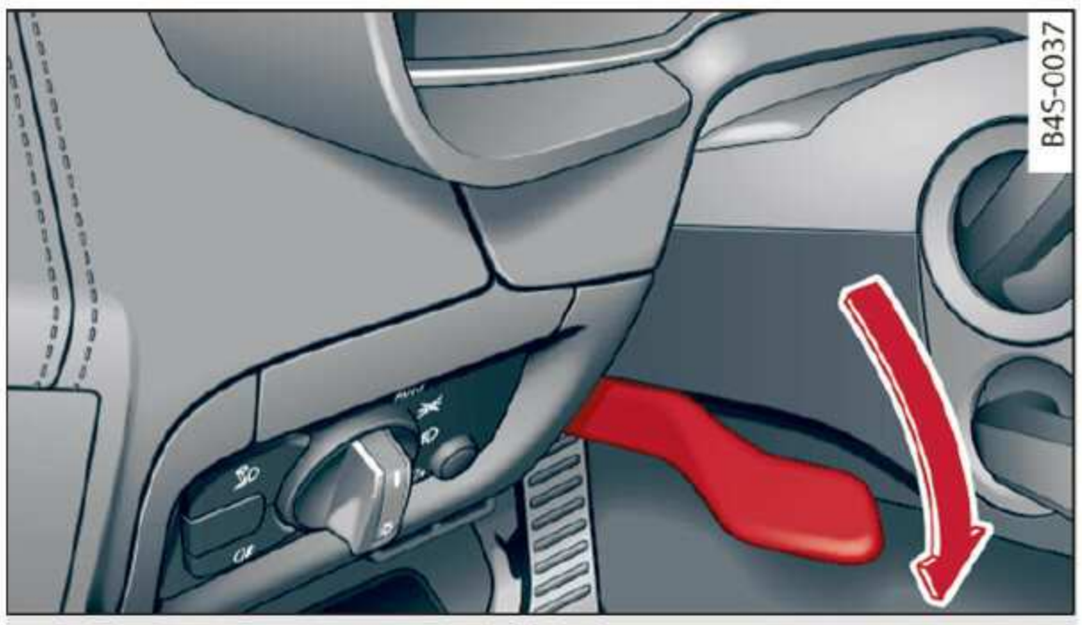


Fig. 68 Lever on the steering column

- ▸ Tilt the lever ⇨ *fig. 68* downward ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever against the steering column until it is secure.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering wheel adjustment and an incorrect seating position can cause serious injuries.

– Only adjust the steering column when the vehicle is stationary so that you do not lose control of the vehicle.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is at least a 10 in (25 cm) distance between your chest and the steering wheel. If you do not maintain this distance, you will not be properly protected by the airbag system.
– If your physical characteristics prevent you from sitting at least 10 in (25 cm) or more away from the steering wheel, see if an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can provide adapters that will help.
– If your face is level with the steering wheel, the airbag does not provide as much protection during a collision. Always make sure that the steering wheel is level with your chest.
– Always hold the steering wheel with your hands in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
– Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or with both hands on the rim or the center of the steering wheel. Holding the steering wheel incorrectly significantly increases the risk of injury to the hands, arms and head if the airbag deploys.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The START ENGINE STOP *button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.*



Fig. 69 Steering wheel: START ENGINE STOP button

Starting the engine

- ▸ Press the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

Switching the ignition on or off

If you would like to switch the ignition on without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button **without** pressing the brake pedal. Vehicles without ▶

the Start/Stop system*: the needle in the tachometer moves into the **READY** position.

► To switch the ignition off, press the button again. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine.

If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. If this is the case, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Start/Stop system

See the information in ⇨ *page 62, Start/Stop system*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

– Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

► Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
► Press the START ENGINE STOP button.

Steering lock[1)]

The steering is locked when you switch off the engine and open the driver's door. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You may need to use more force when braking or steering. Because you cannot brake and steer as you usually would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. If you do not do this, the engine could be started and electrical equipment such as the power windows could be activated. This can lead to serious injuries.
– For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll unintentionally.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run, even if the ignition is switched off.

Messages

Pressing the start/stop button again will switch off the engine ▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.

This message appears when you press the START ENGINE STOP button while driving.

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The engine automatic start system has a malfunction. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. To start the engine, press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button.

Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is no convenience key inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize the key. The convenience key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by an object that *disrupts* the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the signal.

To still be able to start or stop the engine, see ⇨ *page 62, Starting the engine when there is a malfunction*.

Remote control key: key not detected. Is the key still in the vehicle?

The indicator light turns on and this message appears if the convenience key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the convenience key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Please press the brake pedal

This message appears if you do not press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Please select N or P

This message appears when starting or stopping the engine if the selector lever is not in the "N" or "P" position. The engine will not start/stop.

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example, if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affecting the key or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 70 Steering column/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

As long as the message **Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual** is displayed, you can emergency start your vehicle.

- ▸ Press the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button.
- ▸ Hold the master key in the location indicated in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 70*. The engine will start.
- ▸ If the engine does not automatically start, press the START ENGINE STOP button again.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start/Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a traffic light. The ignition remains switched on during this stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed. ▸

The Start/Stop system is automatically activated once the ignition is switched on.

Basic requirements for Start/Stop mode

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt much be fastened.
– The engine compartment lid must be closed.
– The vehicle must have driven faster than 2 mph (4 km/h) since the last time it stopped.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.
– To reduce the risk of injuries, make sure that the Start/Stop system is turned off when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 64*.

Note

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 64*.

Stopping/starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

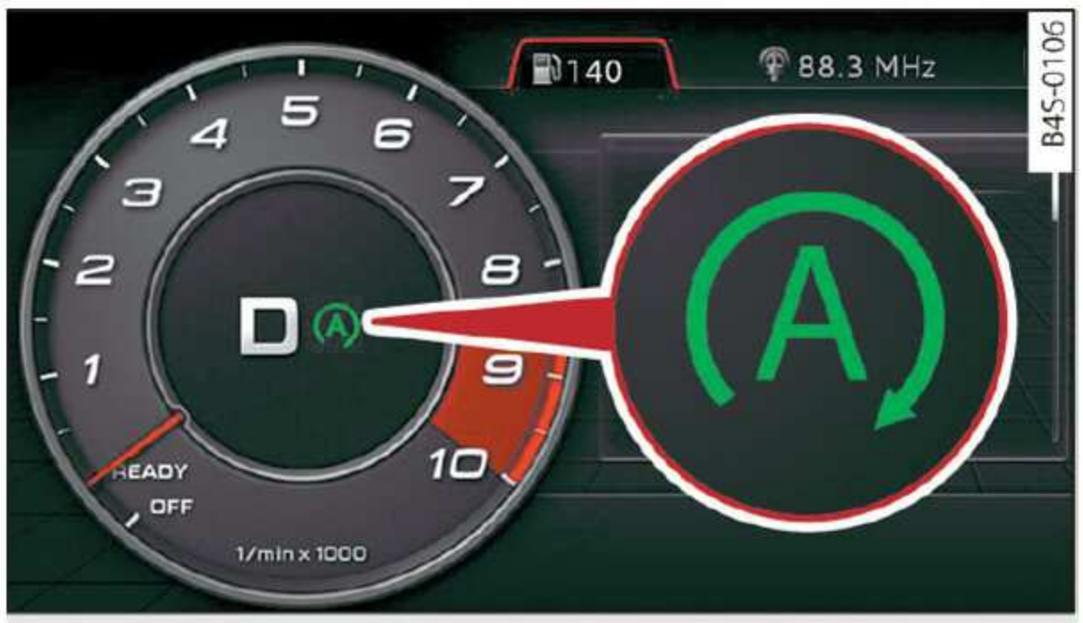


Fig. 71 Instrument cluster: engine switched off (Stop phase)

▸ Brake the vehicle to a stop and keep pressing the brake pedal. The engine will switch off. The Ⓐ indicator light appears in the display.
▸ The engine starts again when you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The Ⓐ indicator light turns off.

The engine will turn off in the “P”, “D”, “N” and “S” gears as well as in manual mode. In the “P” gear, the engine will also remain off if you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The engine starts again when you press the accelerator pedal or engage another selector lever position and take your foot off the brake pedal.

If you select the “R” gear during a Stop phase, the engine will start again.

Shift from D to P quickly to prevent the engine from starting unintentionally when shifting through R.

Tips

– You can control if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. If you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will switch off.
– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a Stop phase. ▶

– When you stop and the Start/Stop system turns the engine off, the ignition remains on. Make sure the ignition is switched off before you leave the vehicle or else the battery could drain.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Starting and stopping the engine automatically

The system checks if certain conditions are met before and during the Stop phase, and determines if the engine stops and how long it remains stopped. For example, if power usage is high, the engine will not be stopped. Along with other conditions, the following factors influence the automatic engine start or stop:

– Environmental conditions (slopes, inclines, elevation, temperature)
– Battery (charge status, temperature, power usage)
– Engine temperature
– Assist systems
– Driving behavior

Depending on the engine, the indicator light may appear if the engine is not stopped.

Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition will switch off **automatically** under the following conditions:

– If the vehicle has already been driven
– If the Start/Stop system has stopped the engine
– If the driver's door is opened
– If the driver's safety belt is unbuckled
– If the brake pedal is not pressed
– If the vehicle is stationary

In this case, the parking lights switch on in place of the low beams and the message **Side marker lights will switch off automatically in 30 minutes. See owner's manual** appears in the Infotainment system display. The side marker lights will switch off after approximately 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle.

If the Start/Stop system has not turned off the engine or if you have switched the Start/Stop system off manually, the ignition will not be automatically switched off and the engine will continue to run ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Tips

If you select the “D”, “N” or “S” gear after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the engine to switch off again.

Manually switching the Start/Stop system off and on

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.



Fig. 72 Center console: Start/Stop system button

► To switch the Start/Stop system off/on manually, press the button. The LED in the button turns on when the system is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a Stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Start/stop system: deactivated. Please start engine manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a Stop phase. The Start/Stop system will **not** be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started with the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start/stop system: malfunction! Function unavailable. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Electromechanical parking brake

The Ⓟ switch is located under the selector lever in the center console.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

Setting/manually releasing the parking brake

- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch turns on. The PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light also turns on in the instrument cluster display.
- To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light in the display turn off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: The driver's door must be closed.

- To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 66, Starting to drive*.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brakes are malfunctioning or the pedal is obstructed.

- Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
- As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking stops.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The hydraulic brake system will brake all four wheels. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Parking

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
- Select the "P" selector lever position.
- Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

– If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.

– Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the when the standard brake pedal is malfunctioning or obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the ▶

vehicle to skid or the rear end to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.
– If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake once it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the "P" position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one should remain in the vehicle when it is locked - especially children. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Note

Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, you can set the parking brake manually. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and the vehicle starts to move ⇨ *page 66*.

Tips

– Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.
– If there is a power failure, the parking brake will not set if it is released, and it will not release if it is set ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Starting to drive

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed.

► To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

Starting on hills with hill hold assist

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

► To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be facing uphill.

After releasing the brake pedal, the braking power is maintained briefly ⇨ ⚠ to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. This allows you to begin driving more easily.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with hill hold assist

– If you do not begin driving immediately or the engine stalls after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The intelligent technology of hill hold assist cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. The increased comfort offered by hill hold assist should not cause you to take safety risks. ►

– Hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle in place on all hills (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
– To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

Sporty driving

When driving in a sporty style, for example on a driving track, the wear on all vehicle components is greatly increased, especially on the engine, transmission, tires, brakes, and suspension. This can result in increased wear. Also note the following points:

– Make sure the vehicle is in good condition. Make sure to check the brake pads, tire tread, and tire pressure (when tires are warm).
– Beforehand, warm up the engine by driving no higher than two-thirds of the maximum permitted engine RPM. The engine oil temperature must be brought to a minimum of 140 °F (60 °C).
– Before stopping the vehicle, allow the engine and brakes to cool back down to a regular operating temperature by driving normally.

If necessary, use the following functions:

– Audi drive select* **Dynamic** mode ⇨ *page 78*
– Launch Control ⇨ *page 70*
– Limit ESC ⇨ *page 87*

Tips

Wear caused by load does not constitute a vehicle fault as defined by the terms of the warranty.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically-controlled DSG transmission called S tronic. Two independent clutches transfer the power between the engine and transmission. It allows the vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

The transmission shifts up or down automatically depending on which drive program is selected.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)** ⇨ *page 71*.

Selecting a selector lever position

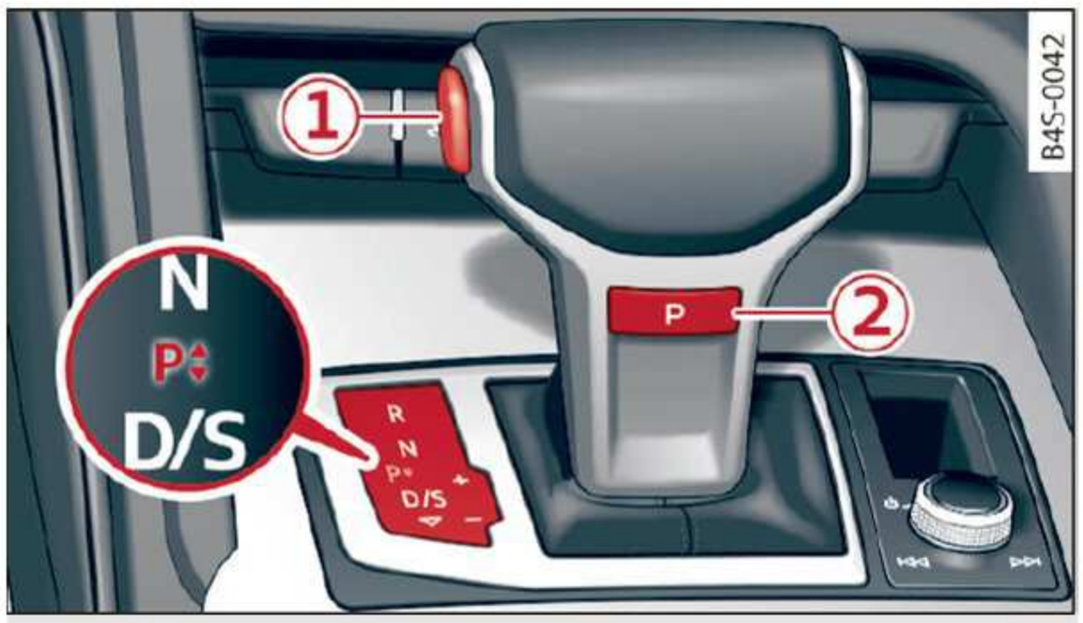


Fig. 73 Selector lever

The current selector lever position is shown next to the selector lever ⇨ *fig. 73*. The current selector lever position is also shown in the instrument cluster display.

▸ You may need to release the selector lever lock depending on which selector lever position is selected and which one you would like to select.
▸ To do this, press the release button (1) on the selector lever ⇨ *fig. 73*.
▸ To engage the nearest selector lever position, move the selector lever forward or back until you feel the first pressure point. The selector lever will return to its original position.
▸ To shift beyond the nearest selector lever position, move the selector lever past the pressure point into the desired position. The selector lever will return to its original position.

For example, you can skip over the "N" position if you would like to go directly from "D" into "R".

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock reduces the risk of selecting a position unintentionally, which can cause the vehicle to roll. When engaging some selector ▶

lever positions, you must press the release button ① on the selector lever and/or press the brake pedal ⇨ *fig. 73*.

You must press the brake pedal to engage a selector lever position when the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary.

You do not have to press the brake pedal if you shift from "D" to "R" within one second. This allows you to “rock” the vehicle to free it when it is stuck.

P - Park

The wheels are locked in this position. Only shift into park when the vehicle is stationary ⇨ ⚠. To select the "P" selector lever position, press the "P" button ② on the selector lever ⇨ *fig. 73*. **P** appears next to the selector lever.

You can only shift out of park when the engine is running and you are pressing the brake pedal. To release the parking lock, press the brake pedal, press the locking button ① on the selector lever and select the desired selector lever position ⇨ *fig. 73*.

P engages automatically when you switch the engine off while D, S or R is engaged or in manual mode.

If you switch the engine off when the N position is selected, the transmission remains in N for approximately 20 minutes and then P is engaged.

You must use the parking lock emergency release before towing the vehicle ⇨ *page 73*.

R – Reverse

The reverse gear is engaged in this position. Only select reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠. To engage the "R" selector lever position, press the brake pedal, press the release button ① on the selector lever, and select the "R" position ⇨ *fig. 73*.

A tone will sound when the reverse gear is engaged.

N - Neutral (idle)

The transmission is in idle in this position. To engage the N selector lever position, press the locking button ① on the selector lever and select the N position ⇨ *fig. 73* or pull both shift paddles at the same time ⇨ *page 71, fig. 75*.

If you switch the engine off when the N position is selected, the transmission remains in N for approximately 20 minutes and then P is engaged.

You cannot select the "N" position when the ignition is switched off. When driving through an automatic car wash, first select the "N" position and then turn the engine off.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when the transmission is in the "N" position.

D/S - Driving forward

When the transmission is in the "D/S" position, it can be operated either in the normal "D" mode or in the "S" sport mode. Move the selector lever back to engage the "S" sport mode. You can only select the S selector lever position when "D" is engaged. To select the "D" selector lever position again when "S" is engaged, move the selector lever back ⇨ ⚠. To shift from "N" to "D" when traveling at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h), press the brake pedal and shift into the "D" position ⇨ ⚠.

In the **normal mode** "D", the transmission automatically selects the correct gear. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** "S" for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting may become noticeable when accelerating.

The "S" selector lever position engages automatically when you select the dynamic mode in drive select.

Additional driving programs are available when you select the performance mode* ⇨ *page 79*.

WARNING

– Before starting to drive, check if the desired selector lever position is displayed next to the selector lever. ▶

– The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
– Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except "P" and "N") when the engine is running.
– Before opening the engine compartment lid, select the "P" selector lever position and set the parking brake. This reduces the risk of an accident. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 229, General information*.

Tips

If you accidentally select "N" while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting "D" or "S".

Driving tips

Starting the engine

► The P or N position must be selected.

Starting from a stop

► Press and hold the brake pedal.
► Start the engine ⇨ *page 60*.
► Press the locking button ① on the selector lever and select the D/S or R position ⇨ *page 67*.
► Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
► Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Various convenience functions are available for starting on hills ⇨ *page 66*.

Stopping temporarily

► Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, for example at a traffic light. Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
► To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep hills ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ (!).
► The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping or parking

If the selector lever is not in the "P" position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll.

► Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
► Set the parking brake.
► To select the "P" selector lever position, press the "P" button ② on the selector lever ⇨ *page 67, fig. 73*.

Under certain conditions, such as driving in the mountains, it may be helpful to switch to manual mode temporarily to adapt to the driving conditions *manually* ⇨ *page 71*.

On hills, activate the parking brake first and then shift into the "P" position. This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

WARNING

– Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. This could result in a crash.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never select the "R" or "P" positions while driving.
– Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.

Note

– When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat and can damage it. Set the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped while the selector lever is in the "N" position will damage the automatic ▶

transmission, because it is not lubricated under those circumstances ⇨ *page 278, Towing*.

– The transmission can overheat and be damaged under certain driving and traffic conditions such as frequent starts, creeping for a long time, or stop-and-go traffic. When the or indicator light turns on, stop the vehicle at the next opportunity and let the transmission cool ⇨ *page 72*.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake only releases automatically when the driver's door is closed.

Launch Control Program

The Launch Control Program enables maximum acceleration.

Requirement: the engine and transmission must be at operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned. The performance mode* must be selected or dynamic mode must be selected in Audi drive select.

- ► With the engine running, press the OFF button briefly one time [1] .
- ► Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least 1 second.
- ► Press the accelerator pedal down completely at the same time until the engine reaches a high RPM that remains constant and the message appears **Launch control program: activated** appears.
- ► Remove your left foot from the brake.

WARNING

– Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.

– Only use Launch Control when road and traffic conditions allow it and other drivers will not be endangered or impacted by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.

– Please note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can break away when ESC sport mode is switched on, especially when the road is slippery.

– Once the vehicle has started moving, press the OFF button briefly to turn the ESC sport mode off again.

Tips

– The transmission temperature may increase significantly after using the launch control program. If that happens, the program may not be available for a few minutes. It will be available again after a cool-down period.

– When accelerating using the launch control program, all vehicle parts are subject to heavy loads. This can lead to increased wear.

1) The ESC light turns on and stays on, and the message **Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Limited stability** appears temporarily in the Infotainment system to indicate that the system was deactivated.

Shifting manually (tiptronic mode)

The tiptronic mode allows the driver to shift the gears manually.



Fig. 74 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever



Fig. 75 Steering wheel: shifting manually

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into tiptronic mode while the vehicle is stationary or while driving.

- ▸ To shift into tiptronic mode, push the selector lever from the "D/S" position to the right. As soon as the transmission switches over, the "M" selector lever position will appear in the Infotainment system display.
- ▸ To shift up a gear, tap the selector lever forward ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 74*.
- ▸ To shift down a gear, tap the selector lever backward ⊖.
- ▸ To switch tiptronic mode off, push the selector lever back into the "D/S" position.

Starting to drive using the shift paddles

You can operate the shift paddles in the "P" or "N" selector lever positions.

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Start the engine ⇨ *page 60*.
- ▸ To engage a gear, tap the ⊕ shift paddle ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ▸ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving tips on page 69*.
- ▸ To engage the "N" position, tap both shift paddles at the same time.

Shifting with the shift paddles

You can operate the shift paddles in the "D/S" or "M" selector lever positions.

- ▸ To shift up a gear, tap the shift paddle ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 75*.
- ▸ To engage the highest gear, hold the ⊕ shift paddle.
- ▸ To shift down a gear, tap the ⊖ shift paddle.
- ▸ To shift into the lowest gear, hold the ⊖ shift paddle.

When accelerating, the transmission does **not** automatically shift to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine RPM is reached. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear and the engine utilizes its full power, if the vehicle speed and engine RPM permit. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum permitted engine RPM is reached.

⚠ WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

ⓘ Tips

Kick-down is only available in manual mode when the “comfort” or “auto” driving program is selected. Likewise, an upshift occurs ▸

in manual mode before reaching the maximum engine speed only in the “comfort” or “auto” driving programs.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location and secure it so it does not roll. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Selector lever: malfunction! You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the selector lever. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

P button: malfunction! Auto P when engine off. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the "P" button on the selector lever. The transmission automatically engages "P" when you switch off the engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: please press brake pedal and select gear again

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style

The transmission temperature has increased significantly. Drive very cautiously or take a break from driving until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving in D until engine is off

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. If you turn the engine off, you will not be able to select any other selector lever positions after starting the engine again. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. No reverse gear

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Danger of rolling away! P not possible. Please apply parking brake

– The parking lock was released using the emergency release ⇨ *page 73*. Or
– The parking lock can no longer be engaged. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Move selector lever to automatic position

There is a malfunction in the tiptronic mode. End tiptronic mode by pushing the selector lever to the left into the "D/S" position.

Parking lock emergency release

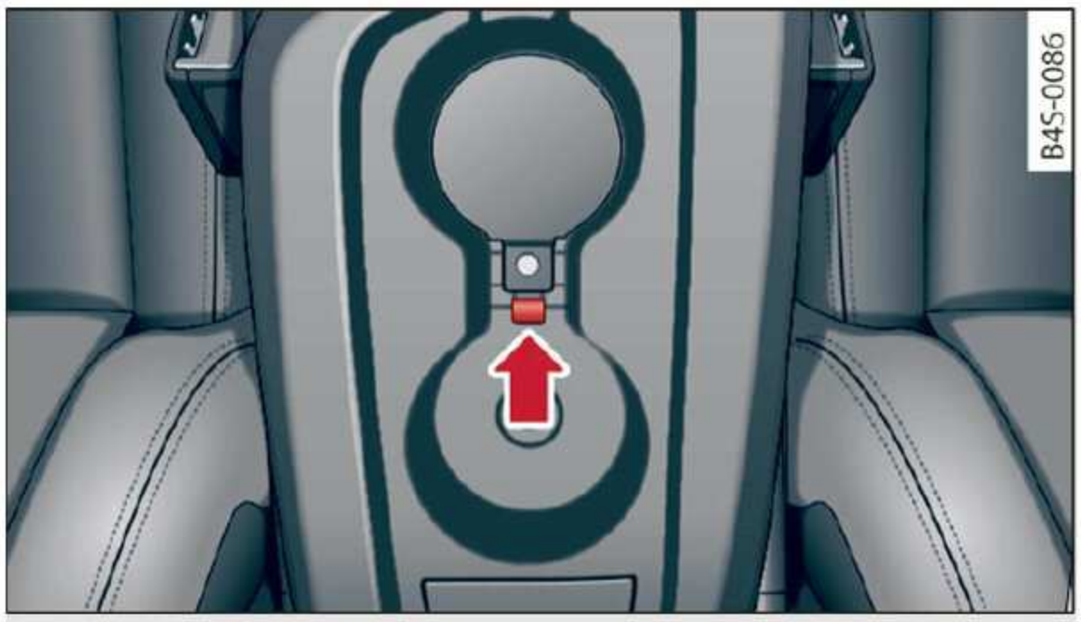


Fig. 76 Center console: parking lock emergency release cover

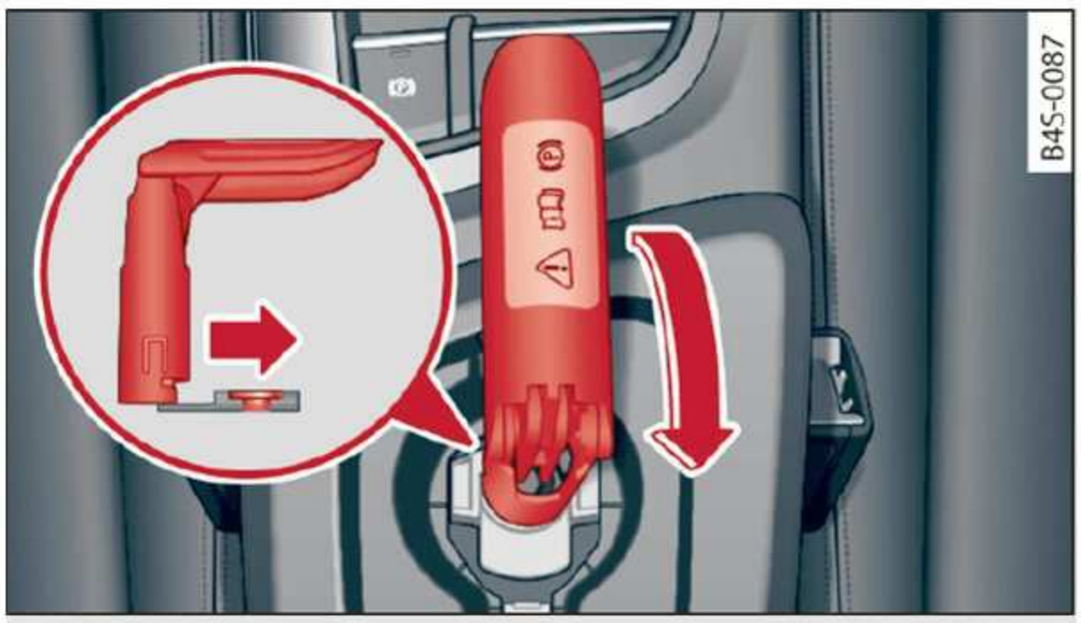


Fig. 77 Center armrest: parking lock emergency release

The emergency release is located in the center armrest. Remove the screwdriver and the red tool from the vehicle tool kit.

Releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

- ► To prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally, set the parking brake Ⓟ ⇨ *page 65* or press the brake pedal.
- ► Open the cover on the center armrest.
- ► Remove the floor cover.
- ► Remove the slotted screw using the screwdriver.
- ► Press the release tab ⇨ *fig. 76* and remove the plastic cover.
- ► Take the tool (vehicle tool kit) and fold up the handle at a 90° angle.
- ► Set the tool on the plastic base and guide it into the emergency release mechanism ⇨ *fig. 77*.
- ► Tilt the handle in the direction of the arrow toward the rear.
- ► Leave the tool inserted.

Resetting the parking lock

- ► Tilt the tool forward.
- ► Remove the tool.
- ► Reinstall the cover and the floor cover.

When the parking lock emergency release is used, the ⓘ indicator light and the "N" selector lever position turn on in the instrument cluster. The message **Danger of rolling away! P not possible. Please apply parking brake** also appears.

WARNING

– The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle.
– Only activate the emergency release while on a level surface or a slight slope.
– The parking lock may only be released using the emergency release if the parking brake is set. If it is not working, secure the vehicle from rolling using the brake pedal or other suitable means, such as blocking a front and a rear wheel. An unsecured vehicle may roll away, which increases the risk of an accident.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, you must not drive when the emergency release is activated.

Trailer towing

General information

Your Audi is not designed to tow a trailer.

Towing a trailer with your Audi is not recommended and can cause damage to the car. Damaged caused by towing a trailer is not covered by your Audi Warranty.

4S1012721BA

Assist systems

Speed warning system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps you to stay below a specified maximum speed that can be set, changed or deleted in the Infotainment system.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. A warning tone will sound as soon as your speed exceeds the stored value slightly. The MPH/Km/h indicator light and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display at the same time. The MPH/Km/h indicator light and the message turn off if the speed falls back below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Setting the warning threshold

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning** > **Manual**.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Cruise control system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed above approximately 15 mph (20 km/h). The system maintains the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to the traffic around your vehicle when the cruise control system is in operation. As the driver, you are always responsible for controlling your vehicle speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads, and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain, and conditions that could lead to hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits, or in construction zones.
- To reduce the risk of an accident, you should only resume the stored speed if it is suitable for the current traffic conditions.

Note

Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and reduces the load placed on the brakes.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system



Fig. 78 Operating lever: Switching on the cruise control system

Requirement: Switch the ignition on. ▶

► To switch the system on, pull the lever toward you to position ①.

The CRUISE or indicator light and the corresponding message will appear in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

If the brakes are malfunctioning (for example, overheating) while the cruise control system is switched on, it may shut off automatically.

Preselecting or activating a cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When the vehicle is stationary, you can preselect the cruise control speed or activate the speed while driving.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

► To preselect a cruise control speed when the vehicle is stationary, tap the lever toward ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 74, fig. 78*.
► To activate the cruise control speed, pull the lever toward position ① while driving, or
► To set the current driving speed as the cruise control speed, press the button Ⓐ on the lever.

The active cruise control speed is indicated with the CRUISE or indicator light in the instrument cluster.

Changing the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

► To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in small increments, tap the lever up to the first level toward ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 74, fig. 78*.
► To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in larger increments, tap the lever up to the second level toward ⊕/⊖.
► To increase or decrease the cruise control speed continuously, tap and hold the lever at the first or second level toward ⊕/⊖.

Overriding or deactivating the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can override or deactivate the cruise control system. When you deactivate the system, your cruise control speed will be stored and you can resume that speed.

Requirement: the system must be switched on and activated.

Overriding

► To temporarily override the cruise control speed, press the accelerator pedal.
► Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system will adjust back to the stored cruise control speed.

If you override the cruise control system for a long period of time, the cruise control system will be deactivated. The indicator light is displayed and the cruise control speed will be saved.

Deactivating

► To deactivate the cruise control speed, press the lever toward ② (not locked into place) ⇨ *page 74, fig. 78*.
► Press the brake pedal.

WARNING

Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. This will prevent braking interventions by the system.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When you switch the system off completely, the cruise control speed will be deleted.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

► To switch the system off, press the lever toward ② (locked into place) ⇨ *page 74, fig. 78*, or
► Switch the ignition off.

Message

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

CRUISE / Speed control system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the cruise control system has been deactivated. There is a temporary malfunction, for example the brakes are overheating. Switch the cruise control system on again later.

Lap timer

Introduction

Lap timer

You can measure and analyze lap times with the lap timer in the display. The time is measured in minutes, seconds and 1/10 seconds. With lap times longer than 60 minutes, the hour is also shown and the display of 1/10 seconds is removed.

The time measurement on an individual lap ends after 99 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds. A new lap starts automatically after that.

The measurement ends after a maximum of 30 laps. You can then evaluate the lap times or start a new time measurement.

You can control the lap timer using the controls on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 76*.

WARNING

Your focus should always be on driving your vehicle safely. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions such as the lap timer in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

Tips

You can retrieve information from the trip computer while the lap timer stopwatch is running.

Opening the lap timer and measuring time



Fig. 79 Multifunction steering wheel: controls



Fig. 80 Instrument cluster: lap timer

Opening the lap timer

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Lap times**
- Turn the thumbwheel (A) ⇨ *fig. 79* until **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** ⇨ *fig. 80* appears.
- Press the thumbwheel (A) to confirm the selection.

Timing laps

- To measure the lap time, press the thumbwheel (A) again while on the **New lap** menu item. This starts timing the next lap at the same time. The last time measurement moves up to the top line (1). The current lap time is in the center line in area (3).

As long as the symbol is green during the current lap time measurement, the current time is faster than your best time to date. If the symbol is red, the current time is slower (2).

Displaying split time and pausing timing

- To display a split time, turn the thumbwheel (A) until **Split time** appears in line (4). ▶

Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the selection. The split time appears for approximately 10 seconds in area ③. The timing of the current lap continues.

If you would like to insert a pause ⏸ immediately after the split time, first press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the menu item **Reset values with OK**.

- ▸ To insert a pause, turn the thumbwheel Ⓐ until **Pause** appears in line ④. Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the selection. The pause symbol ⏸ appears in area ③.
- ▸ To continue timing, press the thumbwheel Ⓐ.

If timing is paused, you can continue it later even if you switch the ignition off.

Meaning of the indicator in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 80*:

①	Display of last recorded time
②	Symbols: - ⏱: Beginning of the time measurement - ⏱: Slowest time - ⏱: Fastest time - ⏱: Split time - ⏸: Pause
③	Current time measurement
④	Menu: - Start lap 1 by driving off (start) - Start by driving off (start) - New lap (start another lap) - Split time (time for a section within the course) - Pause (pause the timing) - Cancel lap - Reset lap times (deletes all values)

Evaluating recorded times or resetting

You can evaluate the fastest, slowest and average lap times.

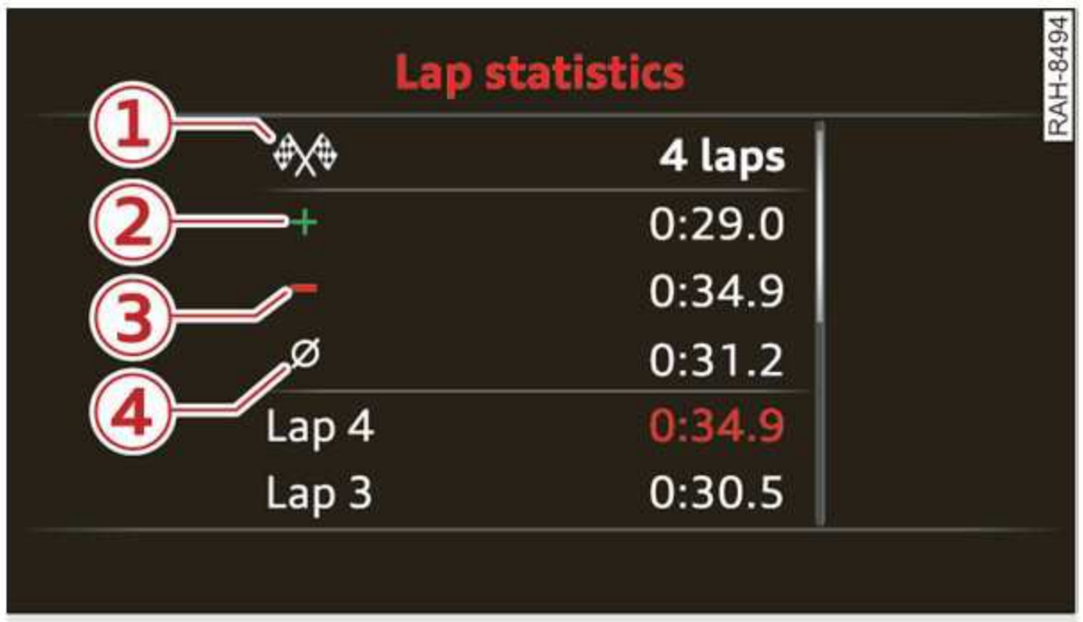


Fig. 81 Instrument cluster: lap timer

After evaluating the lap times, you can continue the current timing round or start over, meaning start lap 1 again.

- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Lap statistics**. The display shows the fastest lap "+", the slowest lap "–" and the average lap time "Ø". Turn the thumbwheel Ⓐ downward or upward to display the individual lap times.
- ▸ Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to resume the paused lap timing.
- ▸ Press the left control button on the multifunction steering wheel to reset the timer to zero. Then turn the thumbwheel Ⓐ and select the desired setting by moving the cursor (red frame). Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to confirm the selection.
- ▸ Press the thumbwheel Ⓐ to restart the lap timer for a new lap timing, if needed.
- ▸ Press the MENU button to exit the lap timer.

Evaluation legend ⇨ *fig. 81*:

①	All laps
②	+: fastest lap time
③	–: slowest lap time
④	Ø: average lap time

Tips

– Saved lap times cannot be individually deleted from the total results.
– The saved lap timer values will remain after switching the ignition off.

Audi drive select (drive settings)

Introduction

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle characteristics in one vehicle. The driver can select from four modes: **Comfort**, **Auto**, **Dynamic** and **Individual** using the drive select button on the steering wheel or through the Infotainment system to switch between a sporty and a comfortable driving mode, for example. In the **Individual** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine setting with light steering.

WARNING

Using Audi drive select incorrectly can lead to collisions, other accidents and serious injuries.

Description

The vehicle setup in each mode depends on the vehicle's features.

Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and automatic transmission respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements.

Suspension control (Audi magnetic ride)*

The suspension control uses sensors to record information regarding steering movements, braking and acceleration operations by the driver, as well as information about the road surface, driving speed, and load. With drive select, you can adjust the suspension control to sporty (dynamic), comfortable (comfort) or balanced (auto).

Steering

The power steering adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. The dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

Torque distribution*

The all wheel drive distributes the drive power to the rear axle based on the situation. The distribution of power varies depending on the selected mode from moderate (**Comfort**) to sporty (**Dynamic**). The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering.

Engine sound

The engine sound adapts to the current mode and can be subtle to sporty.

Tips

In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the auto and dynamic modes.

Selecting the driving mode

You can choose between comfort, auto, dynamic and individual.



Fig. 82 Steering wheel: drive select button and performance mode*

- ▸ Press the button ⇨ *fig. 82* (1) or
- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Audi drive select**.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired setting.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly remove your foot from the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

Comfort - Results in a comfort-oriented vehicle calibration ▶

Auto - Provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - Gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual - ⇨ *page 79*.

Setting the driving program

Depending on the driving mode selected, you can select additional driving programs with the selector lever.

D/M - Driving forward

When the transmission is in the D/M position, it can be operated either in the D normal mode or in the M manual mode. To engage the M manual mode, move the selector lever into the tiptronic gate or use the shift paddles. You can only select the M selector lever position when D is engaged. To engage D from the M selector lever position, move the selector lever out of the tiptronic gate to D/S or tap it once toward the rear ⇨ ⚠ *in Selecting a selector lever position on page 68*. To shift from N to D when traveling at speeds below 2 mph (2 km/h), press the brake pedal and shift into the D position ⇨ ⚠ *in Selecting a selector lever position on page 68*.

S/MS - Driving forward

When the transmission is in the S/MS position, it can be operated either in the S sport mode or in the MS manual mode. To engage the MS manual mode, move the selector lever into the tiptronic gate or use the shift paddles. You can only select the MS selector lever position when S is engaged. To engage S from the MS selector lever position, move the selector lever out of the tiptronic gate to D/S or tap it once toward the rear ⇨ ⚠ *in Selecting a selector lever position on page 68*. To shift from N to S when traveling at speeds below 2 mph (2 km/h), press the brake pedal and shift into the S position ⇨ ⚠ *in Selecting a selector lever position on page 68*.

M Performance - Driving forward

The transmission can be operated in the MS mode when the selector lever is in the M position. To engage the manual “MS” performance mode, press the performance mode button on the steering wheel.

Performance mode

Applies to: vehicles with performance mode

The vehicle is configured in performance mode for sporty driving.

The suspension setting, engine and transmission characteristics change when driving in performance mode. It is switched on or off with the performance mode button on the steering wheel.

Road conditions

Using the knob ⇨ *page 78, fig. 82* ②, you can optimize the vehicle settings for the current road conditions (such as wet roads).

⚠ WARNING

Please note that the stabilization functions provided by the ESC and the ASR are limited when performance mode is switched on. To reduce the risk of sliding, only switch performance mode on when your driving abilities and the traffic situation permit.

Adjusting the Individual mode

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.

- ▸ Press the drive select button > **Individual** > right control button, or
- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button>**Audi drive select** > **Individual** > right control button

After you have closed the settings, you will automatically drive in the **Individual*** mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics. ▶

Systems	comfort	auto	dynamic
Engine/transmission	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Suspension control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound	subtle	balanced	sporty
quattro*	comfortable	balanced	sporty

Tips

Your **Individual*** mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Parking aid

Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you while parking by audibly and visually warning you of objects detected in front of and behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 81*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park or maneuver ⇨ *page 83*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or exiting a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking system may be impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not obstructed by stickers, deposits or other materials. If they are, the sensor function could be impaired. For additional information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 265*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - objects with certain surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.
- Maintain enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or when there is tall grass
  - external ultrasonic sources such as from cleaning vehicles
  - in heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. Practice parking in good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume of the signals.
- What appears in the display is slightly delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for the parking aid to operate.

Parking system plus

Description

Parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

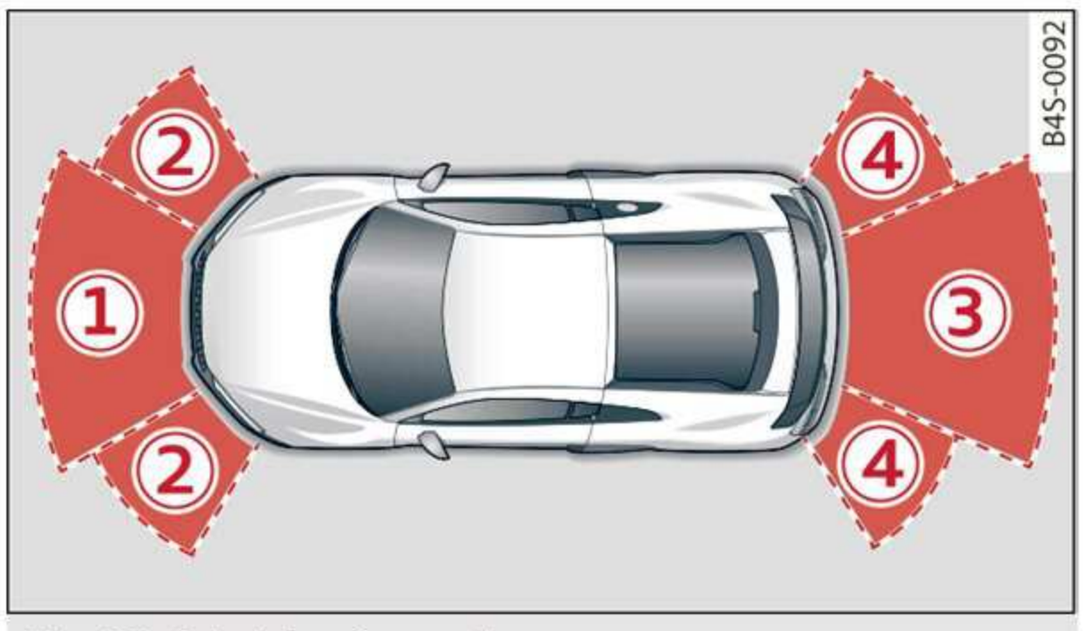


Fig. 83 Principle of operation

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 265*.

The display field begins approximately at:

①	4 ft (1.20 m)
②	3 ft (0.90 m)
③	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
④	3 ft (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 0.30 meters away. Do not continue backing up ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 81* , ⇨ ⓘ *in Introduction on page 81*!

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 81*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Introduction on page 81*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

Switching on and off



Fig. 84 Center console: parking aid button

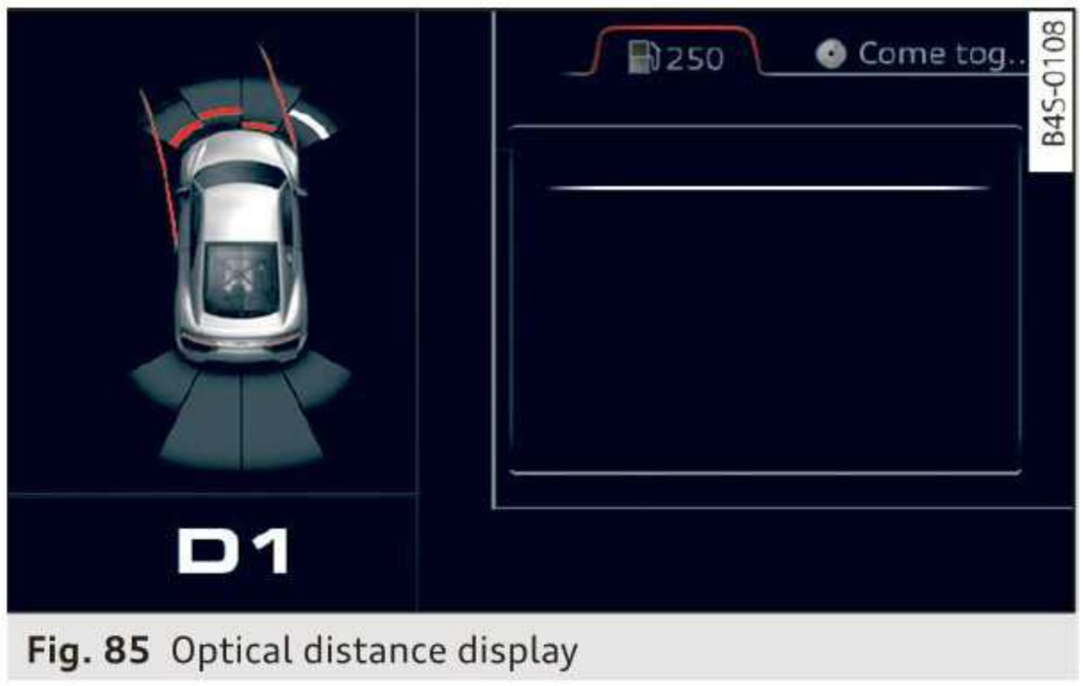


Fig. 85 Optical distance display

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 84*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Segments in the visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle (vehicles with parking system plus*) ⇨ *fig. 85* help you to determine the distance between your vehicle and an obstacle. The red lines mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 81*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Introduction on page 81*!

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

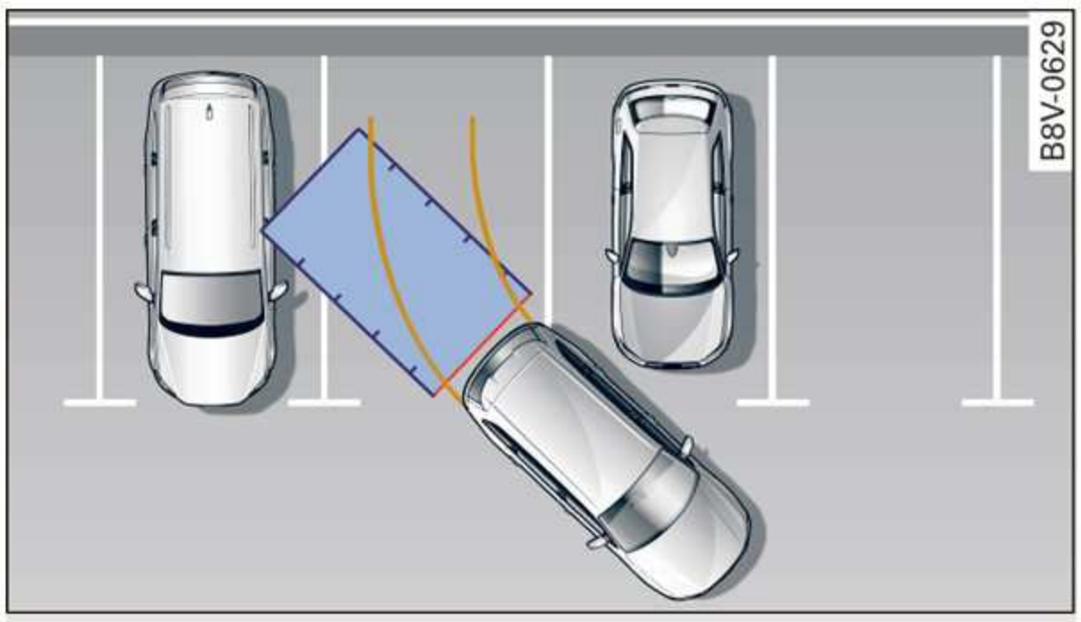


Fig. 86 Diagram: lines to aid in parking

The rearview camera helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

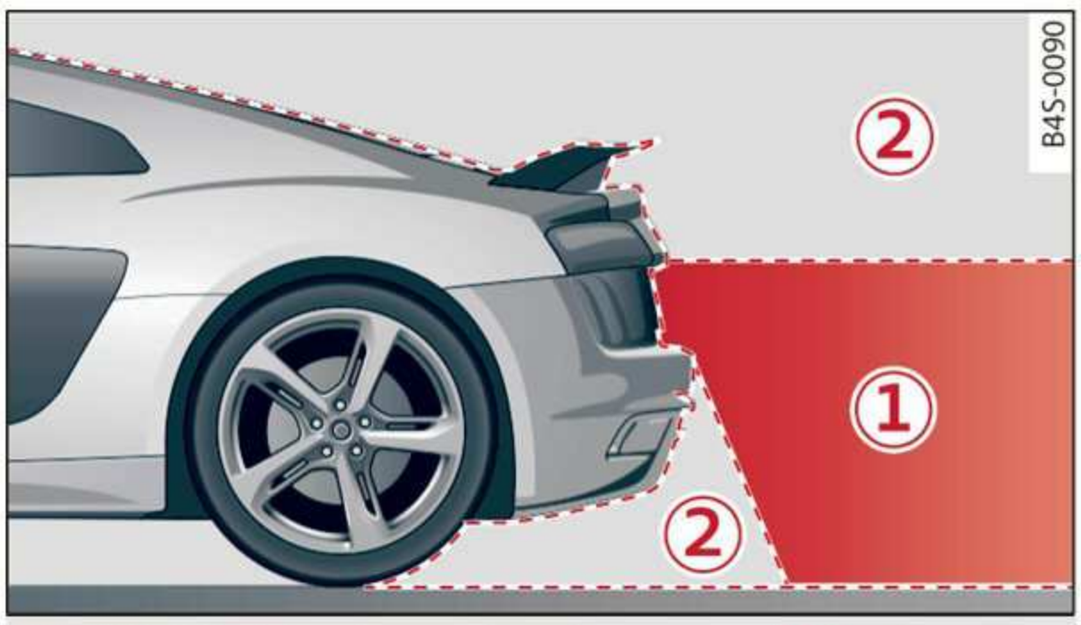


Fig. 87 Principle of operation: Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.



Fig. 88 Vehicle rear: rearview camera component location

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 88* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can impair the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 265*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 87*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are in area ②, which is not covered, are not displayed.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Introduction on page 81*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
- Use the rearview camera only if the engine compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
- In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away:
  - For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the orientation lines in this case.
  - If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  - If driven toward protruding objects.
  - If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in Introduction on page 81*.
- The orange-colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path based on the steering wheel angle. The ▶

front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

Switching on

- ▸ Shift into reverse, or
- ▸ Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 82, fig. 84*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- ▸ Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- ▸ Press the P button, or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

Tips

– The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.

– You can change the volume of the signals and the display ⇨ *page 84*.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

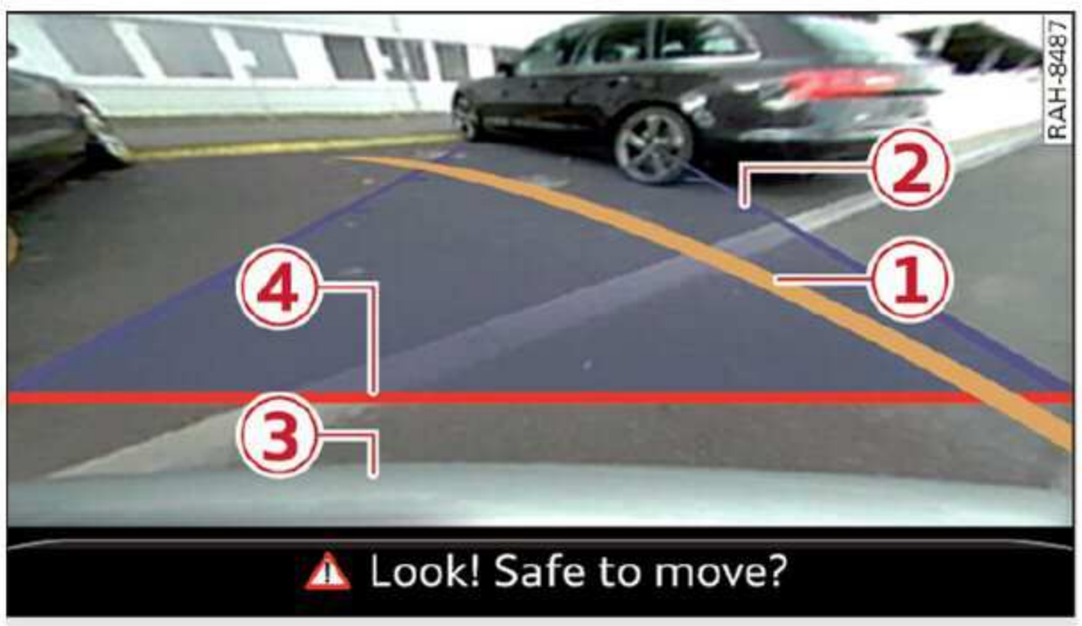


Fig. 89 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space



Fig. 90 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

- ▸ Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear.
- ▸ The orange orientation lines ① show the vehicle's direction of travel. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines align with the parking space ⇨ *fig. 89*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 feet (1 meter). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 feet (5 meters) to the rear.
- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 83*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 83*. Area ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**.

Signal tones

Front volume - Volume for the front area

Rear volume - Volume for the rear area

Entertainment fader - The volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking system is turned on ▶

Tips

– The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.
– The new level is demonstrated briefly* when the volume is adjusted.

Error messages

There is an error in the system if the LED in the P button is blinking and you hear a continuous alarm for a few seconds after switching on the parking system or when the parking system is already activated. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse.

Parking system plus*

If a sensor or speaker is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas ① and ② ⇨ *page 81, fig. 83* are shown. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas ③ and ④ are shown.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

4S1012721BA

Intelligent Technology

Electronic stabilization control (ESC)

Description

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations such as the vehicle oversteering and understeering or the wheels are spinning. The brakes are applied or the engine torque is reduced in order to stabilize the vehicle. When the ESC engages, the  indicator light blinks in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces drive power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the power to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to wheels that are slipping and transfers the drive power to the other wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still functioning correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Power steering

The ESC can also support vehicle stability through steering.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. Braking is targeted toward the wheels on the inside of the curve as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The automatic post-collision braking system can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if one of the following occurs:

– The driver presses the accelerator pedal
– The braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system
– The ESC, the brake system, or the vehicle electrical system is not functioning

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. There is still a risk of accidents because the ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions. ▶

– Accelerate carefully when driving on smooth, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on and off

The ESC is automatically switched on when the ignition is switched on.



Fig. 91 Upper center console, OFF button

The ESC is designed to function in levels. Depending on the level selected, the ESC stabilization function is limited or switched off. The amount of stabilization control will differ depending on the level.

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilization function is not available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and ASR are switched off.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button briefly.	Press and hold the OFF button longer than three seconds.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lights	OFF turns on.	OFF and ESC OFF* turn on.	OFF turns off or OFF and ESC OFF* turn off.
Messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Limited stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): off. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): on**

WARNING

You should only switch sport mode on or switch ESC/ASR off if your driving abilities and road conditions permit.

– The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces. ▶

– There is no vehicle stabilization when ESC/ASR are switched off.

Tips

– When the cruise control system* is switched on, ESC/ASR cannot be switched off or sport mode cannot be switched on.
– Malfunctions in the rear spoiler, in the Audi magnetic ride or in the all wheel drive system* may make it impossible to switch the ESC/ASR off or to switch sport mode on.
– Some driving tracks (such as ones with steep curves) can influence the ESC performance.

Brakes

You can apply the vehicle's brakes using the brake pedal.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force, and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Braking effect

The response time from the brakes depends on the weather and environmental conditions. To ensure the optimal braking effect, the brake system is cleaned at regular intervals. This is done by applying the brake pads to the brake rotors for a short period of time when driving at high speeds when the windshield wipers are switched on.

If the brake system becomes damp, for example after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Other factors that could temporarily increase the response time of the brakes include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice, and snow
– Roads covered in salt
– Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion may form on the brake rotors if there is no heavy braking, if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if the vehicle is not driven frequently or for long distances. In this case, braking heavily several times while driving at high speeds can clean the brake rotors ⇨ ⚠.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 miles (400 km). They must be "broken in" first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style.

Ceramic brakes

Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brakes

Ceramic brakes provide excellent deceleration rates.

The break-in period for new ceramic brakes may be significantly longer than for standard brake rotors. Due to the properties of the material, they may cause noises at lower speeds. Ceramic brakes also absorb more moisture in wet conditions. Therefore, there will temporarily be less braking force than when the brakes are dry. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal harder.

WARNING

– Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users and increase the risk of an accident.
– Due to the risk of injury, only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility work on the brake system. Incorrect repairs could impair the function.
– Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Depending on vehicle equipment, the brake pedal may move downward automatically during autonomous braking maneuvers. To ▶

reduce the risk of injury, do not place your foot under the brake pedal.

Note

– Never let the brakes “rub” by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This can cause the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Before driving on long stretches with steep hills, reduce the vehicle speed and shift to a lower gear to use the engine braking effect. This reduces the load on the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

Tips

– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system can overheat.
– Also refer to the information about brake fluid ⇨ *page 239*.

Steering

Description

Electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements by electronically adapting the power steering depending on the vehicle speed. The settings depend on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Dynamic steering

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic steering

The driving dynamic and driving stability are increased by the steering ratio based on the speed. At reduced speeds, steering is direct in order to provide agile steering behavior and keep the steering effort as minimal as possible when the driver is maneuvering the vehicle. This sets the steering to be less sensitive at higher speeds in order to provide improved vehicle control.

Messages

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

The power steering may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to compensate for the fact that it may be more difficult to turn the steering wheel, and stop your vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! You can continue driving

There is a malfunction. Steering may be more difficult or more sensitive. Adapt your driving style. Have the steering system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Please note that the red indicator light may turn on after restarting the engine. Do not continue driving if it does.

Dynamic steering: correcting steering wheel position

The steering is reinitializing. The steering wheel will move easily after starting the vehicle. Reinitialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved while the engine was switched off. The display turns off if the initialization was successful.

Tips

– If there is a malfunction, the steering wheel may be crooked when driving straight.
– If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.

General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. Also see ⇨ *page 86, Electronic stabilization control (ESC)*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on ▶

snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good *forward* motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, in winter we recommend using winter or all season tires on *all four* wheels, because this will improve the *braking* effect.

Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 259, Snow chains*.

⚠ WARNING

- Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine RPM does not increase suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Rear spoiler

Applies to: vehicles with retractable rear spoiler

The extendable rear spoiler increases driving stability.



Fig. 92 Center console: button for the rear spoiler

The rear spoiler retracts and extends. It can be activated in various operating modes (manual mode or automatic mode).

Automatic mode (normal operation)

- Automatic extension: this occurs when driving faster than approximately 75 mph (120 km/h) or at a certain engine compartment temperature.
- Automatic retraction: this occurs when driving slower than approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) or at a certain engine compartment temperature.

Manual mode

- Extending manually: briefly tap the ⇨ *fig. 92* button to fully extend the rear spoiler.
- Retracting manually: when driving at speeds below approximately 10 mph (20 km/h), press and hold the button to retract the rear spoiler. At speeds between 10 mph (20 km/h) and 62 mph (100 km/h), the rear spoiler will completely retract when you tap the button. You cannot retract the rear spoiler if it extended due to the engine compartment temperature.

Indicator lights

/ Rear spoiler: malfunction! Please contact Service

The rear spoiler may not have extended due to a malfunction. This could change the vehicle's driving characteristics at high speeds. Do not drive ▶

faster than 85 mph (140 km/h). Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. The color of the indicator light depends on the vehicle speed.

WARNING

Driving at higher speeds without the rear spoiler deployed can impair handling characteristics, making the vehicle harder to control.

- Always make sure that the spoiler is deployed when driving at speeds over 85 mph (140 km/h). If the rear spoiler warning/indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on, the rear spoiler may not have deployed.
- Never drive at speeds higher than 85 mph (140 km/h) if the spoiler is not deployed. Have the spoiler inspected as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always obey speed limits and other traffic laws.
- Hot air from the engine compartment can escape through the rear spoiler when it is open and it could burn you.

WARNING

Improper operation of the rear spoiler can cause crushing injuries.

- Always make sure that nobody, especially children, is in the way when the rear spoiler is deployed or retracted.

Note

- Never push on the vehicle on the rear spoiler. This could cause damage.
- To prevent damage to the rear spoiler do not lean or place anything on it.
- To reduce the risk of damage, only operate the rear spoiler manually when the engine compartment lid is closed and the moving parts for the rear spoiler are not blocked.

Tips

Clean the rear spoiler compartment every 2 to 3 months. To function correctly, the rear spoiler must be free of ice, snow and leaves.

Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

Tips

- If you drive short distances frequently, the vehicle battery may not charge enough while driving. As a result, convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
- The vehicle battery will gradually drain if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if electrical equipment is used when the engine is not running. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off.

Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and ▶

injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Audi will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others -

- unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees; or
- upon the official request by the police; or
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.
- Audi may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee and only after the recorded vehicle data has been accessed.

Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

Tips

Your vehicle may be equipped with Audi connect. Your use of certain Audi connect features requires wireless services that are provided by a third party wireless telecommunications provider. For details regarding how information obtained through Audi connect is collected, processed, transmitted, used, and shared, please see your contract with the wireless telecommunications provider.

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, only when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

Only use the Infotainment system when road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

Tips

Certain functions are not available while driving.

Introduction

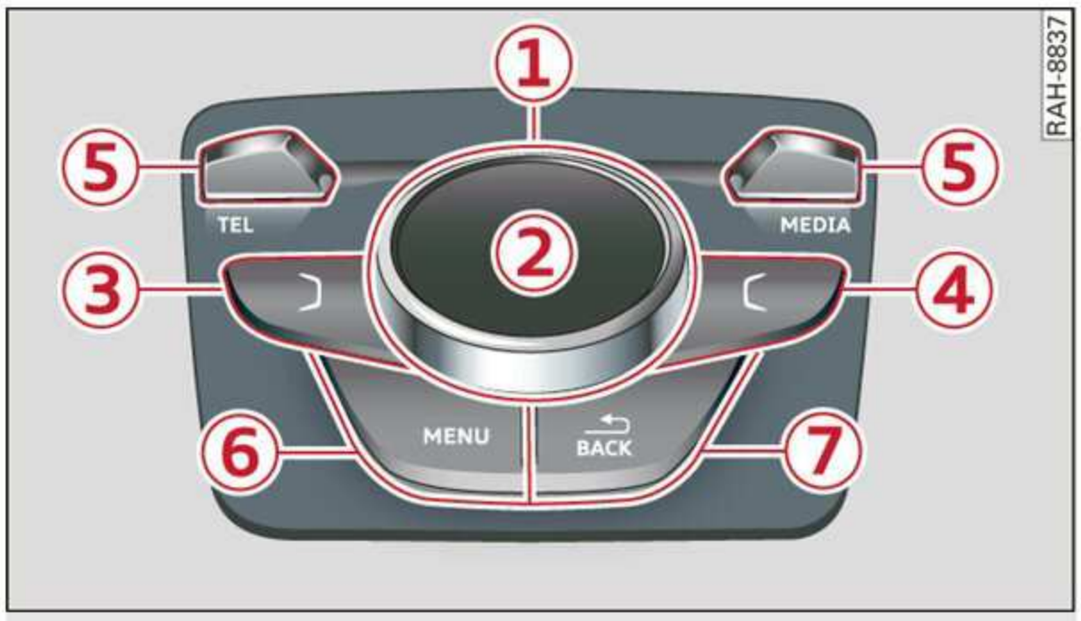


Fig. 93 MMI control panel

The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various systems for communication, navigation and entertainment in your Audi. You can operate the MMI using the MMI control panel, the multifunction steering wheel or the voice recognition system.

MMI control panel overview

① Control knob with joystick function . 94
② MMI touch control pad 95
③ Left control button 94
④ Right control button 94
⑤ Buttons for opening menus directly . 94
⑥ MENU button 94
⑦ BACK button 94

MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Operating



Fig. 94 MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Switching the MMI on/off: the MMI can be switched on/off manually.

– **Switching on manually**: press the On/Off knob ① briefly ⇨ *fig. 94*, or press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93* or one of the buttons used to open a menu ⑤ ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93*.

– **Switching off manually**: press and hold the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 94* until the MMI switches off. If the MMI has been switched off manually, it does *not* switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

Additional functions:

– **Adjusting the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 94*.

– **Muting**: press the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 94* briefly.

– **Selecting the previous/next function (for example, a radio station/track)**: press the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 94* briefly toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭.

– **Fast forwarding/rewinding (for example songs)**: press and hold the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 94* toward the right ⏭ or left ⏮.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the audio systems so that signals ▶

outside of the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The MMI switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the vehicle battery is low.

MMI operation

Selecting and confirming a function

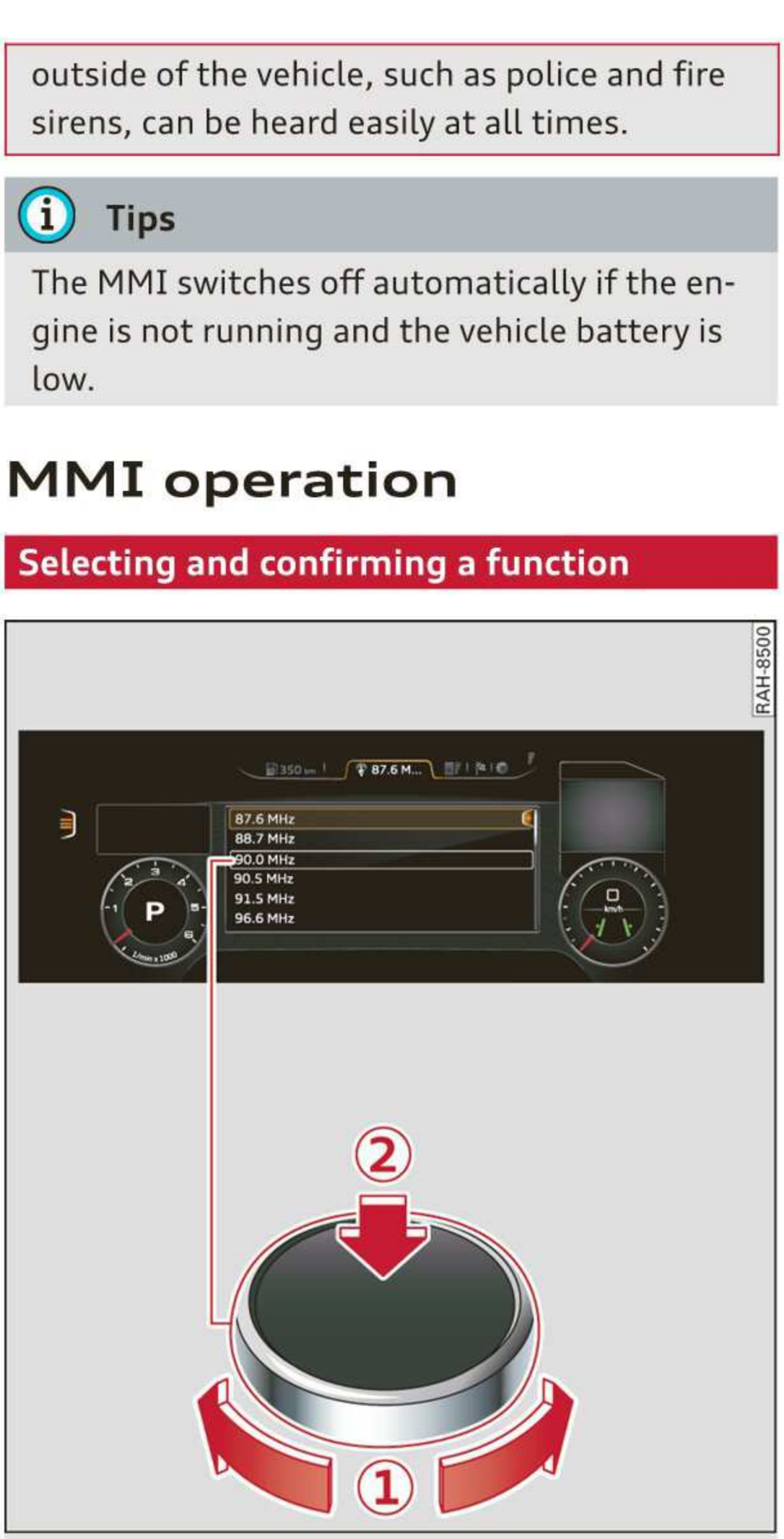


Fig. 95 Operating the control knob

Selecting and confirming a function in a menu/list

- **Selecting a function**: turn the control knob ① to the desired function (such as selecting a frequency).
- **To confirm your selection**: Press the control knob ②.

Returning to functions at higher levels

- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93*.

Opening the main menu/menu



Fig. 96 Diagram: main menu

Opening the main menu

- Press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93*. The MMI menu (such as **Radio**) is displayed. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Opening a menu directly

- Press the applicable button to directly open the menus ⑤ ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93* in the direction of the desired menu (such as RADIO). Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Opening the selection menu/options menu with the control buttons

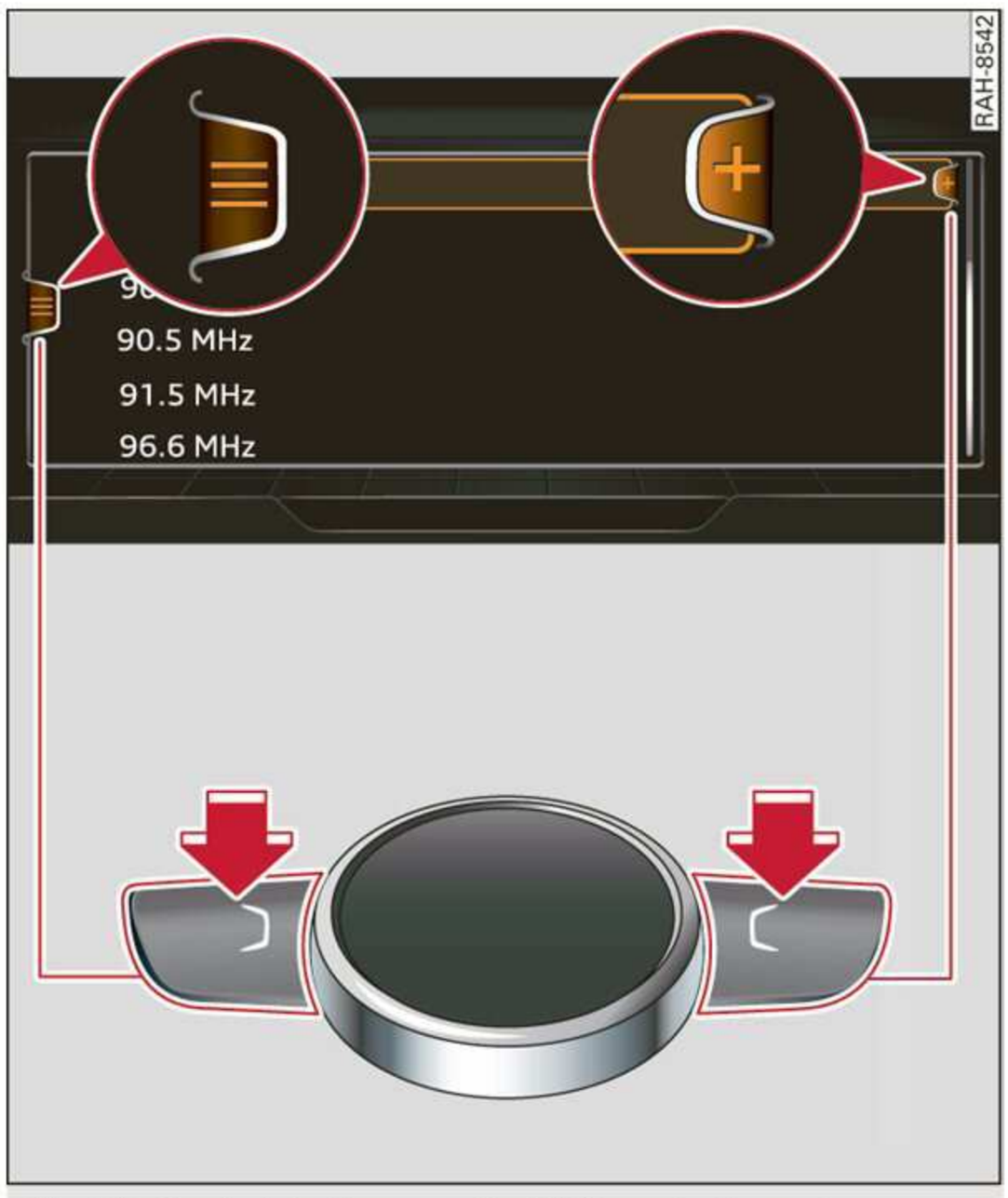


Fig. 97 Control buttons on the MMI control panel

Selection menu: through the selection menu, you can open additional functions within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Requirement: the Selection menu symbol must appear in the Infotainment system display.

Opening and closing a selection menu: Press the left control button. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Options menu: using the options menu, you can select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Requirement: the Options menu symbol [+] must be displayed in the Infotainment system display.

Opening and closing the options menu: Press the right control button. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Information about menu paths

This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.

Example of a path

- Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**.

Following the path

- Press the RADIO button.
- Press the left control button.
- Turn the control knob to the **FM** menu item to select it.
- Press the control knob to confirm the selected **FM** menu item.
- The selected and confirmed function is executed. In this example, the **FM** frequency band is set.

MMI touch

MMI touch control pad



Fig. 98 Entering a navigation destination

You can enter data using handwriting recognition on the MMI touch control pad.

The MMI touch control pad (2) ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93* is located on the control knob (1) ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93*.

Entering letters, numbers and symbols



Fig. 99 Display when MMI touch is active

The MMI touch allows you to enter data on the MMI touch control pad using handwriting recognition.

Requirement: it must be possible to enter text or numbers and the symbol (1) must appear in the Infotainment system display. ▶

– **Initial entry**: write an individual upper case or lower case letter or number/symbol on the MMI touch control pad using your finger. A symbol that is recognized clearly by the system is displayed in the Infotainment system display (2) ⇨ *page 95, fig. 98*, confirmed with an audible signal if necessary, and transferred to the input field.
– **Entering spaces**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from left to right.
– **Deleting characters**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from right to left.
– **Deleting characters quickly**: move your finger quickly across the MMI touch control pad from right to left.
– **Selecting the input suggestion**: press the control knob.
– **Switching directly to the results list**: turn the control knob to the right.
– **Opening the speller**: select the right control button > **Open speller**. Text or numbers are entered using the speller ⇨ *page 99*.

Moving the crosshairs



Fig. 100 Moving the crosshairs

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 123*.

– **Showing and hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs (1). Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93* to hide the crosshairs again.
– **Moving the crosshairs on a map**: move the crosshairs shown in the desired direction using your finger on the MMI touch control pad.
– **Moving the crosshairs quickly**: when the crosshairs are visible (1), slide your finger quickly across the MMI touch control pad in the desired direction. The crosshairs will come to a stop after several seconds.

Moving the map

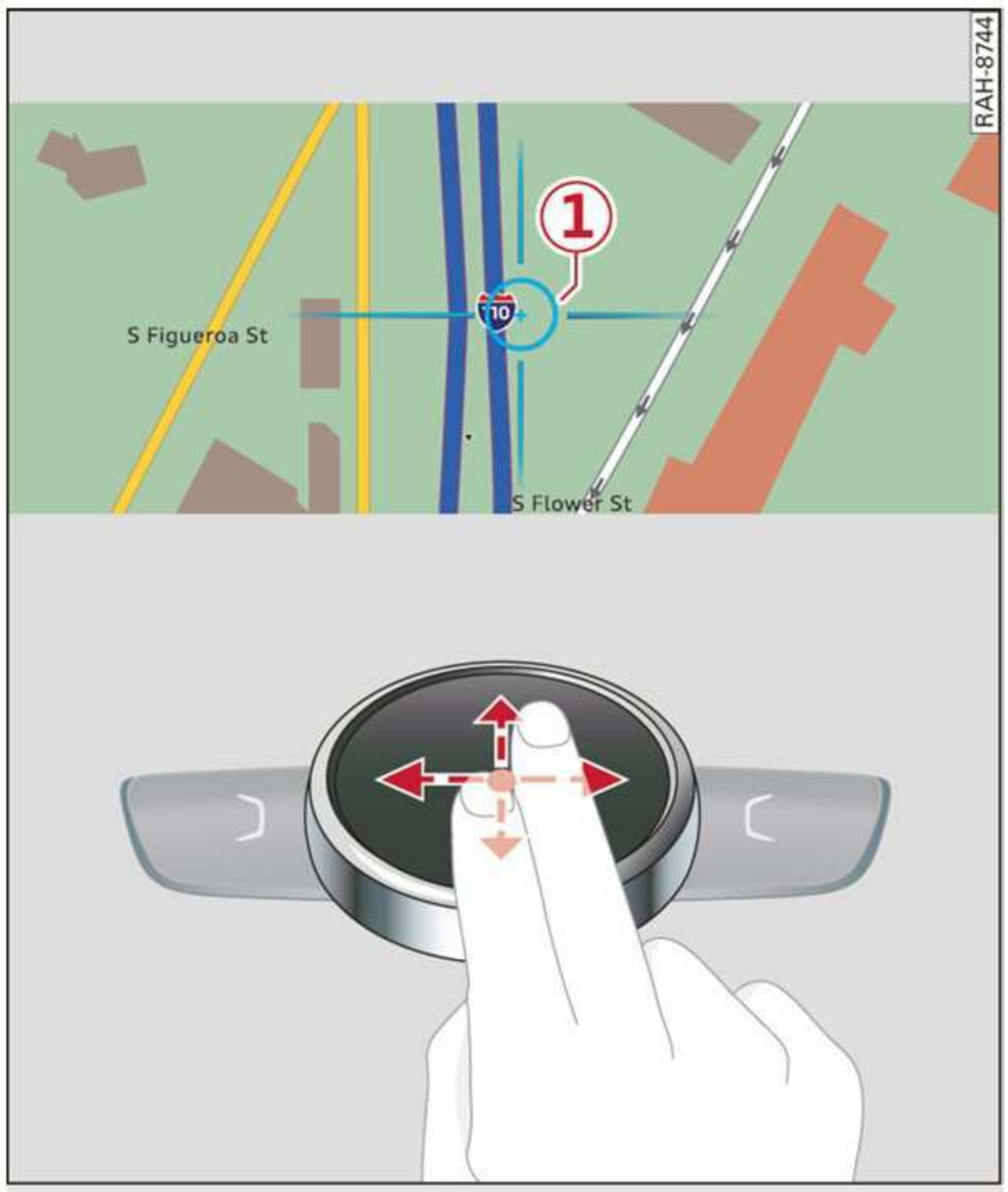


Fig. 101 Moving the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 123*.

– **Showing and hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs (1).
– **Moving the map**: when the crosshairs are visible (1), pull two fingers across the MMI touch control pad in the desired direction.
– **Moving the map quickly**: when the crosshairs (1) are visible, pull two fingers across the MMI touch control pad quickly in the desired direction. The map will come to a stop after several seconds.

Zooming in/out on the map

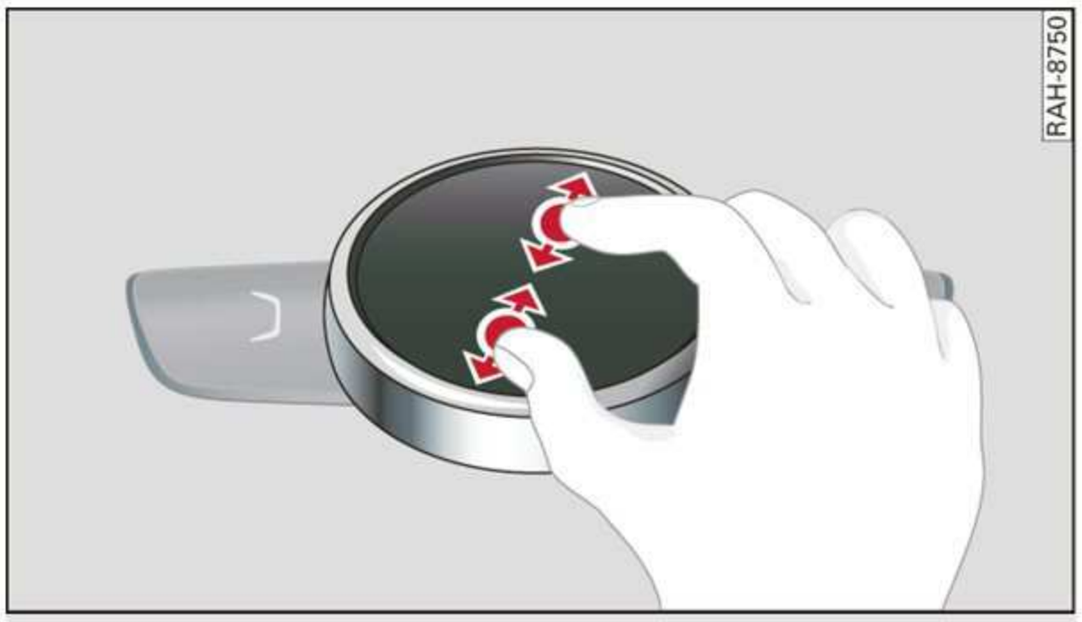


Fig. 102 Zooming in and out on the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 123*.

– **Zooming in/out on the map**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs. Touch the MMI touch control pad with two fingers and push your fingers apart or pull them together.

Press the BACK button ⑦ to hide the crosshairs ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93*.

Adjusting the sound focus

Requirement: the **Balance/fader*** function must be selected ⇨ *page 171*.

– **Moving the crosshairs for sound focus**: move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch control pad.
– **Storing the crosshairs location**: press the control knob twice. **Or**: press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93*.

Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 157*. The DVD main menu is shown.

– **Selecting a menu item**: move your finger up/down or left/right on the MMI touch control pad.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

Tips

The volume of the prompts for the MMI touch can be adjusted separately ⇨ *page 172*.

Control knob with joystick function

Operating

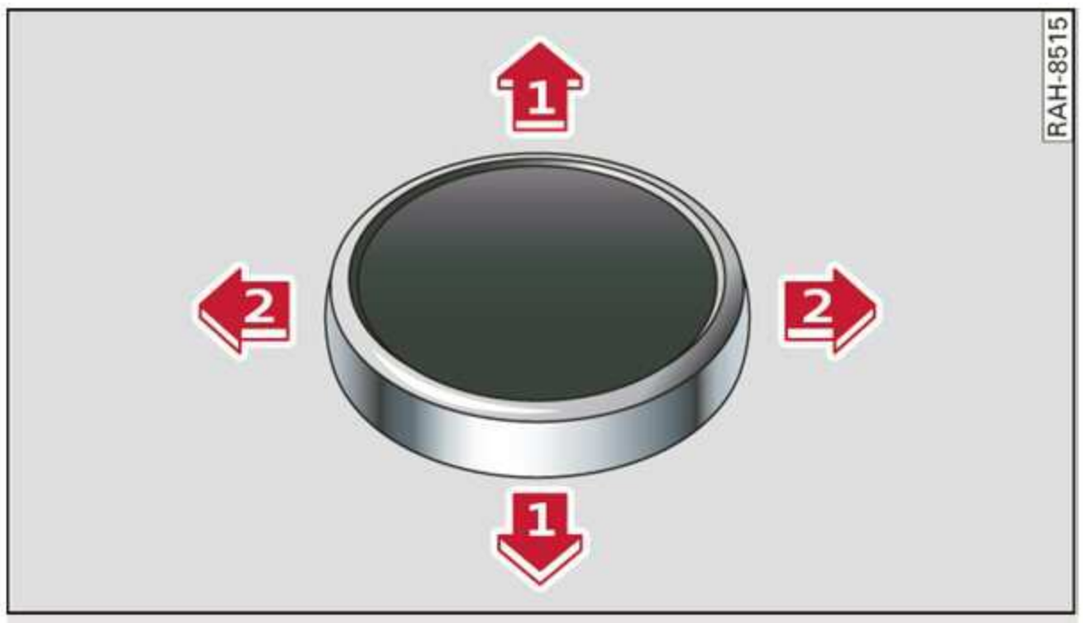


Fig. 103 Operating concept for the control knob with joystick function

You can push the control knob up or down ① or to the right or left ②.

Opening and closing the selection menu

Push the control knob toward the left to open the selection menu ⇨ *page 94*.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93* to return to the primary function, or move the control knob to the right to close the selection menu.

Opening and closing the options menu

Push the control knob to the right to open the options menu ⇨ *page 94*.

Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93* to return to the primary function, or move the control knob to the left to close the Options menu.

Displaying the input field

Push the control knob up to reach the beginning of a list in the central area/input field.

Switching to speller input

When the input field is already open, switch directly to the speller in the input field by pushing the control knob up again ⇨ *page 99, Letter/number speller*.

On the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 123*. ▶

– **Displaying the input field**: push the control knob up.
– **Displaying route guidance**: when route guidance is active, you can also display the route guidance by pushing the control knob up ⇨ *page 132*.
– **Zooming in/out on the map (zoom)**: turn the control knob to the right/left to zoom in/out on the map.

Adjusting the sound focus

Requirement: the Balance function must be selected ⇨ *page 171*. The crosshairs are shown.

– **Moving the sound focus using the crosshairs**: the crosshairs can be moved horizontally. Turn the control knob to the left or right. To move the crosshairs vertically, press the control knob. Turn the control knob to the left or right. To store the setting, press the control knob again.

Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 157*. The DVD main menu is shown.

– **Selecting a menu item**: move the control knob with joystick function up or down or to the left or right.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

Opening the selection/options menu with the control knob

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function



Fig. 104 Opening the selection/options menu with the control knob

Opening and closing a selection menu: Push the control knob toward the left (2) to open the selection menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93* to return to the function one level up.

Opening and closing the options menu: Push the control knob toward the right (2) to open the Options menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 93, fig. 93* to return to the function one level up.

Letter/number speller



Fig. 105 Diagram: letter/number speller

You can enter letters, numbers and symbols in the MMI using the letter/number speller. This option is available when the input field (2) is active.

– **Opening and closing the letter/number speller**: move the control knob up or down when the input field is active, or select: right control button > **Open speller/Close speller**.
– **Entering characters**: turn the control knob with the character selection (10) to select the desired character. Press the control knob to confirm the character. Your input is displayed in the input field (2). When you have entered all of the characters, select and confirm LIST (1), or push the control knob downward.
– **Entering accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö)***: turn the control knob with the character selection (10) to a character. To open the selected accented characters, press and hold the control knob. Turn the control knob with the character selection (10) to an accented character. Press the control knob to insert the accented character. To close the accented characters without selecting a character, press and hold the control knob again, or select and confirm äöü (7).
– **Deleting characters**: select and confirm ⌫ (12). To delete all characters in the input field, press and hold the control knob on ⌫ (12) until all characters in the input field are deleted.
– **Entering special characters**: select and confirm !&? (6) or 123 (8). Select and confirm the desired special character (for example, a hyphen or period) with the number speller.
– **Input assistance**: in some cases such as in navigation*, there is a word suggestion* (11) based on available entries while you are entering data. You can select this suggestion by pushing the control knob upward.
– **Results list**: in some cases, such as in the directory, the system switches automatically to the results list based on logical deduction (3). Select and confirm a suggestion from the list.

Requirement: the input field (2) must be active.

– **Switching between speller and MMI touch**: the handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad is activated automatically. Simply start writing.

Overview of symbols in the speller

The symbols in the letter/number speller are explained in the following table:

	Symbol/Description	Description
(1)	LIST or ▾	Switches to the results list.
(2)	Input field	Displays the current input.

	Symbol/Description	Description
③	Results list	Displays a list with suggestions based on the letters already entered.
④	⬆	Switches from lower case to upper case letters or from upper case to lower case letters.
⑤	⊂+	Opens additional speller options (for example **Close speller**, **Clear input field**)
⑥	!&?	Punctuation marks and special characters (such as hyphens or periods) are shown.
⑦	äöü	Displays accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö).
⑧	123/ABC	Switches from letter to number input or from number to letter input.
⑨	⎵	Adds a space in the input field.
⑩	Character selection	Highlights the selected character.
⑪	▲	Inserts the input suggestion when you push the control knob up.
⑫	⌫	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.

Tips

Accented characters are not available for every letter.

Free text search



Fig. 106 Example: free text search on telephone

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field.

Free text search is available in the **Vehicle***, **Radio**, **Media***, **Telephone**, **Navigation** and **Audi connect*** menus.

Opening free text search

- ▸ Select: MENU button > *desired menu item* (such as Telephone).
- ▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① appears, or push the control knob upward to open the input field ①.

The handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad is automatically activated. Simply start writing.

Free text search for an entry

- ▸ Enter one or more search terms in any order into the input field. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces when entering.

A suggestion to complete the entry ③ may be shown depending on what is entered. Additional entries that contain the entered search term are listed In the results list ②.

If the desired term is still not displayed, enter additional letters until it is displayed.

It is often enough just to enter the first letters of the search term in order for it to display in the results list. For example, in the **Telephone*** menu, write the initials of the contact being searched, separated by a space. ▶

Selecting the input suggestion to complete the entry

Requirement: a suggestion to complete the entry ③ must be displayed.

- **MMI touch input**: press the control knob.
- **Speller input**: push the control knob up.

Selecting an entry from the results list

- **MMI touch input**: turn the control knob to the right. Select and confirm an entry from the list.
- **Speller input**: select and confirm LIST ① ⇨ *page 99, fig. 105*, or
- Push the control knob down. Select and confirm an entry from the list.

Menus and symbols

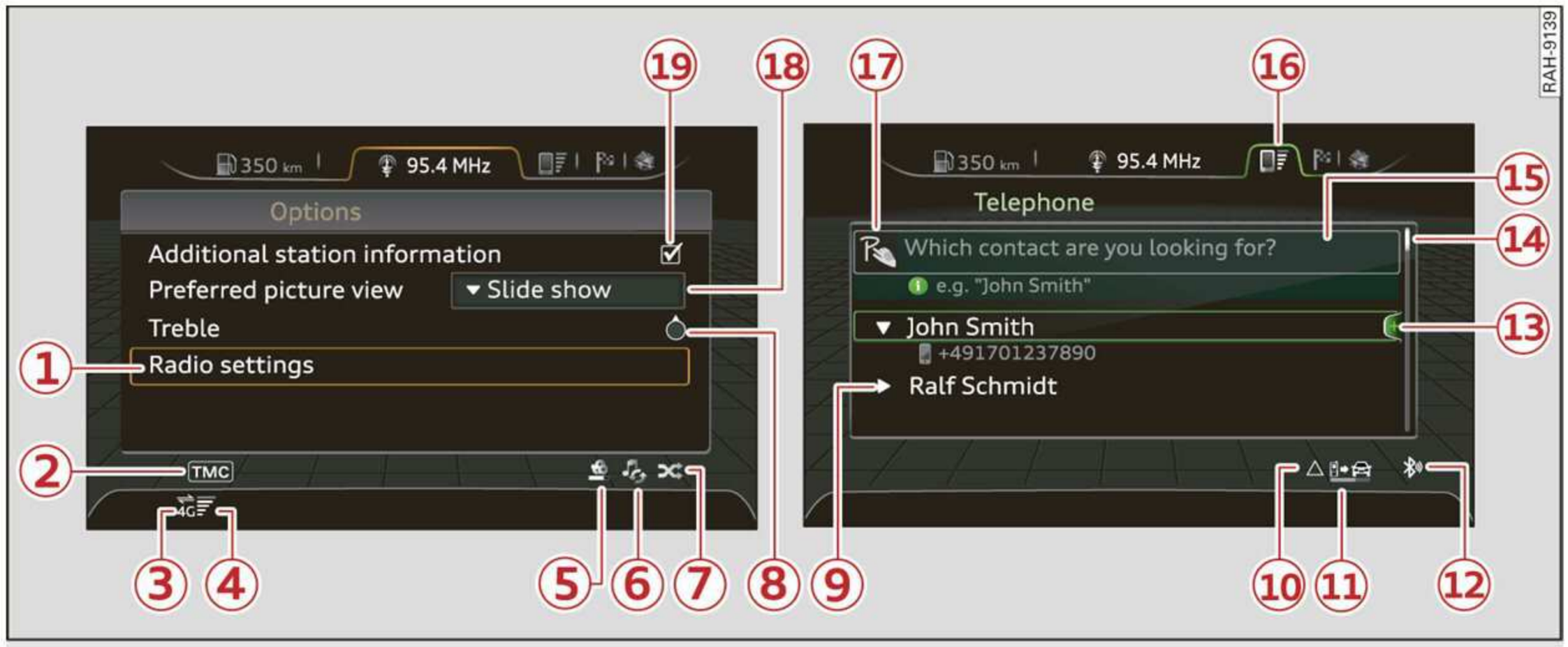


Fig. 107 Diagram: menus and symbols

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
①	Selected text	Selected function
②	TMC	TMC/online traffic information reception ⇨ *page 142*
③	2G/3G/LTE*	Network coverage for the active data connection ⇨ *page 128* **2G**: GSM network **3G**: UMTS network **LTE***: LTE network When a data connection is established, the symbol for an active data connection appears in the status line on the Infotainment system display ⇨ *page 128*
④	Data connection signal strength bars*	Signal strength for the active data connection, or **PIN**: Enter PIN (SIM) **PUK**: Enter PUK **SIM**: Inserting a SIM card ⇨ *page 125*
⑤	Jukebox importing process	Importing audio/video files to the Jukebox ⇨ *page 152*
⑥	Repeat track	The track currently playing is repeated ⇨ *page 160*
⑦	Shuffle	All files on the playlist are played in random order ⇨ *page 160*, **Shuffle**
⑧	Knob	Setting for the selected function by turning the control knob
⑨	Arrow	Access information by pressing the control knob

	Symbol/Description	Explanation
⑩	Roaming	Leave the mobile network for the connected cell phone or the inserted mini SIM card
⑪	Importing process	Import/update the contacts in the directory or the call lists
⑫	Bluetooth	Bluetooth device connected ⇨ *page 153* or ⇨ *page 110*
⑬	Options menu	Select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item
⑭	Scroll bars	Name of a long list Move within lists using the control knob
⑮	Input field	Information that can be changed using the letter/number speller ⇨ *page 99* or the MMI touch ⇨ *page 95*.
⑯	Cell phone signal strength bars	Cell phone network signal strength for a connected cell phone ⇨ *page 110*
⑰	MMI touch	Operation using the MMI touch control pad is possible
⑱	Selection list	Settings for the selected function that are accessed by pressing the control knob
⑲	Check boxes	You can switch certain functions on ☑ or off ☐ by pressing the control knob.

RAH-8462

GLOBAL COMMANDS

- Telephone
- Audi connect
- Navigation
- Directory
- Radio
- Media
- Sound
- Help
- Help Speech dialog system
- Help Telephone
- Help Audi connect
- Help Navigation
- Help Map
- Help Radio
- Help Media
- Favorites
- Call (XY)
- Enter number
- Redial
- Read new text message
- Navigate to (XY)
- Enter address/destination
- Online destinations
- Cancel route guidance
- Map
- Line (XY)
- Next page / previous page
- Cancel
- No, I meant (XY)
- Correction

TELEPHONE

- Enter number
  - Delete number / correction
- Directory
- Call (XY)
  - business / private / land line / mobile
- Call list
- Redial
- Call mailbox
- Enter PIN / delete PIN
- Telephone favorites

NAVIGATION

- Navigate to (XY)
  - Business address / Private address
- Start / cancel route guidance
- Directory
- Last destinations
- Navigation favorites
- Drive home
- Enter address
- Enter country / town / street / state
- Exclude route / Exclude route for (XY) km / m
- Exclude next route section / Exclude next street
- Route list
- Calculate alternative routes
- Online destinations
- Special destination

MAP

- Map
- Day map / Night map
- 2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map

AUDI CONNECT

- Audi connect
- Travel information / Parking information
- Fuel prices
- Weather
- Flight information / Train information
- City events
- Online news
- Twitter

RADIO

- Radio presets
- Last stations
- FM
- FM / AM / SIRIUS XM
- Station (XY) / Frequency (XY)
- Traffic announcement on / off

MEDIA

- Jukebox
- CD / DVD
- SD card 1 / SD card 2
- Audi music interface / iPod / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Medium (XY)
- Media favorites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos
- Folder up
- Random playback on / off

Fig. 108 Command overview

Voice recognition system

Operating

You can operate many Infotainment functions conveniently by speaking.

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A system language supported by the voice recognition system must be set. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- **Switching on**: briefly press the button ② ⇨ *page 14, fig. 10* on the multifunction steering wheel and say the desired command after the **Beep**.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button, or say the command **Cancel**.
- **Pausing**: say the command **Pause**. To resume, press the button.
- **Correcting**: say the command **Correction**.

Input assistance

The system guides you through the input with visual and audio feedback.

– **Visual input assistance**: after switching on voice recognition, a display with a selection of possible commands appears. The command display can be switched on/off under MENU > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialog system**.
– **Audio input assistance**: to have the possible commands read, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel briefly and say **Help**.

For the system to understand you:

– Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.
– Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
– Do not speak a command when the voice recognition system is making an announcement.
– Close the doors, the windows, and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
– Do not direct the vents toward the handsfree microphone, which is near the front interior lights on the roof headliner or on the driver's safety belt*. For additional information on the safety belt microphone, see ⇨ *page 122*.
– Only use the system from the driver's seat because the hands-free microphone is directed toward that seat.

Additional settings

See ⇨ *page 172, Voice recognition system*.

WARNING

– Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
– Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

– The dialog pauses when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog ends if you answer the call.
– There are no voice guidance prompts when a dialog is active.
– You can select an item in the list using either the voice recognition system or the control knob.

Command overview information

The following overviews describe the commands that can be used to operate the MMI using the voice recognition system.

Alternative commands are separated using a "**/**", for example say: **Telephone** / (or) **Navigation** / (or) **Radio**. ▶

Sequences of commands used to perform an action are identified with a "**>**", for example say: **Enter address** > (then) **Enter country/state**.

The majority shown are main commands. This system also recognizes synonyms in certain cases. For a **business address**, you can also say **business**, **work**, **office** or **at the office**.

Commands

Global commands

You can always use the global commands, regardless of the menu selected.

Function	Say:
Opening a menu	**Telephone** / **Directory** / **Navigation** / **Radio** / **Media** / **Audi connect*** / **Car** / **Tone**
Having the possible commands read aloud	**Help** / **Help speech dialog system** / **Help Telephone** / **Help Navigation** / **Help Map** / **Help Radio** / **Help Media** / **Help Audi connect***
Telephone functions	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"** / **Enter number** / **Redial** / **Directory** / **Read out text message**
Navigation functions	**Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Navigate to John Smith** / **Enter address** / **Cancel route guidance** / **Map** / **Online destinations*** / **Online destination (XY)***
Accessing favorites	**Favorites** > *follow the system prompts*
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page** / **Previous page**
Correcting the command given	**Correction**
Switching the voice recognition system off	**Cancel**

Telephone

Requirement: A cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 110* and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 105*.

You can say the following commands depending on the selected menu item:

Function	Say:
Calling a contact from the directory	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"**
Selecting a specific contact number	**Call (XY) at work** / **Private** / **Landline** / **Cell phone**, for example, **Call "John Smith" private**
Selecting a phone number with an address card open	**Call** / **Call work** / **Call private** / **Call landline** / **Call cell phone work**
Calling a contact from your favorites list	**Telephone favorites** > *after being prompted, say the desired contact* > **Dial**
Displaying the call list	**Call list**

Function	Say:
Calling the last number dialed	**Redial**
Dialing a phone number	**Enter number** > *when prompted, say the telephone number in groups of individual numbers*, for example. **888 555 1212** > **Dial**
Correcting the phone number that was entered	**Correction** / **Delete number**
Showing contact information	**Directory** > *when prompted, say the desired contact*, for example, **"John Smith"**
Listening to messages	**Call voicemail**
Entering the PIN (SIM)	**Enter PIN** > *when prompted, say the PIN in individual numbers* > **Save**
Correcting the PIN entry	**Correction** / **Delete PIN**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Tips

– Contacts in the directory can selected using the full name (“first name last name” and “last name, first name”) as well as with only the first or last name. This applies to cell phones that transmit names separated into first and last names.

– For more information on supported mobile devices, visit www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Requirement: The requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 124*.

Function	Say:
Accessing Audi connect services	**Audi connect** > *follow the system prompts*.

Tips

Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 124, Audi connect*.

Navigation

Requirement: the **Navigation** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 105*.

You can say the following commands for entering a destination depending on the selected menu item:

Function	Say:
Opening the list of previous navigation destinations	**Last destinations**
Accessing favorites	**Navigation favorites**

Function	Say:
Selecting the home address	**Home address** or **Drive home**
Entering an address with guidance from the system	**Enter address** > *follow the system prompts*
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Enter country** / **Enter state** / **Enter city** / **Enter ZIP code** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number**
Making a correction while entering a destination	**Correction**
Navigating to a contact	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Drive me to "John Smith"**
Navigating to a specific address for a contact	**Navigate to (XY) business** / **private**, for example, “Navigate to John Smith private”
Navigating to favorites	**Navigation favorites** > **Line (XY)** / *Line contents* > *Start route guidance when prompted*
Starting route guidance with an address card open	**Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address**
Entering a new destination/stopover when route guidance is active	**Enter destination** > *enter the desired address when prompted* > *confirm the new destination/stopover if prompted*
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Canceling current route guidance	**Cancel route guidance**
Calculating alternative routes	**Calculate alternative routes**
Entering a point of interest by selecting a search area with guidance from the system	**Point of interest** > **Change search area** > *category or subcategory when prompted*, for example “restaurant”
Destination input categories	**Audi Service** / **Train station** / **Airport** / **Hotel** / **Hospital** / **Parking area** / **Rest area** / **Restaurant** / **Gas station** *etc.*
Search areas for entering points of interest	**Nearby** / **Along the route** / **Near destination** / **Near stopover** / **In a new city** / **In a new state/country**
Entering an online destination*	**Online destination (XY)**, for example “**Online destination "Lakeview Hotel"**”
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Requirement: you must be in the **Navigation** or **Map** menu.

You can say the following commands for more settings in Navigation:

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map** / **Day map** / **Night map** / **Automatically change map color**
Map type	**2D heading-up map** / **2D north-up map** / **3D map** / **Destination map** / **Overview map** / **Standard map** / **Traffic map** / **Satellite map***[a)]
Showing the route list	**Route list**

Function	Say:
Showing the remaining distance/ time when route guidance is active	**Destination information**
Speed limit prompt	**How fast can I drive here?**
Setting voice guidance for active route guidance	**Voice guidance on** / **Voice guidance off** / **Voice guidance shortened** / **Voice guidance complete** / **Voice guidance traffic**
Blocking a certain section on the route	**Block route for (XY) meters/kilometers/yards/miles** / **Block next route** / **Avoid next section of route**

a) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Tips

– Destinations may have to be spelled when entered, depending on the country where you are located and which menu language you have selected.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 124, Audi connect*.

Radio

Requirement: the **Radio** must already be open.

You can say the following commands depending on the selected frequency band:

Function	Say:
Selecting the frequency band	**FM** / **SIRIUSXM*** / **AM**
Selecting a station from the station list	**Channel (XY)** / **Frequency (XY)** / **Last stations**
Selecting a station from the presets	**Radio presets** > **Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)** / **Frequency (XY) HD 1**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Media

Requirement: you must be in the **Media** menu.

You can say the following commands depending on the active media:

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox** / **CD** / **DVD** / **SD card 1** / **SD card 2** / **Audi music interface** / **iPod** / **USB** / **Bluetooth** / **Wi-Fi** / **Media source (XY)**, for example “John's player”
Selecting audio/video files from the Jukebox	**Media favorites** / **Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Videos**
Selecting audio files on an iPod (source: Audi music interface*)	**Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Composers** / **Podcasts** / **Audio books**
Navigating within a folder structure/list	**Folder up** / **Line (XY)**

Function	Say:
Selecting shuffle	**Shuffle on** / **Shuffle off**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in General information on page 124*.

External voice operation

Requirement

The ignition and the MMI must be switched on.

There must not be a phone call in progress.

The parking aid as well as the Audi voice recognition system must not be active.

A cell phone must be connected to the MMI through the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 110*.

The mobile device being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally.

- **Switching on**: press and *hold* the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say the desired command after the external speech dialog begins.
- **Resuming the dialog**: if necessary, press the button and say a new command, or select and confirm **Resume** on the MMI control panel.
- **Restarting dialog**: the system remains ready to use for a short time after ending the dialog. You can start a new dialog during this time. Press the button briefly, or select and confirm **Restart speech dialog system** on the MMI control panel.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button, or select and confirm **Cancel** on the MMI control panel.

Tips

– There are no voice guidance prompts when a dialog is active.
– This function depends on the cell phone used. You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide.
– AUDI AG simply provides access to control your mobile device with voice operation and does not assume any responsibility for the content and commands within the external voice control.

Telephone

Introduction

To make phone calls in your vehicle using the MMI, connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth.

Handsfree

After you have connected your mobile device to the MMI via Bluetooth, you can use the handsfree system and operate telephone functions through your MMI. You can make calls using the antenna on your mobile device.

WARNING

- Medical experts warn that mobile devices can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of about 7.9 inches (20 cm) between the mobile device antennas and the pacemaker.
  - Do not carry the mobile device in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  - Switch the mobile device off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
- Do not use the voice recognition system ⇨ *page 104* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
- Switch your mobile device off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
- The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 93, Traffic safety information*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

Tips

- To learn which Bluetooth connections and which of the functions in your mobile device are supported, check with your mobile device service provider or the database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
- The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle. It can also be affected by local conditions and interference with other devices.

Setup

Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth

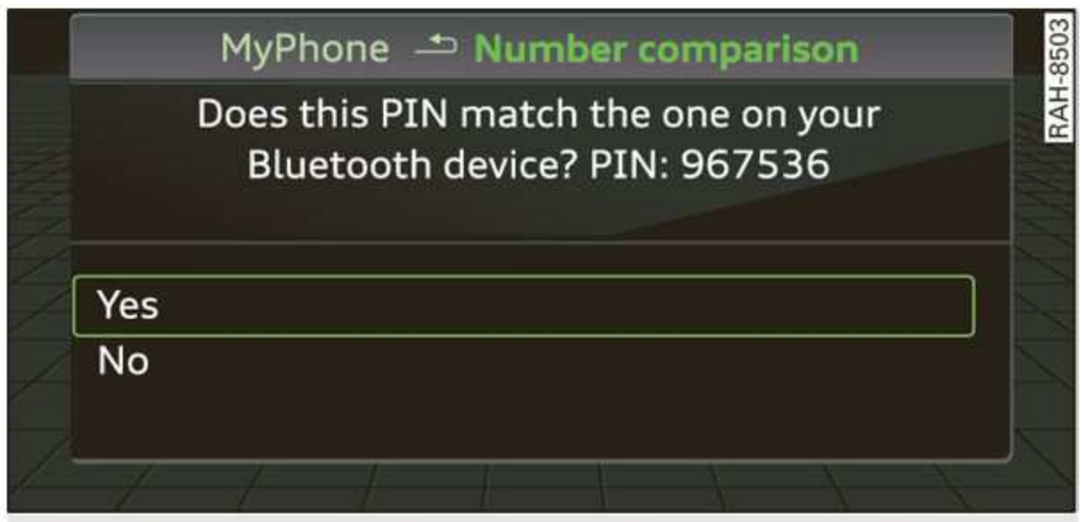


Fig. 109 Displaying the PIN for entering in the cell phone

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection setup.

The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 169* and mobile device must be switched on.

The mobile device to be connected must not be actively connected to any other Bluetooth device.

The MMI must not be connected to a mobile device.

Connecting a mobile device

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect mobile device** > **Find new devices** > **Next**. The ▶

available Bluetooth devices are shown in the Infotainment system display, or

► Search for the MMI on your cell phone using the Bluetooth device search.

► Select and confirm the desired cell phone from the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.

► The MMI generates a PIN for the connection setup ⇨ *fig. 109*.

► Select and confirm **Yes**.

► Enter the PIN for connecting on your cell phone, or

► when the PIN is displayed on your cell phone, confirm the PIN on your cell phone and in the MMI. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

► Pay attention to any additional system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may have to confirm downloading the directory separately.

After connecting successfully

After connecting successfully, a short message with information about the connected profiles will appear. You can also change the profiles later:

► Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 169*.

In addition, the cell phone contacts are automatically loaded in the MMI directory. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in General information on page 124*.

Tips

– Making phone calls through the MMI is only possible using the **Handsfree** Bluetooth profile.

– You can apply additional settings to connected mobile devices using the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 168*.

– You can also search for the MMI on your mobile device using the Bluetooth device search.

– You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when the Bluetooth function is switched on, when they are within range, and when the ignition is switched on. The last connected mobile device is given first priority.

– Authorizing the MMI connection on your mobile device will make it possible to connect automatically.

– Pay attention to any system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may also need to download the directory and confirm access to your text messages separately.

– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.

– You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide. For information on using the telephone, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– Applies to: vehicles without Audi phone box: Several mobile devices can be paired to the MMI, but only one mobile device can be actively connected.

– Applies to: vehicles without Audi phone box: A Bluetooth device that is already paired with the MMI will be disconnected if another device is paired.

Operating two mobile devices through the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

You can connect two cell phones to the MMI, for example your business cell phone as the primary phone and your private cell phone as the ▶

secondary phone. You can be reached in your vehicle through both cell phones.

The first connected cell phone is displayed as the primary phone in the MMI. The second cell phone is connected as the secondary phone.

The directory from the connected primary phone will always be displayed. If you would like to use the directory from the secondary phone, you must switch the primary and secondary phone ⇨ *page 112*.

Connecting a cell phone as the primary phone

Connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth. The first connected cell phone is displayed as the **Primary phone** in the MMI.

See ⇨ *page 110, Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth*.

Connecting a cell phone as the secondary phone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI as the primary phone.

Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Connect secondary telephone**.

See ⇨ *page 110, Connecting a cell phone using Bluetooth*.

Example: you have connected your business cell phone to the MMI as the primary phone and your private cell phone as the secondary phone. To be able to call contacts from your private cell phone directory, you must switch the primary and secondary phone, since the directory from the primary phone is always displayed.

Switching the primary and secondary phone

Requirement: a primary phone and a secondary phone must be connected.

Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Connect secondary telephone**.

Tips

- Please note that only the directory from the primary phone is always displayed.
- You can see if a cell phone is connected as the primary phone or secondary phone in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 168*.
- The device name of the connected primary phone is shown in the **Telephone** menu (such as myPhone).
- If the primary phone does not connect automatically to the MMI when the ignition is switched on, for example because it is out of the vehicle range or the Bluetooth function is switched off, then a previously paired secondary phone is automatically connected as the primary phone.
- You can send and receive messages on your primary phone as well as on your secondary phone ⇨ *page 114, fig. 111*. You do not need to switch your primary phone and secondary phone for this.
- You can also make your connected cell phone the default phone by selecting **Set as default telephone** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 169*.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

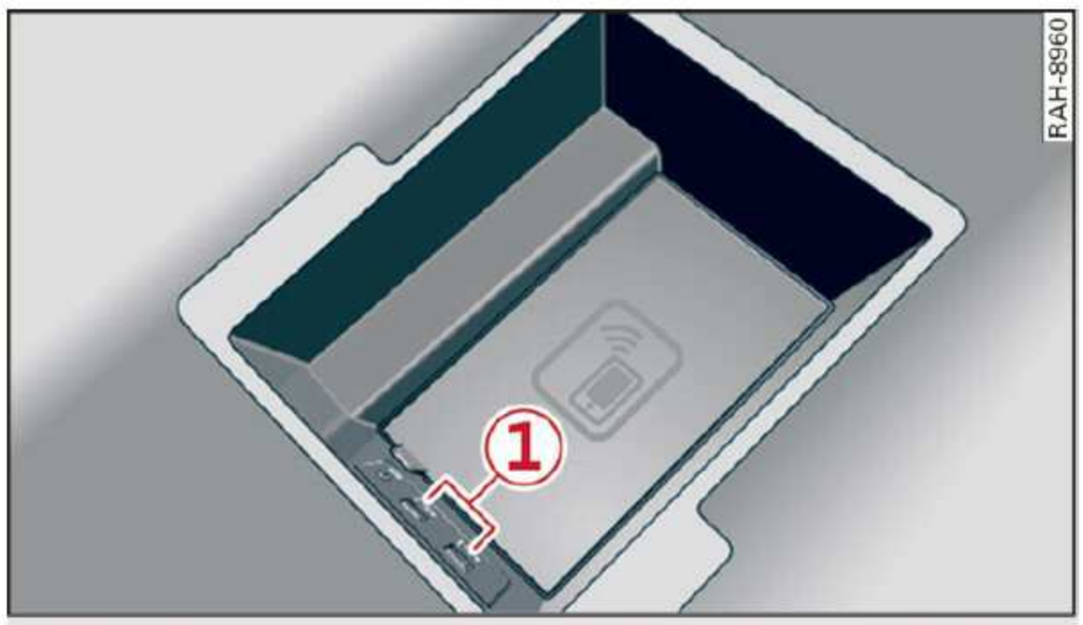


Fig. 110 Storage compartment in the center console: Audi phone box with connections

You can charge your mobile device battery using the Audi phone box. You can make calls through the exterior antenna on the vehicle. Using the exterior antenna helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality.

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected via Bluetooth ⇨ *page 110*.

- **Connecting to the external vehicle antenna**: Lay the cell phone with the display facing up on ▶

the cell phone symbol in the Audi phone box ⇨ *fig. 110*. Make sure there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile device.

– **Charge a cell phone wirelessly**: Place a Qi-capable [1] cell phone centered on the symbol in the Audi phone box with the display facing up ⇨ *fig. 110*. The cell phone will charge.
– **Charge a cell phone using the USB adapter**: Connect your cell phone to the Audi music interface using a USB adapter cable ①.

You can charge your mobile device using specific USB adapters ⇨ *page 155, fig. 134*.

WARNING

– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– The mobile device may become hot during wireless charging. Pay attention to the temperature of your mobile device and be careful when removing it from the Audi phone box.
– An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Maintain a minimum distance of approximately 2.4 in (6 cm) to the Audi phone box charging plate. The thresholds for prolonged exposure at this distance comply with ICNIRP1998. Therefore, interactions such as irritation of sensory organs, malfunctions of active implants (such as pacemakers, infusion pumps, or neurostimulators) or effects on passive implants (such as prosthetic limbs) is highly unlikely. If you have an implant, consult a medical specialist if you have any questions.

Note

Applicable to U.S.A.

Operation of the Audi phone box is subject to the following requirements of the Federal Communications Commission:

– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider´s consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your service provider.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider.
– WARNING: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Note

Applicable to Canada

In Canada, operation of a Zone Enhancer, such as an Audi Phone Box, is subject to the following requirements of the Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada (ISED):

– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you **MUST** meet all requirements set out in **CPC-2-1-05**.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST NOT be installed within 20 cm of any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by ISED or a licensed wireless service provider.
– **WARNING**: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Tips

– The Audi phone box is not available in all countries. For additional information, contact an authorized Audi dealership. ▶

[1] The Qi standard makes it possible to charge your mobile device wirelessly.

– Placing the mobile device in a bag or protective sleeve inside the Audi phone box can interfere with the connection to the exterior antenna.
– Metal objects cannot be located in the Audi phone box when using the exterior antenna and the Audi phone box charging function.
– The charging time and temperature will vary depending on the mobile device being used.
– When the ignition is switched on, you can charge your mobile device in the Audi phone box.
– To reduce the risk of malfunctions, make sure the mobile device is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box.
– The maximum charging output is 5 watts.
– Strong transmission quality cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile device is in the box.
– Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has verified their reliability, safety, and suitability.
– You can purchase a USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or at specialty stores.

Using the telephone

Opening the telephone

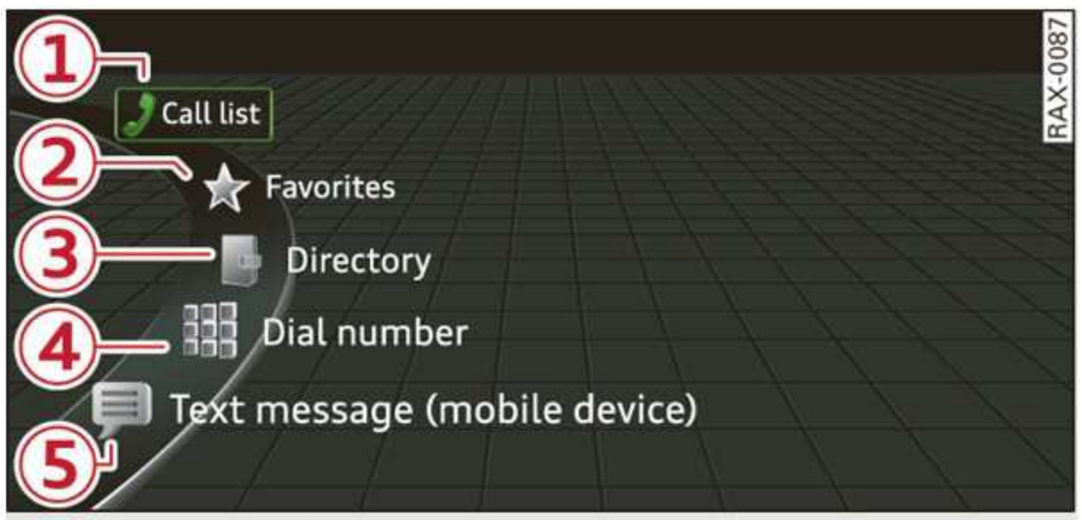


Fig. 111 Example: telephone functions in selection menu

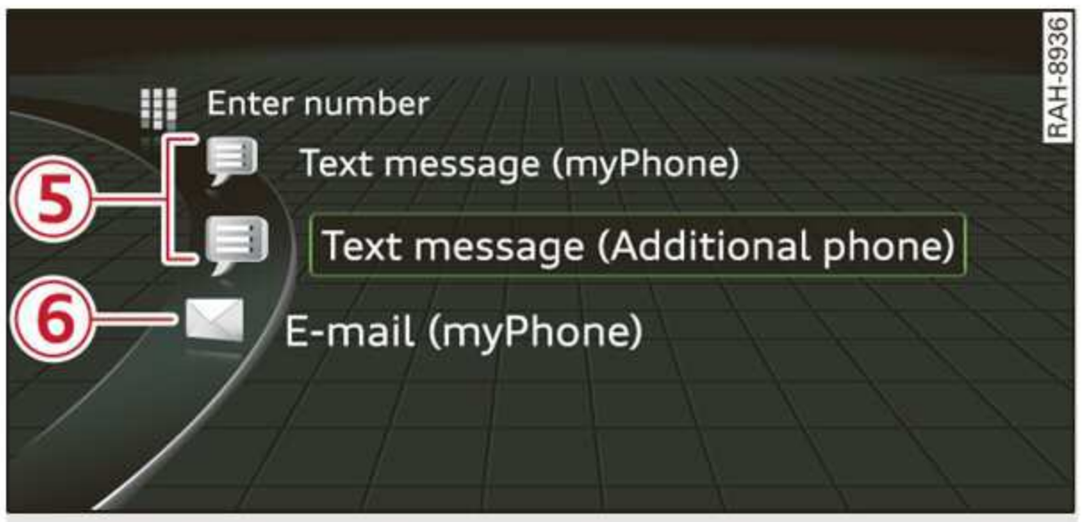


Fig. 112 Example: additional telephone functions in selection menu

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 110*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

The following telephone functions will be available ⇨ *fig. 111*:

① Call list 114
② Favorites 116
③ Directory 120
④ Select number 115
⑤ Text message (myPhone)*/text message (secondary phone)* 117
⑥ E-mail (myPhone)*/E-mail (secondary phone)* 118

The device name for your cell phone is displayed in the **Telephone** menu, for example text message (myPhone) ⇨ *fig. 111*.

Dialing a phone number

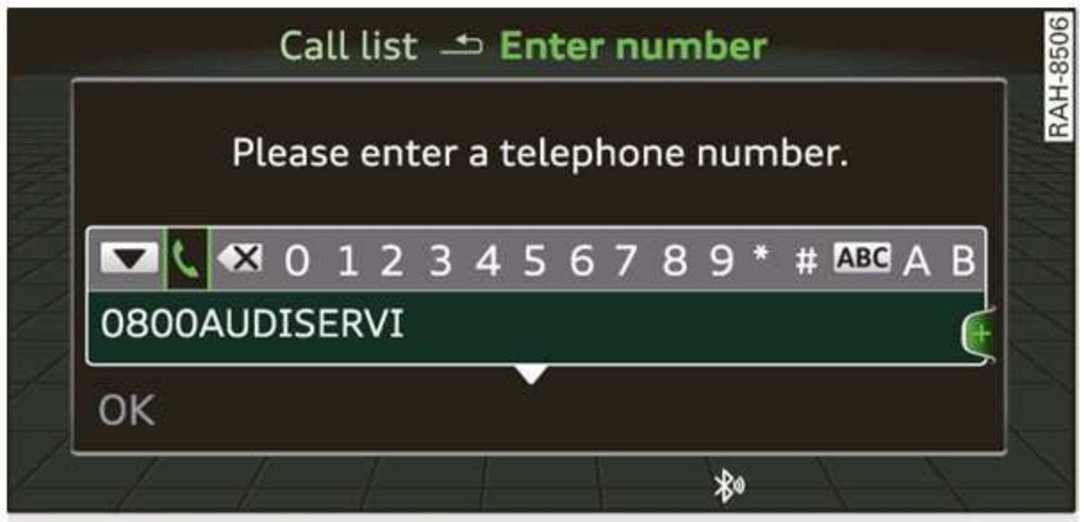


Fig. 113 Number speller



Fig. 114 Dialing a phone number from the call list

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Call list

Requirement: the call list must contain a phone number.

Turn the control knob to display the call list. ▶

Select and confirm the desired telephone number from the recent calls list.

Call list symbols ⇨ *fig. 114*:

① Missed calls

② Dialed numbers

③ Accepted calls

Select: *a contact from the list* > right control button.

– **Call**: call the selected contact.
– **Connect secondary telephone*/Switch primary and second. phone***: see ⇨ *page 112*.
– **Edit phone number before calling**: edit a phone number before dialing it. Select and confirm **OK** to edit. press the left control button to return without editing.
– **Send text message**: write a text message to the selected contact.
– **Delete call list**: select and confirm if you would like to **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.
– **Store as favorite**: store the selected contact as a favorite.
– **Show contact details**: See ⇨ *page 121*.
– **Connection manager**: See ⇨ *page 168*.
– **Bluetooth settings**: See ⇨ *page 169*.
– **Online settings***: See ⇨ *page 170*.
– **Wi-Fi settings**: See ⇨ *page 129*.
– **Telephone settings**: See ⇨ *page 122*.

Favorites

Requirement: a phone number or contact must be stored as a favorite ⇨ *page 116*.

Select and confirm a favorite in the favorites list.

Directory

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

Select and confirm a phone number from the directory ⇨ *page 120*.

Enter number

– **Entering a phone number as a sequence of numbers**: enter the number using the number speller ⇨ *fig. 113*.
– **Entering the phone number as a sequence of letters**: select and confirm ABC above the number speller. Enter a sequence of letters using the letter speller, for example *AUDISERVICE*.
– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm ✆, or push the control knob downward. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Deleting individual characters**: select and confirm ⌫.
– **Deleting all characters entered at once**: turn the control knob with the character selection to ⌫ and press and hold the control knob, or select: right control button > **Clear input field**.

Tone sequences (**DTMF**) can be entered directly into the speller during a phone call.

Accepting or ending a call

– **Accepting a call**: select and confirm **Answer**.
– **Declining a call**: select and confirm **Decline**.
– **Muting an active call**: select and confirm **Mute**.
– **Ending a phone call or canceling dialing**: select and confirm **End call** or press the control knob.

Answering another call: See ⇨ *page 115, During a phone call*.

Caller information: the *name*, *phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the Infotainment system display depending on if the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted. A picture may also be displayed, depending on whether you have assigned a picture to a contact in your directory and if it was transferred to your MMI. You can find out if your mobile device supports this function from your mobile device network provider, your mobile device owner's manual, or at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.

Tips

The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.

During a phone call

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

▸ Press the right control button. ▶

The following options may be possible during a call depending on the mobile device being used and the type of connection:

– **Making an additional call**: select: **Find contact** > **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > *an entry from the list*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.
– **Answering another call**: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Answer** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call. If you select **Decline**, the incoming call will be declined.

Additional functions include:

Mute: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You will still be able to hear the other person.

Hold call/Resume: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again. To resume the call, select and confirm the call you would like to resume.

Transfer call to mobile device*: select and confirm **Transfer call to mobile device** to transfer the existing call from the MMI to your cell phone.

Switch to hands-free mode*: Requirement: you must have a phone call in progress on your cell phone. Select and confirm **Switch to hands-free mode** to transfer the call from your cell phone to the MMI.

Swap call: alternate between two phone calls while one of the calls is on hold. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A phone call on hold can be resumed using the right control button > **Resume**.

Add to conference: a party on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the network) can be added to a conference call. To make an additional call, put all participants in the current conference call on hold using the right control button > **Hold conference**. Press the left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > *an entry from the list*. You can add called contacts to the conference using the right control button > **Add to conference**. **Resume** takes all parties off hold.

Multi-party calling: select the right control button > **Tel. settings** > **Call options**. When the function is switched on ☑, you can accept an additional call using **Answer** or decline a call using **Decline**. When the function is switched off, you can **Replace** or **Decline** a call.

Connection manager: see ⇨ *page 168*.

Telephone settings: see ⇨ *page 122*.

Tips

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the call waiting function in your cell phone must be switched on when using the hands-free profile (**Handsfree**).
– You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide.
– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.
– The display of an incoming phone call in the Infotainment system display may still be visible for a few seconds depending on the cell phone in use. Using the **Replace** or **Decline** functions may then end the active phone call.

Favorites

Up to 50 contacts, in addition to the voicemail number, can be stored in any order in the favorites list:

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Storing an existing phone number as a favorite:

– Select and confirm **Call list/Directory**.
– Select and confirm a contact or phone number from the list. ▶

– Select: Right control button > **Store as favorite**.
– Enter a name for the favorite or select a suggestion.
– Select and confirm **Save**.

Renaming stored favorites

– Select and confirm: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
– Select the right control button > **Rename favorite**.

Moving stored favorites

– Select and confirm: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
– Select the right control button > **Move favorite**.
– Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.

Deleting a stored favorite

– Select and confirm: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
– Select: right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the mobile device being used and the mobile network contract, you may be able to receive and send text messages using the MMI.

Requirement: A cell phone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth MAP (Message Access Profile) ⇨ *page 110*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)***.

Inbox

All received text messages are displayed.

Sent

All sent text messages are displayed.

Outbox

All text messages to be sent are displayed.

Drafts

Displays all text messages that have not yet been sent and stored text messages.

Deleted

Displays all deleted text messages.

Tips

– Please note that you may have to activate the receiving and sending of text messages in your cell phone depending on the SIM card being used (for example, when using a Multi-SIM). You can obtain more information from your mobile device service provider or from your mobile device user guide.
– For more information on supported mobile devices, visit www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– You need a mobile device with Message Access Profile that also supports the sending function to be able to send text messages through the MMI.

Write text message

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)***.

Write new text message

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Enter a recipient. Select and confirm **Send**.

Reply*

Select and confirm the desired template from the list. Select and confirm **Send**.

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button. ▶

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected message in the **Inbox**.

Forward

The selected text message can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Send again*

The selected text message can be resent.

Delete this text message*

The selected text message can be deleted.

Read out[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open text message.

Text messaging settings*

To display when a new text message is received, enable the **Text message notifications**. New text messages are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 168*.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 169*.

Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 170*.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 129*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 122*.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also deleted in the mobile device automatically.

E-mail*

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the type of cell phone used, you can receive and send e-mails through the MMI.

Requirement: The Message Access Profile (MAP) must be activated in the Bluetooth settings in your cell phone and your cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 110*. You can find out if your mobile device supports this function by checking your mobile device owner's manual.

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **e-mail (myPhone)/e-mail (secondary phone)***.

Write new e-mail

– **Using a template**: select and confirm the desired template from the list.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Inbox

All received e-mails are displayed.

Sent

All sent e-mails are displayed.

Outbox

All e-mails that will be sent are displayed.

Drafts

All saved e-mails that have not been sent yet are displayed.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

Tips

– For more information on supported mobile devices, visit www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– If you are still not receiving e-mails even though you have a successful connection, ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

then contact your e-mail service provider or your cell phone service provider.

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **e-mail (myPhone)/e-mail (secondary phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

Store as template

Ten e-mail templates are stored in the MMI. You can save up to 10 additional templates of your own.

– Create an e-mail.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Resume last edited e-mail

The last e-mail in progress can be resumed.

Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox**.

Reply to all*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox** and it will be sent to all of the entered recipients.

Forward

The selected e-mail can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Delete this message*

The selected e-mail can be deleted.

Read out[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open e-mail.

E-mail settings*

To display when a new e-mail is received, activate the **E-mail notifications**. New e-mails are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 168*.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 169*.

Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 170*.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 129*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 122*.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also automatically deleted in the connected cell phone.

Listening to voicemail

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > **Voicemail**.

Requirement: there must be no voicemail number stored.

– **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Select and confirm **OK**.

Requirement: a voicemail number must be stored.

– **Dialing the voicemail number**: select and confirm **Voicemail**.

Tips

– This service must be set up and activated in advance by the cell phone service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– The voicemail number depends on the cell phone service provider.

1) Not available in all languages.

Emergency call functions

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Dial number** > *Enter emergency call number (for example, 911)* > **OK**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Tips

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

Directory

Opening the directory



Fig. 115 Directory

After connecting the cell phone, the contacts in it are automatically imported into the MMI.

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.

– **Selecting a contact**: select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for your selected contact are displayed. Select and confirm a phone number to start a call.
– **Free text search for a contact**: see ⇨ *page 100*.

Contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and can be sorted by first or last name ⇨ *page 122*.

The directory can be opened through the **Telephone** menu as well as through the **Navigation** menu.

Tips

– Check for a possible request to synchronize on your cell phone. Requests to synchronize the directory must be confirmed so that your cell phone contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
– The contact display in the MMI depends on the mobile device being used. For more information on supported mobile devices, visit www.audi.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The directory from the cell phone with the active connection will always be displayed.
– The contacts from the mobile device may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.

Free text search for contacts

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ To limit the search, enter the initials of the contact being searched with each initial separated by a space. Enter additional letters if necessary.
▸ Select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for the selected contact are displayed.
▸ To make the call, select and confirm a phone number.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries. ▸

– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 100*.

Showing contact details



Fig. 116 Principle of operation: Showing contact details

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

– **Calling**: select and confirm the desired telephone number.
– **Adding a navigation destination**: to start navigation, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Press the right control button to open additional options for the contact details.

– **Read out contact**: the MMI automatically creates a name tag that can be read aloud for each entry in the directory.
– **Store as favorite**: See ⇨ *page 116*.
– **Send text message***: You can send a text message to the selected contact ⇨ *page 117*.
– **Delete contact**: the selected contact can be deleted.

Tips

– Contacts edited in the MMI directory cannot be automatically updated in the connected cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone contacts directly in the cell phone.
– Only the contacts in the local MMI memory can be edited or deleted.

Importing and exporting contacts

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory or exported.

Requirement: an SD card must be in the SD card reader ⇨ *page 151* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 155*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
▸ Select: right control button > **Contact settings**.

– **Importing contacts from a storage device**: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
– **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
– **Selecting all contacts at once to import/export**: select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > **All** > **Start import/Start export**.

Tips

– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 124, Audi connect*.
– For additional information on the myAudi account, visit my.audi.com.
– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory.
– A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be imported. You can check the directory memory capacity at any time ⇨ *page 122*.
– Never save important data on memory cards or USB storage devices. Audi is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.
– Contacts that were downloaded from a mobile device cannot be exported.
– There should be no other files or folders on the storage medium containing the contacts to be imported.

4S1012721BA

Settings

Telephone settings

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Telephone settings**.

Call options*

Multi-party calling: can be switched **on/off**.

Ringtone and volume settings[1)]

Using the **Mute telephone** function, you can switch the ringtone on your MMI on or off. You can play the ringtones using the **Ringtone** function. Select and confirm an entry from the list. For the **Ringtone volume/Message volume** settings, see ⇨ *page 171*. The **Microphone input level** can be adjusted during a phone call using the control knob.

Tips

– Several mobile devices can be paired with the MMI, but only two* mobile devices can be actively connected.
– To delete all paired Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 168*.

Additional options

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 168*.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 169*.

Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 170*.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 129*.

Directory settings

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory** > right control button > **Contact settings**.

Memory capacity

Shows the **Memory capacity** for the directory.

You can manage up to 17,000 contacts with the MMI directory. You can load up to 4,000 contacts from your cell phone into each directory. You can also import up to 1,000 contacts from a storage device.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to **Last name** or **First name**.

Import contacts/Export contacts

See ⇨ *page 121*.

Download directory

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your mobile device contacts. Depending on the mobile device, you may need to disconnect and reconnect the Bluetooth connection to update the contacts.

Hide contacts without phone number

When this function is switched on, grayed-out contacts that have no phone numbers stored for them will be hidden in the directory.

Safety belt microphone

Applies to: vehicles with safety belt microphone

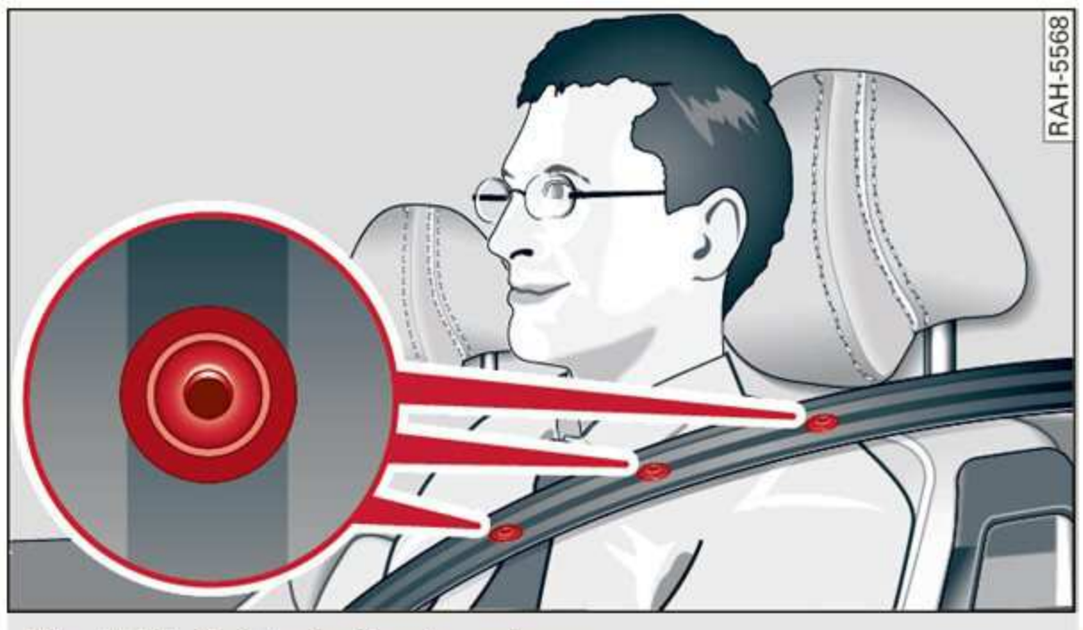


Fig. 117 Safety belt microphone

1) Depends on the connected cell phone.

The safety belt microphone is positioned in the ideal location to provide the best hands-free call quality regardless of body size and seat position.

The safety belt microphone activates when you buckle the safety belt. Make sure that the microphone is on the side of the safety belt that is facing outward ⇨ *fig. 117*.

If you unbuckle the driver's safety belt, the system switches from the safety belt microphone to the roof microphone.

Tips

- If you deactivate the front passenger's airbag, the front passenger's safety belt microphone will be deactivated regardless of whether the front passenger's safety belt is buckled or not.
- A dirty microphone opening can affect hands-free call quality. If this happens, clean the safety belt microphone using a brush.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
Pairing the cell phone to the MMI failed.	Make sure the requirements for connecting a cell phone have been met ⇨ *page 110*, or make sure you did not accidentally decline the PIN for establishing a connection on your cell phone. If necessary, repeat the pairing process ⇨ *page 110*.
After pairing, **not all contacts or no contacts** have been loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your cell phone.
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the mobile device service provider and the mobile device you are using. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider, in your cell phone user guide or in the database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
Some **telephone functions** may be switched off or not available, even though the mobile device is supported.	On corporate phones, some Bluetooth settings may not be compatible or the cell phone Bluetooth function may be deactivated. You can obtain more information from your system administrator.
Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box Wireless cell phone charging is not working or is interrupted.	Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box Check if your mobile device is Qi-capable. Check if your cell phone is centered on the phone symbol in the Audi phone box ⇨ *page 112* and make sure there are *no* other objects in the Audi phone box. Do not place your remote control key in the Audi phone box with your cell phone.

4S1012721BA

Audi connect

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

– Audi connect Infotainment

You can also find more information on Audi connect online at www.audiusa.com.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services when road and traffic conditions permit. Always read and follow the notes in ⇨ *page 93, Traffic safety information*.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– Do not use any Wi-Fi devices within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 187*.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect Infotainment services using a Wi-Fi hotspot when the vehicle is stationary.

Note

– Applies to: usage of personal SIM card in the SIM card reader or SIM card in the Wi-Fi device through a personal hotspot: If you use your personal SIM card, all data connections for all Audi connect Infotainment services will run through your SIM card. This could result in additional costs, depending on your cell phone service provider and especially when using in other countries. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.
– In certain situations, the Wi-Fi hotspot data connection may be established as a replacement for the SIM card on your Wi-Fi device. This feature depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. This could result in fees depending on your cell phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your cell phone service provider or refer to the owner's manual for your Wi-Fi device.
– You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used, for example, to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

– The availability of services depends on the subscription.
– AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.
– Use of the most up-to-date mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your cell phone service provider for additional information.
– Audi connect Infotainment services are only available within the cell phone network coverage from your cell phone service provider.
– Availability, scope, providers, screen display, and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates.

Audi connect Infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

With Audi connect Infotainment services, online information is transmitted directly to the vehicle. ▶

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect Infotainment. Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available:

– SIM card reader
– Personal Wi-Fi hotspot

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

SIM card reader

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and a SIM card reader

All data connections will be made through the SIM card in the card reader, if a SIM card is inserted ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

Requirement: The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. A data connection must be configured for Audi connect Infotainment services. Your personal SIM card must be a mini SIM card ⇨ ⓘ and have a data option.

Inserting a SIM card

The SIM card reader is located in the rear panel.

- ▸ The angled corner of the SIM card must face toward the left front side when being inserted.
- ▸ Slide the SIM card into the SIM card reader slot until you feel the SIM card click into place.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Enter PIN** on the MMI. Enter the PIN for your SIM card.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.
- ▸ To connect to the Internet automatically in the future, select and confirm **Yes**; see also ⇨ *page 129*.

After connecting successfully, the signal strength ④ and connection type ③ will be displayed in the MMI status bar ⇨ *page 101, fig. 107*.

Removing a SIM card

- ▸ Press on the SIM card briefly.

Note

- – Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.
- – To reduce the risk of damaging the SIM card reader, only use mini SIM cards (25 mm x 15 mm). Contact your cell phone service provider for more information on mini SIM cards.
- – If a SIM card of a different size is inserted in the SIM card reader, do not under any circumstances remove this card yourself due to the risk of damaging the SIM card reader. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- – There is a risk of damaging the SIM card reader if you use a SIM card adapter, because vibrations can cause the SIM card to fall out of the adapter while driving.

Tips

- – Additional Internet connection settings can be found under ⇨ *page 129*.
- – Do not remove the SIM card from the SIM card reader when using the Audi connect Infotainment services.

Using personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and a personal Wi-Fi hotspot

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the MMI can use the established Internet connection on your mobile device through a Wi-Fi connection.

Requirement: The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. Your mobile device and your cell phone service provider must support the personal Wi-Fi hotspot function. The personal Wi-Fi hotspot must be activated on your mobile device. Access by other devices must be permitted on the personal hotspot. Your own SIM card in the mobile device must have a data option. No SIM card is inserted in the SIM card reader. ▶

Connecting the MMI with the personal hotspot

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi** > **On**.
- ▸ Then select and confirm **Network search**. The devices that are found are shown in the Infotainment system display.
- ▸ Select and confirm your personal Wi-Fi hotspot from the list.
- ▸ Enter the password that your mobile device provides, if necessary.
- ▸ Select and confirm **OK**.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

Tips

– Your cell phone service provider can determine which functions are supported by your mobile device.
– Your cell phone data package determines if other devices will be able to use the personal Wi-Fi hotspot.
– Audi recommends protecting your mobile wireless network with a password to prevent unauthorized access.

Using a Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) with the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 124*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's Internet connection.

Requirement: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Network key**. The access data for the Wi-Fi hotspot is displayed.

Switch on the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot if necessary.

- ▸ Switch the Wi-Fi function on in your mobile device and connect it to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot using the authentication data that is shown.
- ▸ Follow any additional system prompts on your Wi-Fi device if necessary.

Your device is successfully connected with the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

Audi connect Infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Requirement: your vehicle must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 124*.

Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time.

- ▸ Register at my.audi.com.
- ▸ Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Log in**.
- ▸ Log in to myAudi in the vehicle using your e-mail address and password.

Tips

– For some Audi connect Infotainment services, you may also have to enter your myAudi access information when accessing services in the MMI.
– Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated at my.audi.com. ▸

– To make logging in easier in the vehicle, you will receive an 8-digit myAudi PIN as an alternative to your myAudi password after you have created a myAudi account.
– For detailed information on configuration, visit my.audi.com.

Accessing Audi connect Infotainment

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect**.

A list of all of the available Audi connect Infotainment services is shown on the Infotainment system display.

You can also filter the Audi connect Infotainment services by category:

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > left control button > for example, **Navigation** for the Audi connect Infotainment services in the navigation menu.

Basic functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > *desired Audi connect Infotainment service* > right control button.

Depending on the equipment and the Audi connect Infotainment service selected, the following basic functions may be available:

Save as preview

You can also see a preview of the selected Audi connect Infotainment services on the Audi connect Infotainment home page.

Show on map

You can show selected contents on the map and use them for route guidance.

Log in

See ⇨ *page 126*.

Read out[1)]

You can allow the MMI to read out the selected contents.

Call

If a phone number was assigned to an entry, you can call the number, for example to reserve tickets.

Refresh

The contents for the selected Audi connect Infotainment service are refreshed.

Start route guidance

If a location was saved with an entry, you can use it as the navigation destination. Route guidance starts immediately.

Change search area

The set search area can be changed at any time. Additional information on search areas can be found under ⇨ *page 134*.

Closing Audi connect Infotainment services

Regardless of the function selected, you can close an Audi connect Infotainment service at any time and return to the home screen.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Weather

Information on current weather conditions as well as weather forecasts for the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

News

▸ Select: **Online news** > *desired newsfeed* > *a headline*.

1) Not available in all languages.

If you logged in to myAudi in your vehicle ⇨ *page 126*, personalized newsfeeds can be displayed.

Twitter

Requirement: You must have connected your vehicle with myAudi ⇨ *page 126*. You must have connected your myAudi account with Twitter.

You can only connect one Twitter account with your myAudi account. Not all settings can be adjusted in the MMI. Some can only be adjusted through the Twitter website.

► Select: **Twitter** > left control button > *desired function* (for example, **Trends**).

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

Additional options

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

► Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

Depending on the equipment and the country, the following options may be available in the overview of Audi connect Infotainment services:

About Audi connect

Here you will find legal information regarding Audi connect Infotainment usage.

Log in

See ⇨ *page 126*.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 168*.

License subscription

The validity and expiration date of your licenses are displayed.

Refresh

The content of the selected Audi connect Infotainment service or the entire Audi connect Infotainment list is updated.

Data privacy

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Location, vehicle, and personal data are transmitted when using Audi connect services.

Allowing sending of data

– Select and confirm **Activate data connection**. The data module for the use of all Audi connect services will be active.

Restricting sending of data

– Select and confirm **Activate privacy**. The data connection is limited or deactivated depending on the equipment. The majority of Audi connect services will not be available.

The following interfaces are not affected by this setting: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi connection, Audi smartphone interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (e-tron), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), if equipped.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

Tips

If the transmission of data is limited, data will still be transmitted to verify subscriptions.

Settings

Cell phone network

► Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Connection manager**.
► Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

Depending on the country, vehicle equipment, and connection type, the following functions may be available: ▶

Data connection settings

Using the **Data connection settings** menu, you can set when the system should connect to the Internet. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect Infotainment service no longer requires any data.

– **Connection setup**: you can select when a data connection should be established.
– **Audi connect (MMI)**: when this function is switched on, a data connection is automatically established in order to use Audi connect Infotainment services.
– **Wi-Fi devices**: when this function is switched on, you can allow or deny Internet connections.

Connection settings

The connection is configured automatically based on the SIM card being used. The following values can be changed. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

– **APN**: the access point depends on the cell phone service provider and is assigned automatically.
– **User name**: your cell phone service provider assigns the user name for your online profile.
– **Password**: your cell phone service provider assigns the password for your online profile.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124.*

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124.*

Tips

For more information on roaming charges, contact your cell phone service provider.

Wi-Fi settings

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

Wi-Fi

When the function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is active and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the hotspot.

Network key

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following information if needed.

– **Access point (SSID)**: Wi-Fi hotspot name.
– **Password**: a random password was set in the MMI at the factory. The password can be changed. The encryption method requires a password to be at least eight characters long. Choose a secure password.
– **Visible to others**: you can switch the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot on or off.

Network search

A list of available Wi-Fi networks in your area is displayed.

Connection to personal hotspot

The MMI Wi-Fi hotspot is activated. An MMI Internet connection to a personal Wi-Fi hotspot (such as a smartphone) can be established. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 125*.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 124.*

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124.*

Tips

In vehicles without Audi connect Infotainment, the use of the Wi-Fi hotspot is only possible for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data connection to the Internet cannot be established.

Data Privacy

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

AUDI AG collects, uses, stores and shares your personal information, such as contact data, vehicle data, usage data, driving data and precise geolocation, in order to provide you with the products and services you have purchased or requested, and for a number of other purposes, for example, to track quality issues, to performance and safety, to meet our internal compliance or legal requirements and to market to customers and potential customers. For a more complete list of the data we collect, how we use it and with whom we share it, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

The collection, use and sharing may vary depending on your model and model year, your subscription status, or the service offering. For example, collection, use and sharing may vary between Audi connect services, if you have designated a key user, or if you are driving a model equipped with persistent data logging. Please review the complete Privacy Statement to understand our data handling practices with respect to a particular service.

You can find additional information about our data privacy practices in your MMI.

- Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **About Audi connect**.

Information about our privacy practices in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the Application's Privacy Statement.

For additional information about the privacy practices relating to Audi connect, myAudi, or other websites, applications or online services as well as your obligations with respect to using these services, and for additional information regarding Audi connect terms and conditions, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

The information that follows lists some troubleshooting options. They depend on the equipment.

Problem	Solution
Audi connect Infotainment services: individual Audi connect Infotainment services are grayed out or not available.	Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated or configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at my.audi.com.
Wi-Fi hotspot: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi.	Check if Wi-Fi is activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 129*. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.
Wi-Fi hotspot: the data connection is interrupted.	Check if the function **Connection to personal hotspot** is activated ⇨ *page 129*. Turn the function off if you are not using a personal hotspot.
Personal Wi-Fi hotspot: the **Network search** is not possible (grayed out).	To start a network search for your personal Wi-Fi hotspot, the Wi-Fi hotspot must be turned on ⇨ *page 125*.

Navigation

Opening navigation

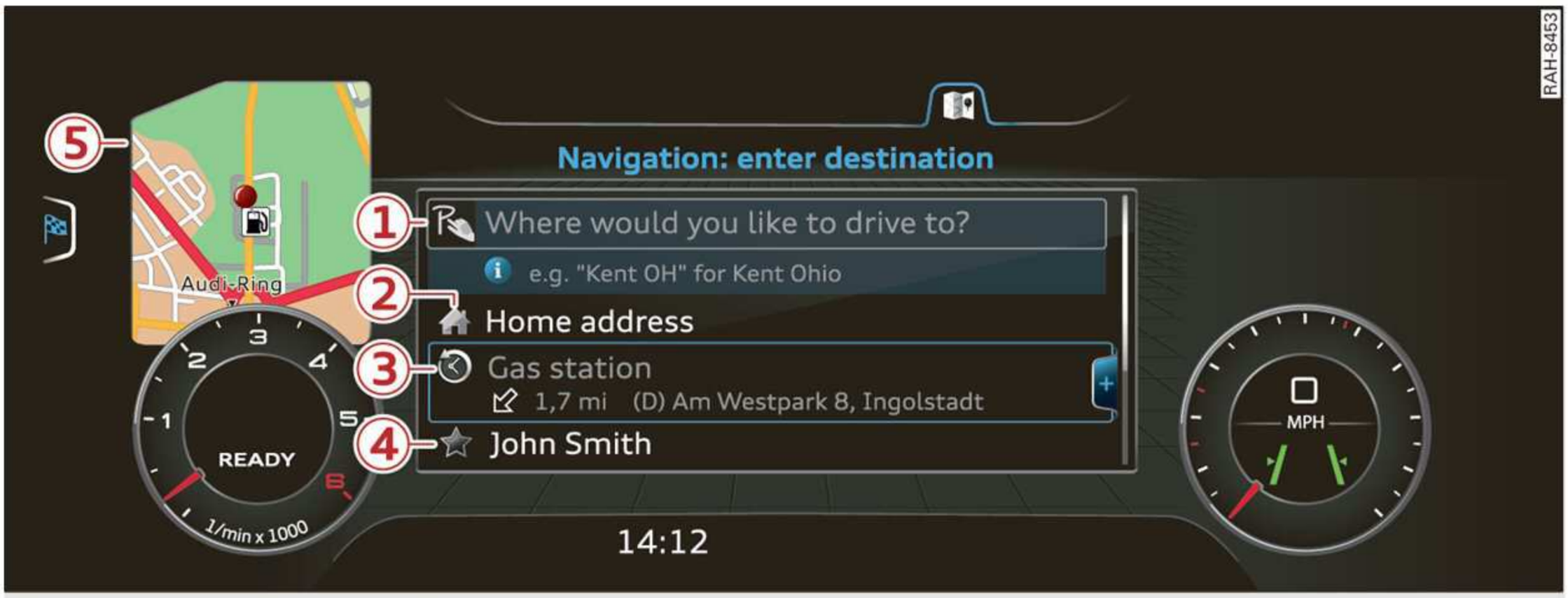


Fig. 118 Diagram: Enter destination menu

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents, and on alternative routes, if desired.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button.

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed after opening navigation. The following information can be displayed in the Infotainment system display:

① Input field for free text search ⇨ *page 132*
② Home address ⇨ *page 133*
③ Last destinations ⇨ *page 132*
④ Stored favorites ⇨ *page 133*

Once you select an entry from the list (depending on the vehicle equipment), the corresponding destination will display as a map preview* ⑤.

If you have connected a mobile device to the MMI, your directory contacts will also be listed if they have navigation data assigned to them.

The **Favorites** ④ menu item as well as the directory/contacts are only shown in the **Enter destination** menu if you have entered one or more characters using the input field.

Switching between the destination entry and the map

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed, or select: left control button > **Switch to map**.

WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 93, Traffic safety information*.
– Obey all traffic laws when driving.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the audio systems so that signals outside of the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Note

If the driving directions conflict with traffic laws, obey the traffic laws.

Tips

– You can find information about importing a map update to your MMI using an **SD card** at www.audiusa.com/myaudi.
– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or interference caused by trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and ▶

affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.

Entering a destination

Free text search for destinations

Using the MMI touch control pad, you can enter the data for a navigation destination all at once in any order (for example, Los Angeles, 20 Main St.). Likewise, you can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations or favorites to navigate to the desired address.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the input field appears.
– Enter one or more search terms into the input field.
– If available, confirm the input suggestion* to complete the entry or a word suggestion*. ⇨ *page 99, Letter/number speller*.
– Turn the control knob to the right to change the results list.
– Select and confirm a destination from the results list.

The route is displayed as an overview in the map and the route guidance is already active.

Narrowing the search area

All countries/states are selected at the factory for the free text search.

– Select: the right control button > **Country/state selection** in the input field ① ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
– Select the country or state (●) that should be searched using the free text search in order to narrow the number of results and increase the search speed. The selected entry in the country/state selection is stored. You can also select **All countries/states**.

Tips

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– Up to 50 entries can be stored in the last destinations list.
– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 100*.

Loading previous destinations

Your last destinations are automatically stored and can be loaded directly as a destination.

Requirement: a destination was already navigated to.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

Your last destinations will be listed directly in the **Enter destination** menu and are marked with the symbol ③ ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

– Select and confirm one of the last destinations from the list.

Deleting previous destinations

– Select one of the last destinations from the list.
– Select: right control button > **Delete destination** > **Delete this last destination** or **Delete all last destinations**.

The selected destination or all last destinations is/are deleted and no longer displayed in the **Enter destination** menu.

Entering an address

As an alternative to free text search, you can also enter an address in stages.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**. ▶

– Select and confirm a line (such as **Street**, **House number** or **Country/state**) and enter the desired information.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Setting a destination from the map

A point on the map can be used as the destination.

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

– **Adjusting the scale**: turn the control knob to the left or right.
– **Activating crosshairs**: press the control knob. The crosshairs are shown on the map.
– **Moving the crosshairs**: move the crosshairs to the destination using the MMI touch control pad.
– **Hiding the crosshairs**: press the BACK button.
– **Setting as destination**: press the control knob when the crosshairs are shown. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Additional information about the location of the crosshairs: if you select map content with crosshairs, the available information is displayed (such as the name of the city or points of interest) ⑥ ⇨ *page 139, fig. 123*.

Setting a home address/favorite as the destination

You can quickly and easily start route guidance to your home address using the home address function. Favorites allow easier access to frequently used destinations.

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

Setting a home address as the destination

Requirement: a home address must be stored ⇨ *page 136*.

Your **Home address** is shown directly in the **Enter destination** menu ② ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

– Select: **Home address**.

Setting a favorite as the destination

Requirement: a destination must be stored as a favorite ⇨ *page 136*.

– Enter one or more letters into the free text search input field. The favorites that are found are shown in the Infotainment system display and marked with the symbol ④ ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
– Select and confirm the desired favorite.

Tips

– Additional settings for the home address can be found under ⇨ *page 136*.
– Additional settings for the favorites can be found under ⇨ *page 136*.

Transferring a destination from the directory

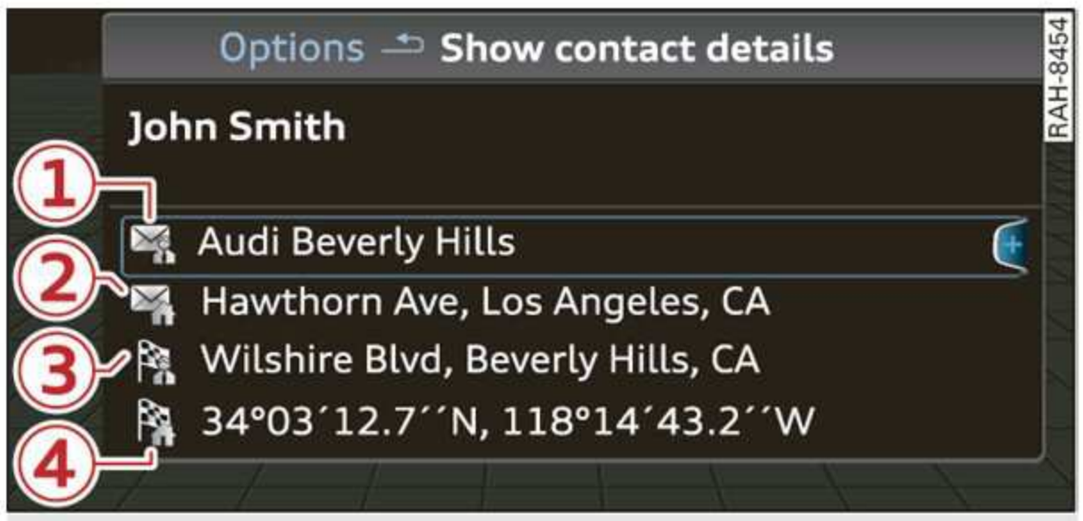


Fig. 119 Possible directory/contacts

You can navigate directly to destinations in the directory.

Requirement: an address with navigation data or a navigation destination must already be assigned to a contact ⇨ *page 137*.

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
► Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

The directory/contacts are shown in alphabetical order and are marked with symbols to indicate the storage location:

① Business address
② Private address
③ Business destination
④ Private destination ▶

– Select and confirm an address or a destination. When you have selected a destination, the route guidance can be started directly.
– Check the address input again when selecting an address.
– Then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Additional directory functions in the navigation system can be found under ⇨ *page 137*.

Tips

– Addresses that have been imported from your mobile device into the MMI can also be used as a destination.
– If a contact is grayed out in the directory, this contact does not have a destination or an address assigned to it.

Point of interest search

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Points of interest**.

– **Changing the search area**: select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.
– **Searching for the name of a point of interest in the selected search area**: Select: **Find entry** > **Enter point of interest**. Enter the name of the point of interest.
– **Searching for a point of interest in a specific category**: select: **Select category** > *desired category*, such as **Restaurants**.

The following search categories are available:

Nearby: points of interest can be selected from different categories. The points of interest are listed starting from the vehicle position up to a radius of approximately 124 miles (200 km).

Along the route: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest are located directly along or in the immediate vicinity of the calculated route.

Near destination/Near stopover: the points of interest can likewise be selected from different categories in the vicinity of the destination or stopover. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

In new city: enter the name of the desired city. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function allows you to search for points of interest in any city regardless of the active route guidance or the vehicle position.

Tips

– Distances to points of interest are shown as a straight-line distance from the vehicle position. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of points of interest that were found is not resorted when this happens.
– There may be entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely due to their length. If you select these list entries using the control knob, detailed information about the selected list entry will be shown automatically after several seconds.

Online point of interest search (online search)

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can search for points of interest on the Internet.

Requirement: The requirements for Audi connect services must be met ⇨ *page 124*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area last set is shown in the input field.

– **Changing the search area**: select and confirm **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.
– **Searching for online destinations in the selected search area**: enter a new city if necessary. Enter a search term such as restaurant. Select and confirm an online destination. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.
– **Searching for an online destination in a specific category**: select: **Select category** > *desired category*, such as **Hotels**. ▶

Find which search areas are available under ⇨ *page 134*.

You can search for online destinations using the voice recognition system ⇨ *table on page 106*.

Tips

Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 124*.

Accessing destinations from your myAudi account

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Import destinations from your myAudi account into the MMI.

Requirement: You must have a registered myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have a vehicle stored in your myAudi account and you must have a destination stored.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
- ▸ If necessary, enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN. The contacts stored in myAudi are displayed.

– Select and confirm a contact > *desired destination*.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Tips

– You only need to enter the myAudi user data one time.
– You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account.
– For additional information, visit my.audi.com.

Entering a destination using geo coordinates

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Geographical coordinates**.
– Select and confirm either **Latitude** or **Longitude**.
– Turn the control knob to change the latitude/longitude.
– Press the control knob to confirm your input.
– Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Adding a stopover

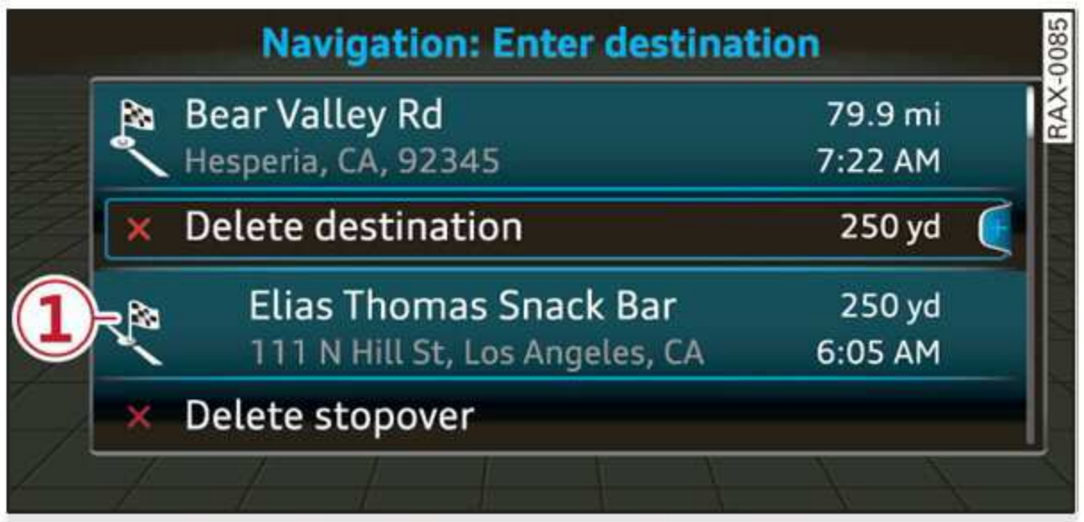


Fig. 120 Example: active route guidance with stopover

You can enter an additional destination when route guidance is active.

Requirement: route guidance must already be active.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

Entering a destination as a stopover

– Enter a destination in the input line ① ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
– Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
– Select and confirm **Add as stopover**.

Deleting a stopover

– Push the control knob up. Free text search and active route guidance are displayed, or:
– Turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown.
– Select and confirm **Delete stopover** ⇨ *fig. 120* under the stopover ①.
– The stopover is deleted.

Cancel route guidance

Requirement: route guidance must be active. ▶

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Delete destination** ⇨ *page 135, fig. 120*. The destination is deleted, or
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Cancel route guidance**.

Additional options when entering a destination

▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the selected function, the following options may be available when entering a destination:

Cancel route guidance: Requirement: route guidance must be active. Route guidance is canceled. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 135*.

Map settings: ⇨ *page 141*.

Navigation settings: ⇨ *page 137*.

Voice guidance: ⇨ *page 138*.

Route criteria: ⇨ *page 137*.

Show location on map: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered is displayed on the map.

Parking at this location: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. All parking options near the selected location are displayed in the Infotainment system.

POIs along the route: all points of interest in the area around the vehicle will be displayed when route guidance is active.

Delete: the selected entry is deleted. You can delete individual entries or all entries (for example, favorites or last destinations).

Audi connect for this location[1)]: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. Allows you to search for items in the vicinity of the selected location, such as **City Events** or **Travel information**.

Online traffic data*: receiving online traffic information ⇨ *page 143* can be switched on or off.

Country/state selection: ⇨ *page 132, Narrowing the search area*.

Store as favorite: ⇨ *page 136*.

Home address

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

Storing a home address

– Select and confirm **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*. After opening the home address for the first time, you will be asked to create a home address.
– Select and confirm **Create now**.
– Enter a destination or select a destination from the list.

Editing the home address

– Select **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
– Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
– Select and confirm a new destination as the home address.

The selected destination is stored as the new home address.

Favorites

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

– **Saving a destination as a favorite**: search for the desired destination using the input field, or select a destination from the list. Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.
– **Renaming a favorite**: select the left control button > **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Rename favorite**. ▶

1) This function is not offered in Mexico.

– **Move favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.
– **Deleting a favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Directory contacts

Two addresses (private/business) can be assigned as destinations for each contact in the directory.

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI.

– Select: *a destination* > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
– Enter the first letters of the desired contact in the free text search input field ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118* and then select a contact from the list.
– Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.

Additional settings

Navigation settings

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
► Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Show alternative routes

Up to three route suggestions and their properties are displayed on the overview map when the function is switched on ☑. ⇨ *page 138, Alternative routes*.

Low fuel warning

A message is displayed if the fuel gauge goes below the reserve marking when this function is switched on ☑. After confirming this message, a list of gas stations in the area is displayed. When a gas station is selected, route guidance from the current vehicle position is calculated.

Notification when nearby*

The notification when nearby is switched off at the factory.

The MMI notifies you when you are approaching selected points of interest when this function is switched on ☑. You can also have a **Notification tone**.

Presentation mode

The **Presentation mode** helps you to effectively plan a trip and follow the planned route without moving the vehicle. You can use **Select starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position, for example. Start **Presentation mode** to simulate route guidance.

Route criteria

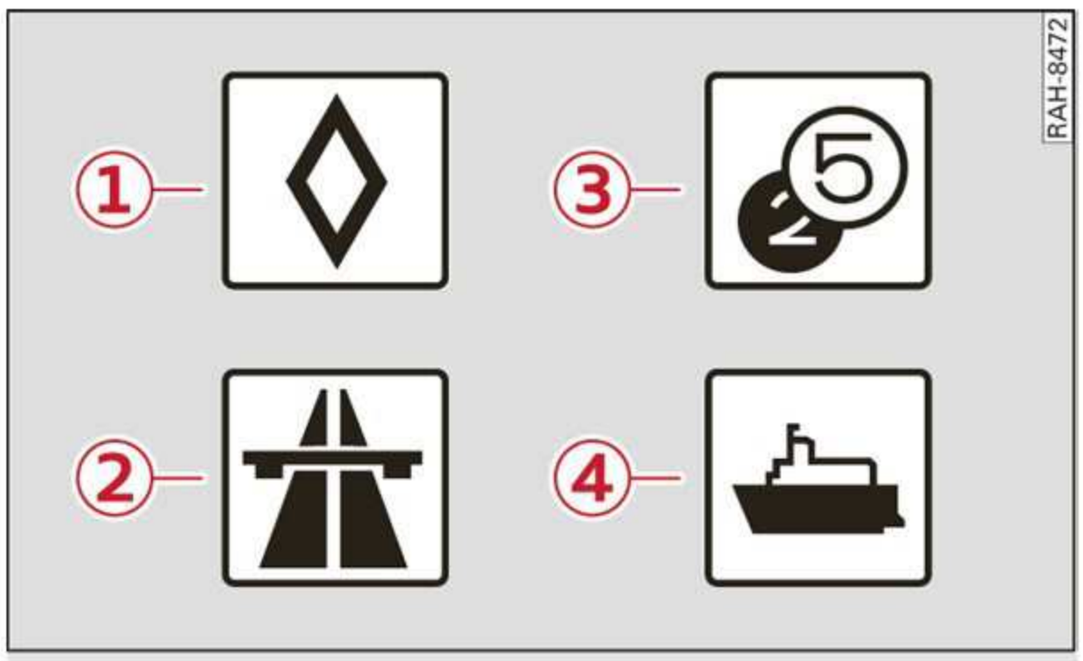


Fig. 121 Possible route criteria

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
► Select: right control button > **Route criteria**.

① **HOV lanes/carpool lanes**[1]: When the **Avoid** function is used, HOV lanes or carpool lanes are ▶

1) High occupancy vehicle

excluded from the route calculation. With **Allow**, the MMI will guide you using HOV and carpool lanes and it will indicate them.

②**Highways** / ③**Toll roads** / ④**Ferries**: you can select the **Avoid** function to prevent the navigation system from calculating routes with highways, toll roads or ferries, if possible.

Voice guidance

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

Voice guidance: voice guidance can be **Complete** or **Shortened**. With the **Traffic** function, voice guidance prompts are only given when there are traffic incidents on your route. When **Off** is selected, no voice guidance is given.

Voice guidance during phone call: voice guidance during a phone call can be switched on or off.

Entertainment fader: ⇨ *page 172*.

Voice guidance volume: ⇨ *page 172*.

Alternative routes

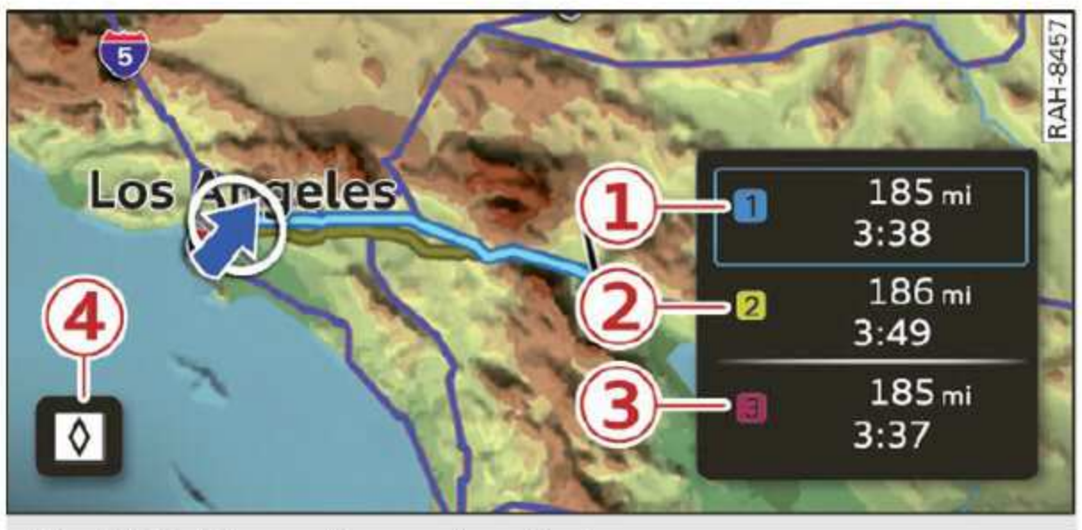


Fig. 122 Alternative routes display

Requirement: a destination must be entered and the route guidance must be started.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Show alternative routes**.

Three routes will be displayed in the overview map after you enter a destination ⇨ *fig. 122*.

If available, the following information will appear on the route suggestions:

– Route type (fast ①, fast alternative ②, economic route ③)
– Distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time
– Traffic congestion along the route including time delays

The route that was calculated according to the route criteria you selected is shown on the map. The special properties of the route (such as ferry connections) may be displayed ④. Additional information about individual route criteria can be found in ⇨ *page 137*.

Map

Operating the map



Fig. 123 Diagram: map with crosshairs turned on

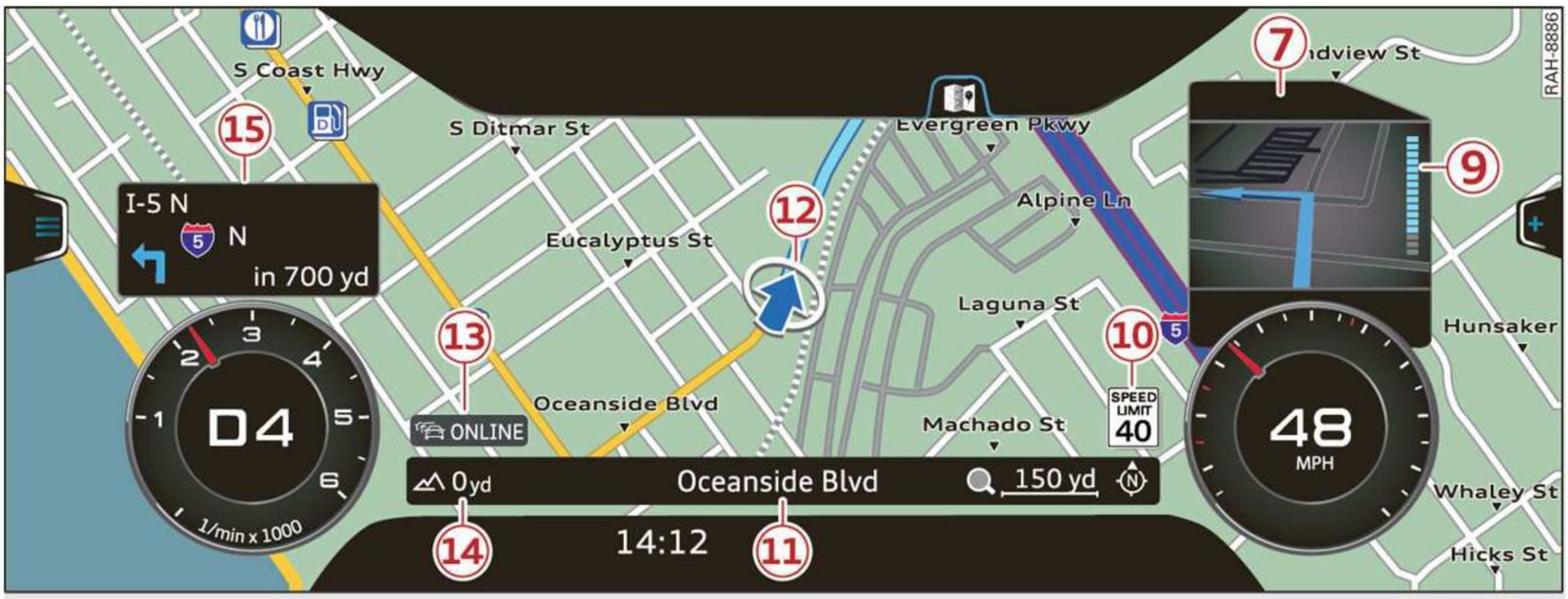


Fig. 124 Diagram: map with crosshairs turned off

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *fig. 124*.

Zooming in/out on the map

– Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. You can also zoom in or out on the map using the MMI touch ⇨ *page 97*, or turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇨ *page 12*.

Turning the crosshairs on/off

– **Switching the crosshairs on**: press the control knob in the map view.
– **Switching the crosshairs off**: press the BACK button.

When the crosshairs are switched on ⇨ *fig. 123*:

① Orientation: the map is either displayed as a **2D north-up map** or a **2D heading-up map**.

② Scale: turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale.

③ Zoom: when the **Automatic zoom** function is switched on, an “A” for “Automatic” is displayed in the magnifying glass.

④ Crosshairs: move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch control pad and set a point on the map as the destination or have information about the focal point displayed.

⑤ Map content (points of interest, favorites): if there are multiple POIs in the immediate vicinity, they will be shown stacked on the map. ▶

4S1012721BA

⑥ Additional information on the crosshairs position: if you move the crosshairs to a location on the map, available information for the current crosshairs position is displayed. Press the control knob to open destination details or to start route guidance. When the crosshairs are turned off, the road being currently driven on is shown.

⑦ Display of an upcoming maneuver. If there is no upcoming maneuver, the distance and calculated arrival time to the destination/stopover is displayed in this location.

⑧ Display of a better route. ⇨ *page 144*.

When the crosshairs are switched off ⇨ *fig. 124*:

⑨ If a turn arrow is displayed, a bar graph turns on. The fewer the bars that are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.

⑩ Speed display[1)]: Displays the maximum permitted speed on expressways and on highways.

⑪ Road currently being driven on. When the vehicle is stationary, “offroad” is displayed here.

⑫ Vehicle location (⇧)

⑬ Display of active traffic information (ONLINE* or TMC)

⑭ Altitude display (⛰)

⑮ Route information: various information will be displayed during active route guidance (for example, the upcoming maneuver including calculated distance and street names). The display also provides traffic information or points of interest on the current route.

Map functions

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 124*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > *desired function*.

Switch to destination input

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 131, fig. 118*.

Traffic messages

Current traffic information is displayed in the Infotainment system display. ⇨ *page 142*.

Route list

The route list can only be displayed when route guidance is active and contains information regarding the route, the names of the streets and the length of the route sections. When traveling on highways, possible parking lots and rest areas are shown, which you can select as a stopover.

POIs along the route

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

Searching for points of interest along your current route ⇨ *page 134*.

Additional options on the map

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 124*.
- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function selected, the following options can also be selected under the **Map** menu:

Cancel route guidance:⇨ *page 135*.

Map settings: ⇨ *page 141*.

Route criteria: ⇨ *page 137*.

Voice guidance: ⇨ *page 138*.

Navigation settings: ⇨ *page 137*.

Online traffic data*: ⇨ *page 142*.

Show alternative routes:⇨ *page 138*.

Parking along the route: parking options near the vehicle are displayed.

Save current position: you can save your current vehicle position as a favorite ⇨ *page 136* or save it as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 137*.

Audi connect at this location*: allows you to search for **City Events** or **Weather** at the entered location. ▶

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

Country information: you can display the applicable urban and rural speed limits for any country/state. This information will be automatically shown to you in the route information (15) ⇨ *page 139, fig. 124* when the speed limit is exceeded, if this function is activated ⇨ *page 141*.

Avoid route*: when route guidance is active, the calculated route will avoid the area you have specified (maximum: 12 mi (20 km)), if possible. The navigation system calculates an alternative route. The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be set again, if needed. The areas you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

Map settings

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 139, fig. 124*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Map colors

Day/Night: the map is displayed with a light/dark background.

Automatic: when the lights switch on, the map colors switch from day to night.

Map display

Standard ⇨ *page 139, fig. 123*.

Satellite map*[1)] ⇨ *page 142, fig. 125*.

Traffic ⇨ *page 142*.

Map orientation

Destination map: The map shows the destination and is oriented to the north.

2D heading-up map/2D north-up map: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.

3D heading-up map: When this function is switched on, the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and oriented in the direction of travel. At a scale of 62 mi (100 km) and larger, the map orientation is to the north.

Overview map: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale depends on the length of the route and adapts automatically. The map is oriented to the north.

Route information

The display of route information such as the current road being driven on, upcoming maneuvers, traffic information or points of interest along the route can be switched on/off.

Automatic zoom

On: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. The scale will also be automatically adapted when there are upcoming maneuvers to provide a better detailed view.

Off: the map scale you have chosen is maintained.

Map content

Map content, such as traffic information, favorites or restaurants, can be displayed or hidden (☑).

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect



Fig. 125 Example: satellite map

You can display the navigation map with satellite images.

Requirement: The requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 124*.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Satellite map**[1)].

The map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the **Standard** map view. There are two gigabytes of memory space in the MMI memory that can be used to temporarily store the map or navigation data that was received. This is roughly the amount required for the map/navigation data for a 2,485 mile (4,000 km) route. As long as the satellite images loaded for route guidance are stored, you can use them without having an active data connection.

Tips

- The stored satellite map data[1)] can be deleted under **Factory settings** > **Navigation and online memory** ⇨ *page 168*.
- The satellite map[1)] is updated regularly whenever the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
- When the satellite map[1)] display is switched on with the 3D position map type, the map display automatically switches to the 2D map type when driving through tunnels.
- Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 124*.
- For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.

Accessing traffic information

Auto rerouting (traffic)

When receiving traffic information through TMC/online - depending on availability - you can have the MMI navigate you around traffic incidents, if possible.

Reception of traffic information is indicated by the TMC or ONLINE symbol on the map ⇨ *page 143, fig. 126*.

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

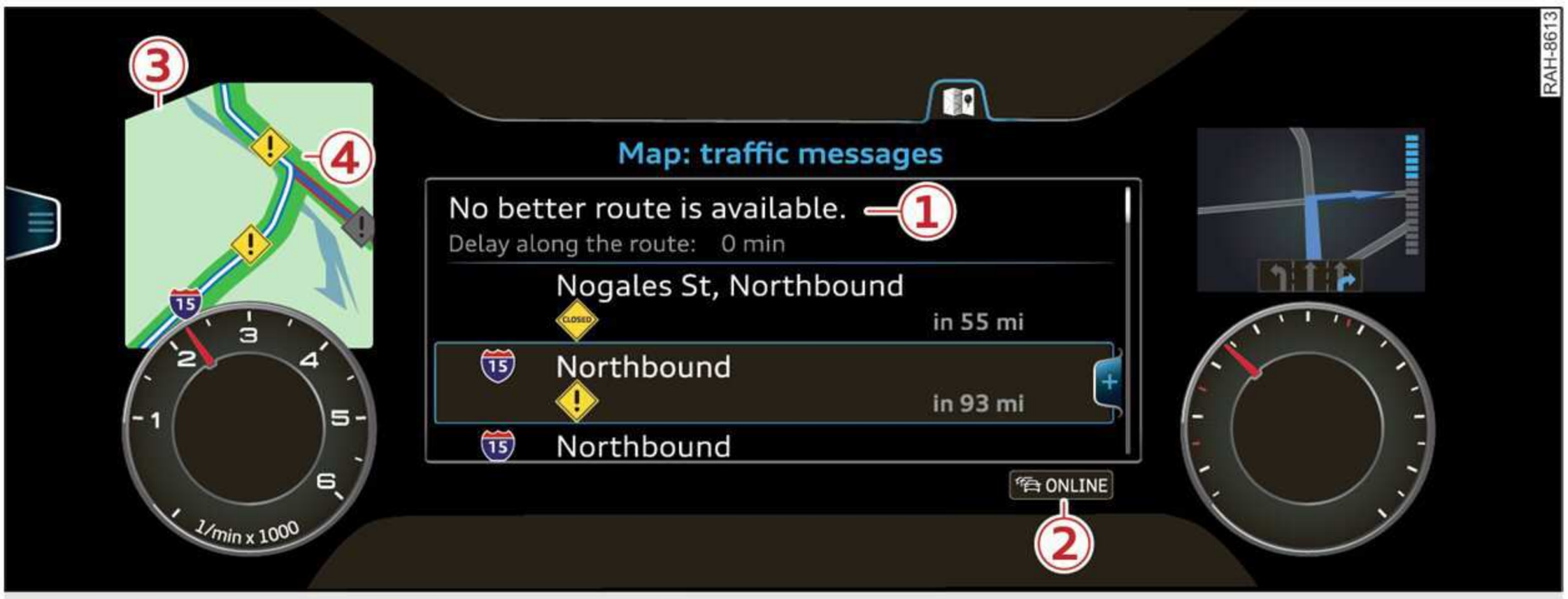


Fig. 126 Example: online traffic information display* without better route

The MMI can receive real-time online traffic information about congestion, accidents, road construction, and other incidents.

Requirement: The requirements for Audi connect must be met ⇨ *page 124*.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Online traffic data** > *On* (☑).
- ▸ Select: left control button > Traffic messages. The traffic information overview is shown.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following information may be shown in the traffic information overview ⇨ *fig. 126*:

① A message will appear if the MMI calculates a better route for the current route guidance. More information can be found under ⇨ *page 144*.

② The status line in the Infotainment display indicates the reception of traffic information (TMC or ONLINE).

③ The current selected traffic message is also shown as a map preview in the Infotainment system display.

④ Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow.

Traffic display

Green: traffic is flowing freely.

Yellow: stop-and-go traffic.

Red: congestion.

Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion.

Colored warning symbols: there is a traffic incident immediately ahead on the route.

Grayed out warning symbols: traffic incidents that are not on your route.

Red warning symbols: all warning symbols will be red when route guidance is not active.

The display of colored markings, warning symbols, etc. can be set in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 141*.

You can switch off the reception of online traffic information at any time ⇨ *page 143*.

Switching the traffic map display on

For an optimum traffic information display: NAV/MAP button > right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Traffic**. ▶

You can also display the **online traffic information** in the satellite map*[1)] ⇨ *page 142* or the standard map ⇨ *page 139, fig. 123*

Tips

– Online traffic information is not available in Canada.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 124, Audi connect*.
– Having the **Online traffic data** function switched on provides the most accurate reports of traffic situations as well as traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. If you do not want to use this, you can switch off the **online traffic information** function at any time.
– The **online traffic information** network is currently not available in all countries, and the coverage is not nationwide. For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.

Traffic information (TMC)

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
► Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

TMC traffic messages are switched on at the factory.

Multiple traffic messages are summarized in the overview under the corresponding street names or highway names.

– **Displaying all traffic messages for a street/highway**: select and confirm the symbol. A list of all the traffic messages for the selected street/highway is displayed.
– **Opening the detailed view of a traffic message**: if you select an entry from the list, the traffic information will be shown as a map preview (3) ⇨ *page 143, fig. 126*. Select and confirm a traffic message to display the details for that message.
– **Displaying the selected traffic message on the map**: select the right control button > **Show on map**.
– **Displaying the next traffic message on the map**: press the control knob.

Traffic information display

Colored warning symbols: traffic incidents on your route are shown in the upper section of the list and are sorted according to distance.

Warning symbols with ⮌: avoided traffic incidents.

Grayed out warning symbols: traffic incidents that are not on your route. They are sorted according to road type (expressway, highway, other road), country and name.

Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion.

Tips

Critical traffic information, such as warnings about wrong-way drivers, is automatically displayed. To hide the traffic information, press the BACK button or the control knob.
– TMC traffic reports are not available in Canada. For more information, please contact Sirius Canada.

Better route

By receiving traffic information through TMC, your MMI calculates a better route if available and the possible time saved compared to the current route. You can decide which route you would like to use.

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

If your MMI has calculated a better route than the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** appears on the map along with the time that may be saved. A better route is ▶

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

indicated in the map view by the symbol
⇨ *page 139, fig. 123*.

Apply better route

– Press the right control button in the map view, or select: left control button > **Traffic messages**. The better route with the calculated arrival time is displayed.
– Select and confirm the better route, or select and confirm **Details** to show details about the optimized route. You can zoom in or out on the map using the MMI touch control pad. Requirement: there must be more than one optimized route calculated. Press the control knob to switch to the next route in the detailed view. **Closing the detailed view**: press the BACK button.
– After you have selected a better route, the route will be recalculated.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
Free text search: the desired destination cannot be found.	The destination may not be included in the navigation database, or the term may have been entered incorrectly. Check if the desired country/state was selected for the free text search using the **Country/state selection** ⇨ *page 132* or the option **All countries/states**.

Radio

Opening the radio



Fig. 127 FM station list (HD Radio technology FM)



Fig. 128 SiriusXM station list

The radio supports the FM, AM and SiriusXM* (satellite radio) bands. Using the HD Radio receiver also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM bands in digital format.

▸ Press the RADIO button.

After opening the radio, the last opened station list is displayed.

Selecting a station: select and confirm a station from the station list. FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD Radio technology symbol HD Ⓐ. If reception quality declines, the radio may automatically switch to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability. Digital HD Radio stations* may contain multiple additional stations*. The available additional stations* are listed under the radio station. If you lose reception, the additional stations* are muted since they can no longer be received.

Setting the frequency band: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set.

Updating the station list: station lists are updated automatically.

The following information is displayed in the station lists:

① Presets

The station is stored as a preset. The symbol shows the stored location in the presets list (for example, 21).

② Radio text (shortened display)

If available, program information about the set station is displayed in all of the station lists.

③ Frequency

④ Station name

⑤ Channel number

If there is a loss of radio signal (SiriusXM*), the following system information is displayed in the station list:

NoSignal: the tuner is currently not receiving a satellite signal Ⓑ.

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

Tips

- Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
- Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
- Satellite radio is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
- iTunes tagging* is not supported by all radio stations.

Radio functions

Free text search



Fig. 129 Input field and results list for free text search ▶

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field. Search in all frequency bands for a station name or program type, such as **News**.

– **Opening the free text search**: when in a station list, keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field is displayed.
– **Using the free text search**: See ⇨ *page 100*.

You can also search for frequencies.

Stations from the presets list ③ are displayed in the results list ①. The symbol ② indicates which station list you switched to based on the station selection.

Additional options

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button.

The following options are available depending on the frequency band:

– **Sound settings**: see ⇨ *page 171*.
– **Store as favorite**: See ⇨ *page 148*.
– **Delete all entries**: all entries are deleted in the **Last stations** view.
– **Tag this song for iTunes***[1)]: connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface* on your MMI. Select and confirm **Tag this song for iTunes**. The track that is currently playing is stored on your Apple device. Synchronize your Apple device with iTunes. The tagged track will display the next time you open your iTunes media center. If there is no Apple device connected, the tagged tracks are stored temporarily in the MMI (maximum of 50 tracks). Once you connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface, the tags are stored on the device.
– **Manual tuning**: the frequency bars are displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.
– **Seek**: the radio tunes to the previous or next receivable station.
– **Scan**: all stations are played for several seconds each.
– **Radio settings**: see ⇨ *page 149*.

Radio text

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > a frequency band (such as **FM**) > a station.
▸ Select: right control button > **Radio text**.

Browsing through radio text entries: turn the control knob to the left or right.

Requirement: a radio text entry must be displayed and the station must be broadcasting a phone number, a navigation destination, or a text message number as RadioText Plus information.

If a location, a phone number or a text message number is included with a radio text entry, the radio text will be shown with a colored border. You have the following options:

Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message*:

– Select a radio text entry with RadioText Plus information and press the control knob.
– Select and confirm **Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message***. press the BACK button to cancel.

Tips

The availability of radio text and RadioText Plus depends on the radio station.

View: additional station information



Fig. 130 Radio view: additional station information

Requirement: you must be tuned to a radio station. The **Show "Now Playing" screen** option must be switched on ⇨ *page 149*. ▶

1) In preparation at the time of printing.

Symbols in the Show "Now Playing" screen ⇨ *fig. 130*:

① Radio text availability

Radio text is available for the selected station ⇨ *page 147*.

② iTunes tagging

The **Tag this song for iTunes** option is available for the set station ⇨ *page 147, Additional options*.

③ FM HD Radio technology

The station is received through FM HD Radio technology.

④ Screen view

Display **Cover art** or **Station logo** ⇨ *page 149*.

Displaying the station list: turn the control knob, or press the BACK button.

Radio menu

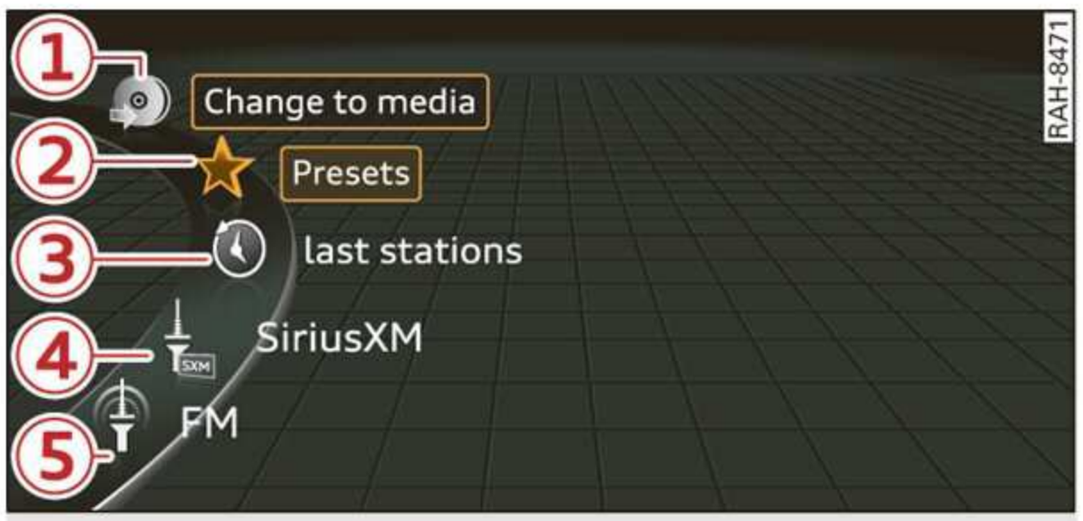


Fig. 131 Example: Radio menu

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button.

Selecting the frequency band: select and confirm the desired frequency band in the “Radio” menu ⇨ *fig. 131*, or press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is selected. Displays the station list.

① Switch to media

The **Media** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 157*.

② Favorites

The presets list is displayed ⇨ *page 148, Presets*.

③ Last stations

The last stations listened to from all frequency bands are shown in the list. Select and confirm a station for immediate playback.

④ SiriusXM*

The **SiriusXM*** channel list is displayed.

⑤ FM

The **FM** station list is displayed.

Additional frequency bands

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can select additional frequency bands in the selection menu ⇨ *fig. 131*.

Presets

You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the presets list:

▸ Select: the RADIO button > **Presets**.

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

– **Storing presets**: select and confirm *a free preset space*. Follow the system instructions.
– Select and confirm *a station from the list* if necessary.

Requirement: a station list must be displayed.

– **Storing presets**: Select: *a station from the list* > right control button > **Store as preset**, or press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

– **Displaying the presets list**: select: RADIO button > **Presets**.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

– **Listening to presets**: select and confirm *a preset from the list*.
– **Moving a preset**: select *a preset from the list* > right control button > **Move preset**, or press and hold the control knob for several seconds. Select and confirm the location of the selected preset.
– **Deleting presets**: select *a preset from the list* > right control button > **Delete preset** > **Delete this preset** or **Delete all presets**.

Additional settings

Radio settings

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**.

The following settings can be selected, depending on the band that is selected:

Station names (FM)

Variable: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is shown in the Infotainment system display.

Fixed: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the Infotainment system display. Only the current section of the scrolling text is displayed.

FM/AM HD Radio*

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

Channel sorting (SiriusXM*)

You can set the channel sorting for SiriusXM station lists* by:

– **Channel number**: the channels are sorted in ascending order according to their channel number.
– **Channel name**: the channels are listed in alphabetical order.
– **First category, then channel number**: the channels are sorted by their category and then by their channel numbers.
– **First category, then channel name**: the stations are sorted by their category and then by their channel names.

Category filter (SiriusXM*)

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. Select the **All categories** option to deactivate all filter options and display all available stations in the satellite station list.

Show "Now Playing" screen

When the function is switched on ☑ and the stations or presets list is open, the display will switch to the **Show "Now Playing" screen** view after approximately five seconds ⇨ *page 147*. Depending on availability, information about the set station (such as station name, artist and station logo) may be displayed in this view.

Preferred picture view

You can set your preferred screen view for the **Show "Now Playing" screen** ⇨ *page 147*.

– **Station logo**: the station logo is displayed, depending on availability.
– **Cover art**: the album cover or genre cover is displayed, depending on availability.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. The **Cover art** option must be selected ⇨ *page 149,* **Preferred picture view**.

When the function is switched on ☑, the album cover or genre cover for the song that is playing is loaded from the Gracenote online database, depending on availability.

Subscription status (SiriusXM)*

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date for your license is displayed.

Call to SiriusXM*: the contact information for your satellite radio provider is displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call to SiriusXM***.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
A station with poor reception is no longer displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station.	Store the station as a preset in advance. Access the presets using the presets list ⇨ *page 148*.

4S1012721BA

Media

Introduction

There are various media drives and connections available in the MMI. For example, you can play audio/video files from the Jukebox or connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface and operate it through the MMI.

Notes

General

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection) was tested with a variety of products and media on the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions, or may not play at all.

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video files are subject to copyright protection.

The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and that are identified with the symbol 🔒.

Data security: never store important data on SD cards, the Jukebox, CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. Audi AG is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files, folders, or playlists that are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load the audio/video files. Audi recommends using storage media that only contain audio/video files. To decrease the time it takes to load audio/video files, create subfolders (for example, for the artist or album). The loading time will also increase when importing files.

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check the Gracenote metadata database. However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Restricted functionality: reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 168*.

Reset the Jukebox to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 168*.

For information about the properties of supported media and file formats, see ⇨ *page 162*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in General information on page 124*.

CD/DVD operation

CD/DVD and format restrictions: the functionality of individual storage media may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard, and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession DVDs are not supported.

Using CDs/DVDs, the CD drive or the DVD drive: to ensure correct, high-quality playback and to prevent damage to the drive or disc reading errors, always store CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do *not* use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
– Single CDs/DVDs with 3 in (8 cm) diameter
– CD/DVDs that are not round
– CDs/DVDs with labels
– Protective rings
– Cleaning CDs

Thermal protection switch: CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold. A thermal protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser.

Laser devices: laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 ▶

(CO) 6/VDE 0837. The various types of audio equipment installed conform to safety class 1. The laser uses so little power or is shielded so there is no danger when it is used correctly.

Media drives

SD card reader

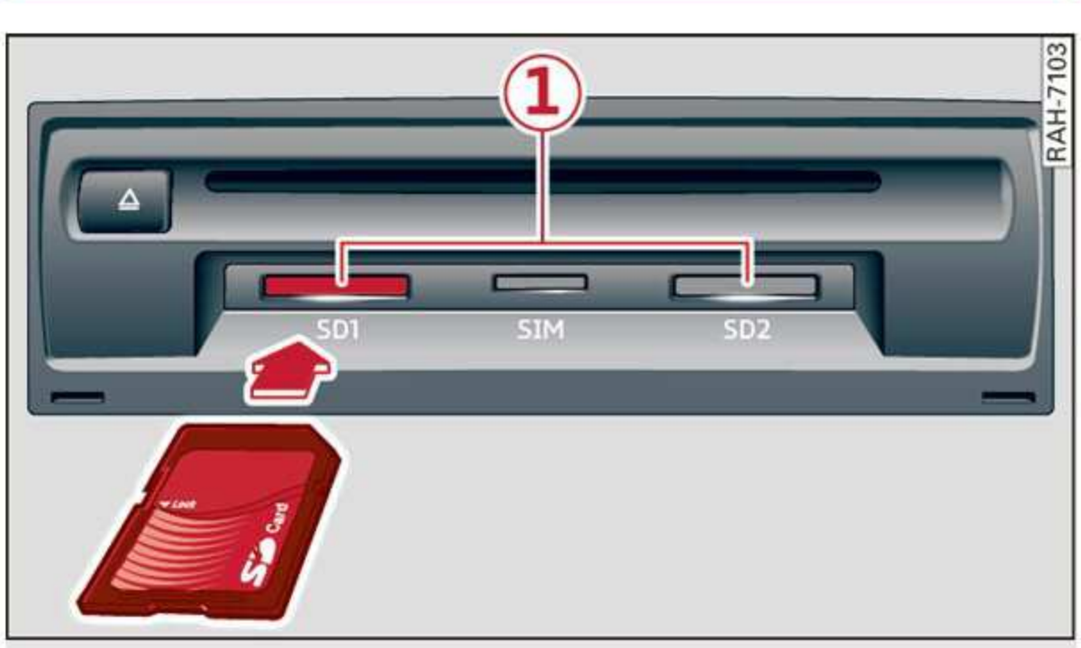


Fig. 132 Rear panel: inserting an SD card

– **Inserting the SD card**: The angled corner of the SD card must face toward the right front side when being inserted. Slide the SD card into the card reader slot (1) until the SD card clicks into place.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted SD card contains supported audio/video files ⇨ *page 162*.
– **Removing the SD card**: press briefly on the SD card.

The SD card reader is accessed and operated through the MMI (3) ⇨ *page 157, fig. 136*.

Note

Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.

Tips

Always keep the SD card in a suitable case to protect it from dirt, dust particles, and other damage.

DVD drive

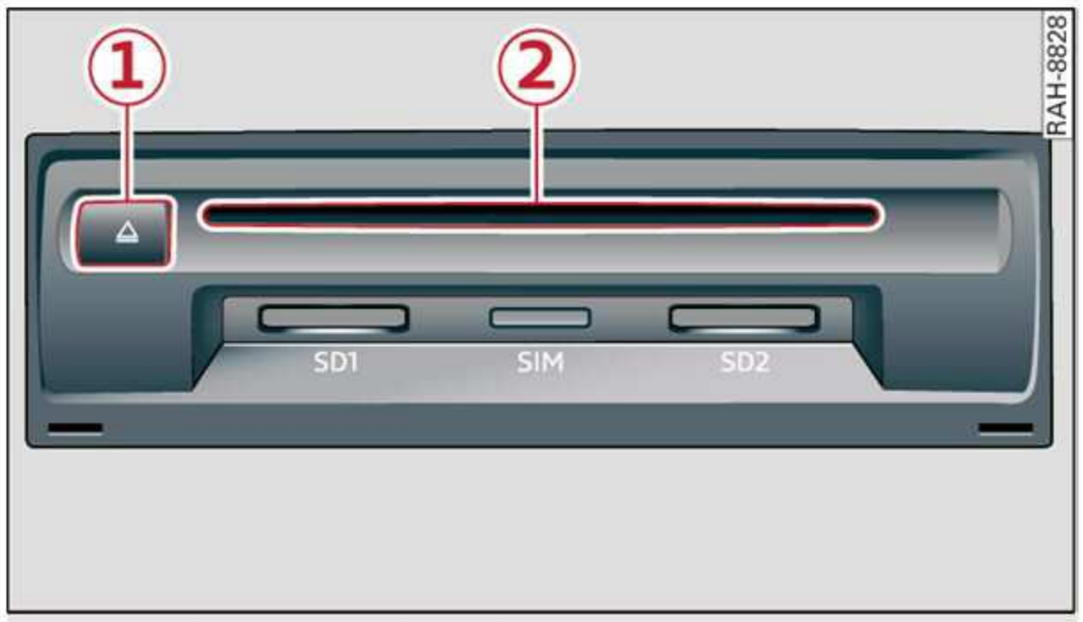


Fig. 133 Rear panel: DVD drive

– **Loading a CD/DVD**: the CD/DVD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot (2) with the label facing up.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD/DVD contains supported audio/video files ⇨ *page 162*.
– **Ejecting a CD/DVD**: press the button (1).

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI (2) ⇨ *page 157, fig. 136*.

Note

– Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Tips

CDs/DVDs that contain audio files with a high data rate may not play.

Jukebox

After you have filled the Jukebox with music and/or videos, for example from your SD card, you can play these files directly from the Jukebox. The Jukebox memory capacity is approximately 10 GB.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 157* is displayed. Select and confirm **Jukebox**. ▶

Adding files to the Jukebox

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 157* is displayed. Select one of the following sources to copy to the Jukebox: SD card, CD-ROM, DVD-ROM, USB storage device.

Requirement: the media center (for example, tracks, albums) must be open.

– **Selecting an entry**: select an entry from the media center. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

Requirement: the playlist must be open. See ⇨ *page 159*.

– **Selecting a track**: select the track that is currently playing. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This track** or **Entire album** or **This artist**.

Requirement: a video file must be playing.

– Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox**.

The copying process begins. The status of the copying process is shown in the MMI.

– **Hiding the importing process**: select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The importing process is hidden.
– **Canceling the importing process**: select and confirm **Cancel copying**, or remove the source that is being imported. Files already copied remain.

Requirement: the copying process must be active in the background.

– **Showing the copying process**: select: right control button > **Copying in progress**.

When importing, the audio files are automatically sorted into the media center categories based on the stored additional information ⇨ *page 158*. The copied video files are stored in the media center under the **Videos** category.

Playing the Jukebox

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 152, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

The Jukebox is accessed and operated through the MMI ① ⇨ *page 157, fig. 136*.

Displaying Jukebox memory capacity

Select: right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information about the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks is displayed.

Deleting tracks from the Jukebox[1)]

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files.

– **Deleting an entry**: select an entry from the Jukebox media center. Select: right control button > **Delete from jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.
– The status of the deleting process is shown in the MMI. Jukebox playback stops during the deleting process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

Note

Do not import audio/video files when the engine is turned off because this will drain the vehicle battery.

Tips

– Tracks from audio CDs cannot be imported to the Jukebox for legal reasons.
– Files that have already been imported are automatically recognized and cannot be copied to the Jukebox again.
– It is not possible to play audio/video files in the DVD drive while importing them.
– The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.
– Files or tracks without additional stored information are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends adding additional information (such as ID3 tags) to audio files.
– Reset the Jukebox to the factory default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 168*.

1) Not in the **Playback** view.

Bluetooth audio player

With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly from your Bluetooth-capable device (such as a cell phone) through the MMI.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 169* and mobile device must be switched on. The **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 169* must be switched on in the MMI.

- **Connecting** a **Bluetooth player**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed. Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** ⑥ ⇨ *page 157, fig. 137*.
- If necessary, select and confirm, **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The Bluetooth device search starts. Follow the instructions in the MMI.
- Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI generates a PIN for the connection.
- Select and confirm **Yes**.
- Enter the PIN for connecting on your Bluetooth device, or if the PIN is already displayed on your Bluetooth device, confirm it on the Bluetooth device. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

The media is started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used.

Tips

- Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device.
- Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one mobile device can be active.
- Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3/1.4) and A2DP are supported.
- Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
- The supported media functions (such as shuffle) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
- For more information on supported devices, visit www.audiusa.com/bluetooth or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Wi-Fi audio player

Using the Wi-Fi audio player media source on the MMI, you can connect and operate your Wi-Fi-capable media player (such as a smartphone) to wirelessly play music from your media player library. The media player is connected through the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot. A UPnP Server app or an integrated UPnP/DLNA server on your media player is required to access your media player library.

Requirement: the Wi-Fi function on your media player must be switched on. The **myAudi** app or an UPnP server app is installed on your media player or your media player has an integrated UPnP/DLNA server.

- **Connecting a media player**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 157* is displayed. Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** ⑦ ⇨ *page 157, fig. 137*.
- If necessary, select and confirm **Wi-Fi turned off** > **Turn on Wi-Fi** to activate Wi-Fi in the MMI. Select **Wi-Fi settings**, if necessary. Select the same settings on the wireless media player that are used for the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- **Starting the Wi-Fi audio player**: Start the **myAudi** app or an UPnP server app, or allow media sharing on your device.

Operating the media player: the media player is operated through the MMI.

- Press the left control button repeatedly until the **Folders** menu item appears. Select and confirm **Folders**.
- **Playing music from the media player**: select and confirm **Media center**.

Web radio: see ⇨ *page 154*. ▶

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any Wi-Fi devices within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 187*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 124*.

Tips

– The Wi-Fi connection is reconfigured when inserting or removing the mini SIM card in the SIM card reader*. There may be a temporary interruption in audio playback, depending on the media player.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 124, Audi connect*.
– Please note that a Wi-Fi connection does not automatically make it possible to use the Internet. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 124*.
– To avoid interruptions during playback, deactivate the power saving function on the media player or connect it to a charger.
– The loading times for the audio data depend on the media player used and the number of files that it contains.
– A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are displayed in the MMI.
– Songs downloaded for offline use using music streaming services are stored on your mobile device (such as a smartphone) and may be DRM protected. The Wi-Fi audio player will not play DRM protected files.
– Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information on the Wi-Fi audio player.

Online media and Internet radio

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

You can playback and operate various online media services and Internet radio using the MMI.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 157, fig. 137* is displayed.

Applies to: online media and Internet radio usage

Requirement:
– The **myAudi** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.
– You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the **myAudi** app and you must have selected your vehicle.
– The Wi-Fi function on the mobile device and on the MMI must be switched on.
– If necessary, check in the connection manager ⇨ *page 168* if the mobile device you connected is selected under the **MMI connect app** (☑).
– The MMI must be connected to the network.
– The symbol for the **Online media*** source ⑧ ⇨ *page 157, fig. 137* is shown in the MMI.

Applies to: online media usage

Additional requirement:
– A supported online media service must be available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– You must have an account with a supported online media service.
– Depending on the online media service, you may need to install and open an app on your mobile device.

Starting Online media

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 157* is displayed.
– Select and confirm an online media service.

Starting Internet radio

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 157* is displayed.
– Select and confirm **Internet radio**. The Internet radio browser or the last station that was playing is shown. ▶

– **Selecting the station**: if necessary, select and confirm a category in the Internet radio **Browser** > *a station*.

Online media and Internet radio:: additional options

– Press the right control button.

The following options may be available, depending on the information shown (such as the station/track that is currently playing):

– **Sound settings**: see ⇨ *page 171*.
– **Wi-Fi settings**: see ⇨ *page 129, Wi-Fi settings*.
– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 168*.
– Additional options may be available, depending on the active online media service or Internet radio.

WARNING

– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving.
– Do not use any Wi-Fi devices within range of the airbags while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 187*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in General information on page 124*.

Tips

– Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may disconnected when online media sources are playing.
– **Online media** and **Internet radio** usage depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– Audi AG simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI and does not take any responsibility for the contents of the online media services.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 124, Audi connect*.
– Depending on the mobile device being used, there may be interruptions during media playback and when using the **myAudi** app. To prevent interruptions when using a mobile device, do not lock the screen on your mobile device and keep the **myAudi** app in the foreground.
– Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information about online media.

Multimedia connections

USB adapter for Audi music interface

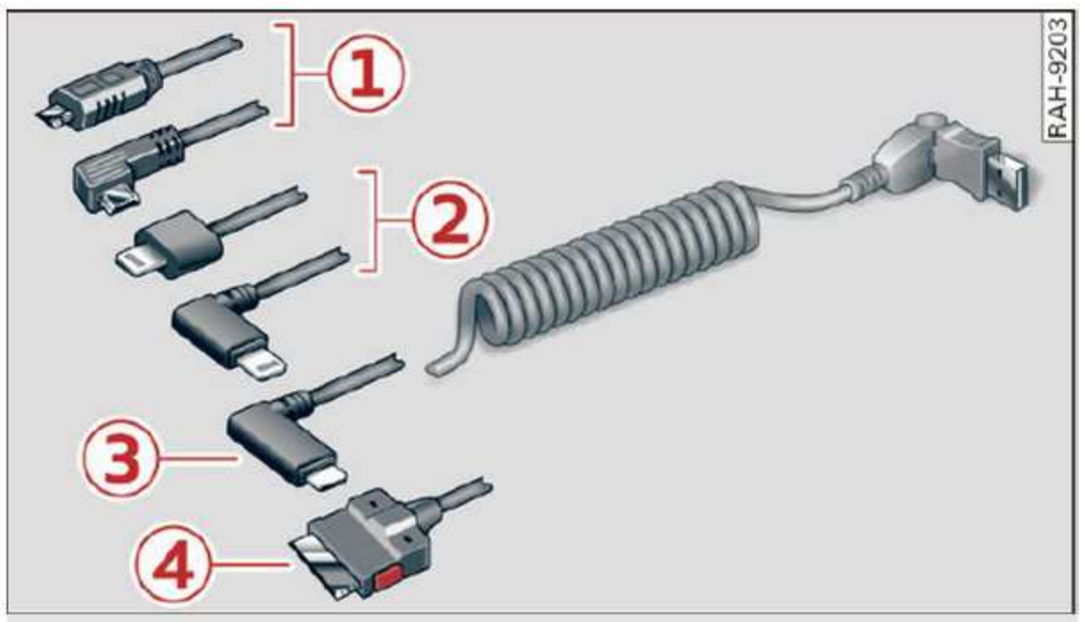


Fig. 134 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapter

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can connect and charge your mobile devices (such as a smartphone or MP3 player) to the Audi music interface using a special USB adapter.

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection

② USB adapter for devices with an Apple Lightning connection

③ USB adapter for devices with USB type C connection

④ USB adapter for devices with an Apple Dock connector

You can purchase the USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.

Note

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Audi music interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

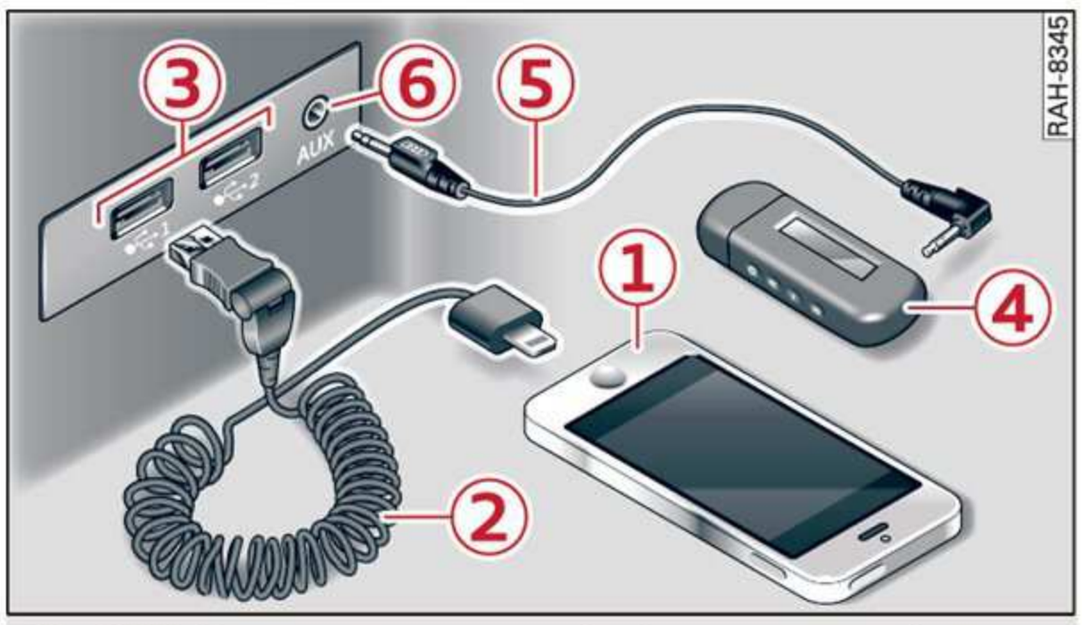


Fig. 135 Storage compartment in the center console: connecting mobile devices

Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface in order to operate them through the MMI and charge the battery.

USB Input

– **Connecting mobile devices using a USB adapter**: connect the applicable USB adapter ② to the port on the Audi music interface ③ and then connect the adapter to the mobile device ① (such as an iPod).
– **Charging a mobile device using a USB adapter**: when you connect a mobile device to the Audi music interface ③ using the applicable USB adapter ②, the battery will automatically charge.
– **Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface**: Remove the USB adapter cable ② from the Audi music interface ③.
– **Disconnecting mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector**: remove the Apple Dock connector from the Apple device with the release tabs pressed in ④ ⇨ *page 155, fig. 134*.

The media are started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used ⇨ *page 157*.

Connecting multiple mobile devices: if a mobile device (such as a smartphone) is connected at the respective USB port on the Audi music interface, then all devices can be used as a playback source.

AUX Input

– **Connecting a mobile device to the AUX input**: Connect the cable ⑤ to the AUX input ⑥ on the Audi music interface and then connect it to the mobile device ④ (for example, an MP3 player or a smartphone).
– **Disconnecting a mobile device from the AUX input**: pull the cable ⑤ out of the Audi music interface.
– **Operation**: select and confirm the **External audio player** source ⑤ ⇨ *page 157, fig. 136*. The media are started and operated through the mobile device ④.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Remove the connector from the Audi music interface carefully so it is not damaged.
– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to prevent damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
– Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

– When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
– Do not use an additional adapter or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter (⇨ *page 155*). Using an additional adapter or US extension cable may impair functionality.
– You can purchase the AUX connector cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.
– Audi recommends setting the volume of a mobile device connected to the AUX input to ▶

approximately 70% of the maximum volume.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Some versions of the iPod such as the iPod shuffle cannot be connected to the USB adapter for devices with Apple Dock connector. Connect these devices using a AUX connector cable.
– Video playback through the Audi music interface is only supported if the connected device is recognized as a USB storage device (for example a USB stick). Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.
– iPod or iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your iPod or iPhone if this happens.
– For important information on operating your iPod or iPhone, refer to the user guide for the device. Audi recommends updating the iPod or iPhone software to the latest version.
– For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, check the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/mp3 or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Playing media

Accessing media

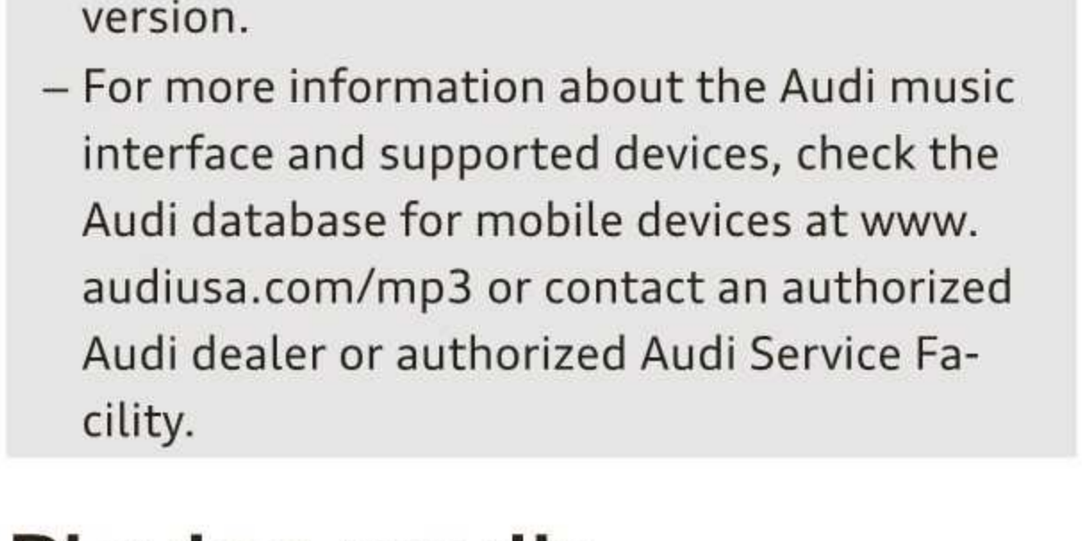


Fig. 136 Diagram: possible sources in the Media menu



Fig. 137 Diagram: possible sources in the Media menu

You can start and operate various media through the MMI control panel.

Requirement: a media source must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 151*.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired source, or
- ▸ press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sources may be displayed in the **Media** menu:

Switch to radio: the Radio menu opens ⇨ *page 146*.

① **Jukebox** 151
② **DVD/CD drive** 151
③ **SD card reader** 151
④ **Audi music interface** 156
such as iPod, USB stick
⑤ **External audio player** 156
such as an MP3 player connected to the AUX input
⑥ **Bluetooth audio player** 153
⑦ **Wi-Fi audio player*** 153
⑧ **Online media*** and **Internet radio*** . 154

– **Playing audio/video files**: select a source in the **Media** menu > *category* (such as artists > *album* > *track*).
– **Moving one level up in the folder structure**: press the BACK button, or select and confirm **Folder up**. ▶

– **Selecting the previous/next track/chapter**[1]: Press the On/Off knob for the MMI control panel briefly to the left ⏮ or to the right ⏭.
– **Fast-forwarding and rewinding audio/video files**: press and hold the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel to the left ⏮ or right ⏭ for a longer time.
– **Pausing or resuming playback**: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.
– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.

Media center

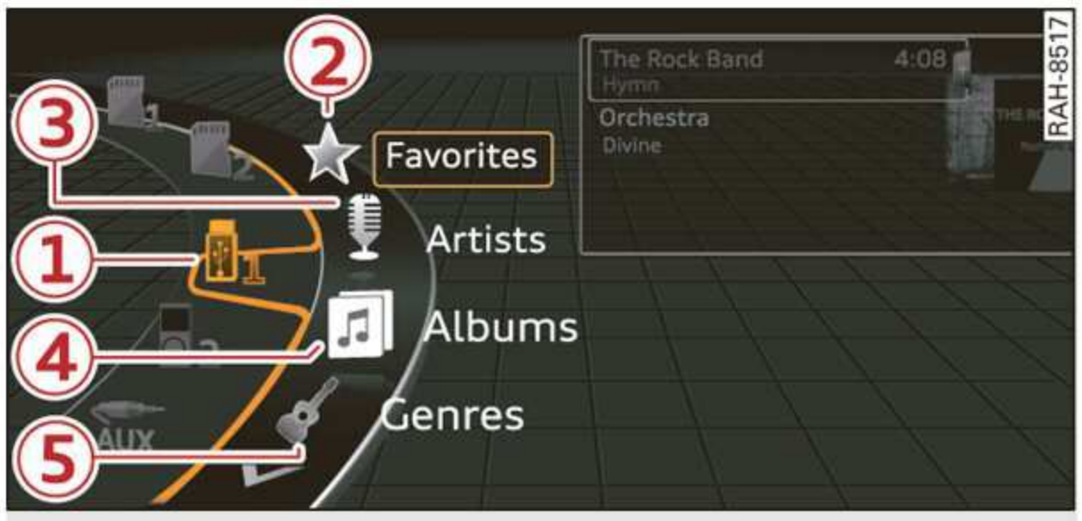


Fig. 138 Example: USB stick categories

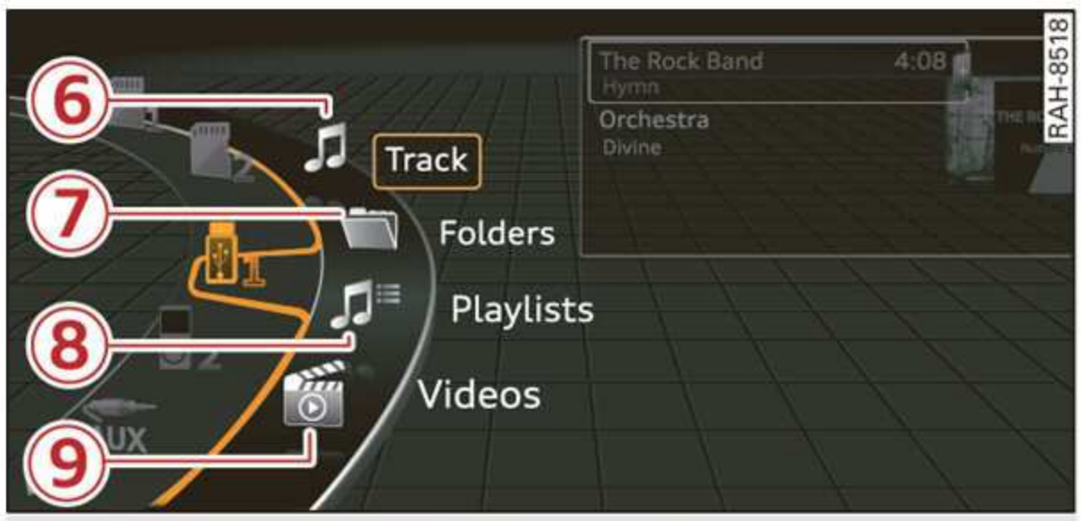


Fig. 139 Example: USB stick categories

Various categories for selecting audio/video files are available in the media center.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed. Select and confirm the desired source.

① Active source

The active source is highlighted. The active source symbol ① may change depending on the connected device, the online media service*, or Internet radio*. The device name may be displayed (for example: myPhone). As an example, a USB stick is shown ⇨ *fig. 138* connected to the Audi music interface.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video files* from the following categories and add them to the playlist:

② Favorites

The **Favorites** category appears if at least one entry is stored in the favorites list. See ⇨ *page 160*.

③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (such as **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a song.

⑥ Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

⑦ Folders

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed. Select a folder, if necessary. Select and confirm a track. ▶

1) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

⑧ Playlists

All available playlists from the source and the smart playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

Smart playlists:

– **Last played tracks**: the last tracks played in the selected source are displayed.
– **Most played**: the most played songs in the selected source are displayed.
– **5 stars** to **1 star**: tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
– **Unrated**: all files from the selected source without rating information (for example, in the ID3 tag) are displayed.

⑨ Videos

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

Tips

– Only the categories supported by the medium are available. For example, CD/DVD-ROM tracks cannot be selected with categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. With an iPod (source: Audi music interface ⇨ *page 155*), the **Podcasts**, **Audio books** and **Composers** categories are also available.
– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
– When synchronizing a portable device with "Cloud“ services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.

Free text search

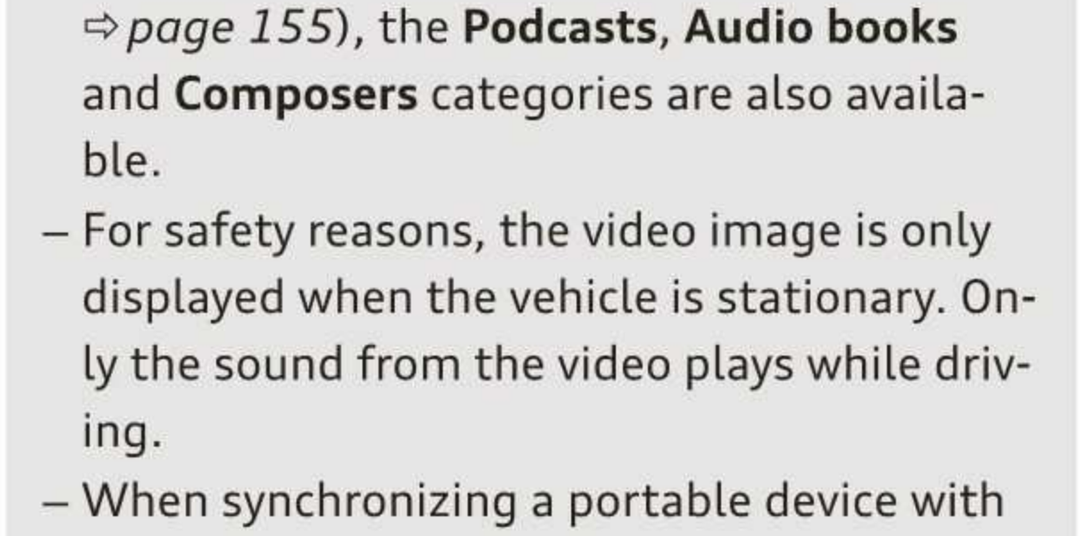


Fig. 140 Input field and results list for free text search

You can search in the active source, for example for tracks and video files.

You can open the **free text search** depending on the selected source.

Requirement: the playlist ⇨ *page 159* or media center ⇨ *page 158* must be displayed.

Opening free text search

▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① appears, or push the control knob up.

Using the free text search: See ⇨ *page 100, Free text search*.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list ⑤. You can search for artists ②, albums ③ or tracks ④ as well as genres and videos.

Tips

– Only files in the active source will be searched.
– If you open free text search in the **Folders** category ⑦ or the **Composers**, **Podcasts** and **Audio books** categories, it will only search through the files in that folder.

Playlist



Fig. 141 Example: playlist

The track, artist, album and album cover, if applicable, will appear in the playlist.

Options

See ⇨ *page 160, Additional settings*.

Favorites

You can store up to 50 entries for each source in the favorites list.

Requirement: the playlist or media center must be open.

– Select the desired entry from the playlist or media center.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**, or press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

When you store a track as a favorite, the associated album will appear in the favorites list as an entry.

Requirement: at least one entry must be stored in the favorites list.

Displaying the favorites list: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 157* is displayed. Select the source that contains the *categories* ⇨ *page 158* (for example, SD card). Select the **Favorites** *category*.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

– **Listening to a favorite**: select and confirm an entry from the favorites list.
– **Move favorite**: select the desired entry from the favorites list. Select the right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the desired favorites location.
– **Deleting a favorite**: select the desired entry from the favorites list. Select the right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Additional settings

Options menu

Context-specific functions and settings are available depending on the selected source.

▸ Press the right control button.

Sound settings

See ⇨ *page 171*.

Input level

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the AUX connection cable or to a USB adapter ⇨ *page 155*.

The volume of the mobile device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume on the mobile device to 70% of the maximum volume output.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 169*.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 129, Wi-Fi settings*.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 168*.

Show "Now Playing" screen

With the function switched on ☑ and a playlist open, various information about the current track (such as artist, album and album cover*) as well as the playing time and the remaining playing time are displayed.

Jukebox memory capacity

Information on the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks in the Jukebox is displayed.

Rewind/Fast forward

Turn the control knob to the left or right, or move your finger on the MMI touch control pad from the left to the right.

Shuffle[1)]

With the function switched on ☑, all files in the playlist are played and shown in random order.

Repeat track[1)]

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track repeats. ▶

1) The function automatically switches off when the source is changed.

Back to 'Playback'

The options menu is closed. The track currently playing appears in the playlist ⇨ *page 159, fig. 141*.

Play similar music

The track currently playing is quickly analyzed for features such as artist, genres, mood, and beat, and a smart playlist with similar tracks will be shown.

Play more...

A smart playlist is shown based on the track currently playing. You can select between a playlist with more tracks **by this artist**, **from this album** or **of this genre**.

Set as ringtone*[1)]

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI. The track currently playing must be in the **Jukebox** ⇨ *page 152*.

The selected track will be used as the ringtone for incoming calls.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

Depending on availability, various information will load about the track currently playing when this function is switched on ☑.

Copy to jukebox

See ⇨ *page 152, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

Favorites

See ⇨ *page 160*.

Additional options

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and a video file or a DVD must be playing.

Parental control

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted using parental control.

Enter the password for parental control. Password set at the factory: **1234**. You have the following options:

– **Protection level**: select and confirm the protection level (for example, Level 5). Eight different protection levels can be set for parental control. If you set the parental control level at Level 5, all DVDs from levels 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play. Select **Unrestricted** to remove all of the restrictions.
– **Change password**: edit the current password.

Switch to full screen

The video image is displayed. Turn the control knob to display the playlist, or press the BACK button.

Replay video

When this function is switched on ☑, the current video will replay.

Show DVD menu

Selecting a menu item: select and confirm a menu item, or move your finger on the MMI touch control pad and press the control knob.

Audio track[2)]

You can manually set the audio track (language and audio format). The language and audio format options depend on the video DVD.

Subtitles[2)]

You can manually select subtitles for playback. The languages available depend on the DVD.

Aspect ratio

Audi recommends the **Automatic** setting for the picture format. You can set the picture format ▶

1) This function is not available for all cell phones.
2) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

depending on the active file or source (for example video file, DVD).

Aspect ratio	Information
Automatic	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimal ratio. Black bars may appear on the sides of the display, depending on the source format and the Infotainment system display that is installed.
Zoom	The image is enlarged to fill the entire Infotainment system display. Switch the function off if the image is distorted.
Cinemascope	Use this setting for films in cinema format 21:9. Black bars will appear on the upper/lower edge in the Infotainment system display.
Original	The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off when **Auto** is selected.
4:3	The image is set to the 4:3 picture format. Black bars are shown on the sides of the Infotainment system display.
16:9	The image is set to the 16:9 picture format. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display.

Tips

- Not all video DVDs have parental control.
- The protection levels for the **Parental control** are based on the US standards from the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Note that the age levels for video DVDs in European countries may differ.
- Password entry for **Parental control** will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row. The password can only be reset by an authorized Audi dealer.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The following audio/video files are supported by the DVD drive, Jukebox, SD card reader and the connection for USB storage devices.

	Audio files	Video files
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity up to 128 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, song)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player; **Audi music interface**: mobile devices (such as an iPod ⇨ *page 155*, MTP player, USB storage device in “USB Device Subclass 1 and 6” that conforms to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play-capable), external USB flash drives and hard drives	
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage devices**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device partitions**: 2 per USB connection **CD/DVD file systems**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF	

	Audio files				Video files		
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote is displayed, depending on availability.						
Format	MPEG 1/2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG 2/4	FLAC	MPEG 1/2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a .m4b .aac	.flac	.mpg .mpeg	.mp4 .m4v .mov .avi	.wmv; .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX						
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies			48 kHz sampling frequency	up to maximum 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at maximum 25 fps		
Number of files	**DVD drive**: max. 1,000 files per medium **Jukebox**: approximately 10 GB memory capacity; max. 3,000 files can be imported **USB storage device and memory cards**: max. 10,000 files per medium; max. 1,000 files per playlist/directory						

Tips

– The media drives do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
– To compress MP3 files, a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s is recommended. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for MP3 files with variable bit rate.
– Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may not always display, depending on the system language.
– The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its “USB Device Subclass”.
– Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player: mobile device is not supported.	Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 155, Multimedia connections*/⇨ *page 153, Bluetooth audio player*. You can learn about supported mobile devices in the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audiusa.com/bluetooth.
AUX input: the volume is too high/too low when starting playback through the AUX input.	Adjust the volume of the mobile device to approximately 70% of the maximum output ⇨ *page 160,* **Input level**.

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface: the mobile device is not recognized as a source.	For many cell phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% of its capacity). The mobile device will only be recognized as a media source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge level is sufficient.
Audi music interface: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 169* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**.
AUX input: there is static when connecting and disconnecting the AUX connection cable.	When connecting and disconnecting, the **External audio player** source is already selected. Before connecting or disconnecting the mobile device, either mute the device (see ⇨ *page 171*) or switch to a different audio source (for example ⇨ *page 146, Opening the radio*).
Bluetooth audio player/**Wi-Fi audio player**: audio playback interference.	Only *one* interface should be actively used at a time to ensure problem-free playback.
Wi-Fi audio player: audio playback interference.	Audio playback interference can occur on some cell phones if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established through the SIM card reader* on the MMI control panel and the **mobile data** option on the cell phone is switched on. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your cell phone.
Jukebox: tracks on the imported playlist are grayed out.	When importing playlists, all of the files themselves must be imported.
Jukebox: imported tracks cannot be played or found.	If you cannot find imported tracks in the media center, they may not be supported. Only copy supported files ⇨ *page 162* to the Jukebox.
Wi-Fi audio player: multiple devices are connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (such as a smartphone) appears as the media source and cannot be changed.	Close the **myAudi** app on the connected devices (such as smartphones) that are not being used as the Wi-Fi audio player. Likewise, close the UPnP server apps or the media permissions on the integrated UPnP/DLNA server. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player ⇨ *page 153*.
Online media*: connection failed between the MMI and the **myAudi** app.	To establish a connection to the MMI, the MMI connection switch must be switched on in the **myAudi** app status screen.
Bluetooth audio player: interference with track display and audio playback.	Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. Audi recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone).
Wi-Fi hotspot*: your Wi-Fi device is disconnected from the Wi-Fi hotspot.	Make sure the network optimization functions are switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or in the network settings for your Wi-Fi device. For additional information refer to the user guide for your Wi-Fi device.

Audi smartphone interface

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI using the Audi smartphone interface. Certain content on your smartphone is adapted to the Infotainment system display while driving and can be operated through the MMI control panel.

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

iPhone generation 5 or higher with Lightning connector and iOS 7.1.2 operating system or higher, or

A smartphone with the Android Auto app and Android 5.0 Lollipop operating system or higher is required.

- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 156* using the applicable USB adapter ⇨ *page 155, fig. 134*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Activate Apple CarPlay** or **Activate Android Auto now**.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts on your smartphone, if applicable.

If you chose not to use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto when connecting your smartphone for the first time, you can start the Audi smartphone interface later on using the **Connection manager**.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi smartphone interface** > **Change to connection manager**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 156* using the applicable USB adapter ⇨ *page 155, fig. 134*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Audi smartphone interface** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 168*. You can select your smartphone in the list of devices that are already paired ⇨ *page 169*.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ! *in General information on page 124*.

Tips

- The functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:
  - The brand of your smartphone
  - The version of the operating system in your smartphone
  - The software version of the app used
  - The USB adapter cable and correct connection
  - Your cell phone service provider
  - The customized settings on your smartphone
- One of the factors above or a combination of any of them could cause your smartphone to be incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. For more information and assistance, refer to the user guide and the manufacturer of your smartphone.
- If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice recognition system ⇨ *page 109*.
- The menu language shown in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- The time displayed in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
- Some MMI functions are not available when Apple CarPlay or Android Auto is active.
- You cannot connect any mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Apple CarPlay connection is active. ▶

1) In preparation at the time of printing.

– When the Apple CarPlay connection is active, **Tag this song for iTunes***[1)] is not available ⇨ *page 147*.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Opening a menu

Apple CarPlay: you can go back to the Apple CarPlay main menu regardless of the selected menu item by pressing and holding the BACK button.

Android Auto: to go back to the Android Auto menu bar, push the control knob down.

Opening a menu item

Select and confirm a menu item using the MMI control panel.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Problem	Solution
Audi smartphone interface cannot be opened.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and use a different one if necessary. Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
	Android Auto: check if the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI failed.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 155*.
	Apple CarPlay: check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone.
	Android Auto: check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles.
The smartphone is not automatically detected.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 155*. Check if the requirements needed to connect a smartphone have been met.

1) In preparation at the time of printing.

System settings

Setting the date and time

You can set the clock time manually or using the GPS.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**, or
- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Date & time**.

Automatic setting

When this function is switched on ☑, the time and date are automatically set.

Time

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Time** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Date

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Date** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Time zone

When selecting the appropriate time zone, a sampling of countries in this zone will be listed.

Automatic time zone*

When this function is switched on ☑, the time will automatically adjust to the corresponding time zone.

Time format

If you select **24h**, the clock will display, for example, **13:00**. If you select **AM/PM**, the clock will display, for example, **1:00 PM**.

Date format

If you select **DD.MM.YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **31.08.2017**. If you select **MM/DD/YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **08/31/2017**. If you select **YYYY-MM-DD**, the date display will show, for example, **2017-08-31**.

MMI settings

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

Language

You can change the display language as well as the language for the voice guidance and voice recognition system.

The number of languages available depends on the market.

Measurement units

The following measurement units can be set depending on availability: **Speed**, **Distance**, **Temperature**, **Fuel consumption**, **Volume**, **Pressure**.

Mobile device reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

Requirement: your cell phone must be Qi-capable [1] or connected to the Audi music interface (1) with a USB adapter cable ⇨ *page 112, fig. 110*.

When the device reminder signal is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile device is still in the Audi phone box when you leave the vehicle. You can select between **Spoken cue**, **Signal tone** and **Off**.

Mobile device reminder signal volume: you can adjust the reminder signal volume by turning the control knob.

Switch off pop-up: when the function is switched on ☑, the messages in the Infotainment system display regarding the charging status of your cell phone in the Audi phone box are hidden. The reminder not to forget your cell phone when leaving the vehicle is likewise switched off. ▶

1) The Qi standard makes it possible to charge your mobile device wirelessly.

Tool tips

When this function is switched on ☑, your MMI shows you tips for input. The frequency of how often it displays decreases with time. You can switch off the operating tips at any time.

Speech dialog system

Command display: when this function is switched on ☑, the MMI will show you the possible commands for voice input in the respective menu. You can switch the function off at any time.

Short dialog: when this function is switched on ☑, a shorter form of the prompts is used. You can switch the function off at any time.

Speech dialog system volume: you can adjust the volume of the prompts by turning the control knob.

Individual speech training (only when the vehicle is stationary): you can adapt the voice recognition system to your voice or pronunciation in order to improve the system's ability to recognize your speech. Individual speech training is comprised of 20 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers. You can delete the programmed voice training with the **Reset individual speech training** function.

Factory settings

The following functions can be reset to the factory default settings:

- **Sound settings**
- **Radio**
- **Media settings**
- **Jukebox**
- **Directory**
- **Telephone**
- **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi**
- **Navigation settings**
- **Navigation and online memory**
- **Voice recognition system**
- **Message settings***
- **Apps***
- **Tool tips**
- **Audi connect***

You can select the desired functions individually or all at once with the option **Select all entries**. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

Tips

Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if necessary.

Connection manager

Introduction

The connection manager provides an overview of your connected devices and their network status:

- Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.
- Select and confirm a menu item.

If a mobile device was already connected and you select and confirm the corresponding menu item, the device name and connection status are displayed under the menu item.

You can individually **Connect** (☑) or **Disconnect** (☐) a paired device.

Requirement

- The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.
- The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup.
- The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 169* and mobile device must be switched on.
- The mobile device to be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

Primary phone

- **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
- **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Secondary phone

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
– **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
– **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all devices already paired, or insert a mini SIM card in the SIM card reader* ⇨ *page 125*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in General information on page 124*.

myAudi app

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Requirement: the **myAudi app** must be installed and open on your mobile device.

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
– **List of devices already paired**: select your mobile device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Audio player

Bluetooth player

Requirement: the Bluetooth function and visibility must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 169* and on the Bluetooth audio player.

– **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Select **Bluetooth audio player**. Search for and connect a mobile device.
– **List of devices already paired**: select a Bluetooth device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Wi-Fi audio player

Requirement: the Wi-Fi hotspot on the MMI ⇨ *page 129* and the Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi audio player must be switched on.

– **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi capable device.
– **Disconnecting the Wi-Fi audio player**: deactivate Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi-capable device. The device will be automatically removed from the list.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in General information on page 124*.

Directory

Display contacts from a cell phone (or an additional cell phone).

Requirement: cell phones must not be connected to the MMI through the Bluetooth remote SIM access profile or through the **Handsfree** profile.

– **Connect new device**: search for and connect a new cell phone.
– **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the cell phones that are already paired.

Audi smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

– Connect your cell phone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 156* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 155, fig. 134*.
– Select your cell phone from the list of cell phones that have already been connected.

Additional options

Depending on the selected function, you can use the right control button to access the available additional options in the connection manager.

Bluetooth settings

– **Bluetooth**: select and confirm a setting for the Bluetooth connection visibility. Select **Visible** ▶

for the MMI to be visible to other devices. Select **Invisible** for the MMI to not be visible to other devices. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with paired devices when the visibility is switched off. Select **Off** to turn visibility off. Then a Bluetooth connection is not possible.

– **Bluetooth audio player**: when this function is switched on ☑, the Bluetooth audio player is available as a source in the **Media** menu.
– **Delete Bluetooth device**: the selected cell phone/mobile device is disconnected from the MMI.
– **Show Bluetooth profiles**: you can **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree** profile and the **Directory/contacts*** separately.
– **Bluetooth name**: the MMI Bluetooth name (for example „AUDI MMI 2017“) is displayed and can be changed.

When the function is switched on ☑, the symbol ⑫ appears in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *page 101, fig. 107*.

Online settings*

– **Data connection settings**: See ⇨ *page 128, Cell phone network*.
– **Data usage counter**: the amount of data packets that are sent and received through the MMI is displayed. You can reset the data usage information to zero using the **Reset data counter** option.
– **Network status**: the mobile network provider for data service as well as the network status are displayed.

Wi-Fi settings

See ⇨ *page 129*.

SIM PIN settings*

– **Automatic PIN entry**: when this function is switched on ☑, the SIM PIN is automatically saved in the MMI after it is entered for the first time. The SIM PIN for four different SIM cards can be saved in the MMI. With the function switched off, the currently stored SIM PIN is deleted from the MMI. When the automatic PIN entry is switched on, there are no SIM PIN prompts.
– **Disable PIN query**: when switched on, there are no SIM PIN queries. The automatic PIN entry is not used in this case.
– **Change PIN**: you can change the PIN on your SIM card. First enter the current SIM PIN. The SIM PIN may only contain digits 0-9. The new SIM PIN must be entered twice for security and then it will be saved to the SIM card.

Apple CarPlay sound settings/Android Auto sound settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

See ⇨ *page 171*.

About Apple CarPlay/About Android Auto

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Here you will find legal information regarding the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto and information about device-specific data exchange.

Delete Apple CarPlay device/Delete Android Auto device

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Requirement: your cell phone must not be connected to the Audi music interface with a USB adapter.

Select: **Audi smartphone interface** > a device from the list > right control button.

To remove your mobile device from the list, select and confirm **Delete Apple CarPlay device** or **Delete Android Auto device**.

Tips

Some SIM cards do not allow the SIM PIN queries to be switched off.

System update

► Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

– **System update**: insert the storage device with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 151*. Select and confirm the drive > **Start update**. The length of the process depends on the size of the update. ►

– **Reset driver installation**: the selected media driver package is reset to the settings at the time of delivery.
– **Version information**: information on the MMI software version and the navigation database* software version is displayed. The **Software information** function also provides information on the software contained in the MMI and the licensing agreement.

Sound settings

The sound distribution and volume of the MMI can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

► Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**.

Treble/Bass

You can adjust the **Treble** and **Bass** settings by turning the control knob. The changed settings only apply for the audio source that is active at the time. This allows you to adjust the sound settings for each audio source separately.

Balance/fader* (sound focus)

– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the left or right**: press the control knob. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the front or rear***: press the control knob again. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution using the MMI touch**: move your finger on the MMI touch control panel in the desired direction.

Sound effects*

Select and confirm a **Focus** setting:

– **All**: all speakers in the vehicle are active (symmetrical sound distribution).
– **Front**: only the speakers in the front of the vehicle are active.

Speed dependent volume control

You can adjust how much the volume changes to compensate for noise inside the vehicle by turning the control knob.

Volume settings

Adjusting the volume

The volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) can be adjusted directly while the sound is playing using the On/Off knob.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *page 93, fig. 94* to the right or left.
– **Muting or pausing**: press the On/Off knob briefly, or turn the On/Off knob to the left until the Mute symbol appears. An active audio/video source is stopped.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: press the On/Off knob briefly or turn the On/Off knob to the right.

WARNING

Adjust the volume of the audio system so that signals from outside the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when the MMI is switched on.

Adjusting the system volume

► Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

Telephone

Mute telephone: messages and ringtones are set to mute.

Ringtone: see ⇨ *page 122*, **Ringtone and volume settings**.

Ringtone volume: you can adjust the volume of the selected ringtone by turning the control knob.

Message volume: you can adjust the volume of the notification for an incoming text message by turning the control knob. ▶

4S1012721BA

Microphone input level: you can adjust the volume during a phone call by turning the control knob.

Navigation

Voice guidance: See ⇨ *page 138*.

Voice guidance during phone call: See ⇨ *page 138*.

Voice guidance volume: you can adjust the voice guidance volume during active route guidance by turning the control knob.

Entertainment fader: the volume of audio playback can be temporarily lowered when the parking system or voice guidance is active.

Voice recognition system

Short dialog: prompts in a shorter format can be switched on or off.

Speech dialog system volume: you can adjust the volume of the prompts by turning the control knob.

Parking aid*

You can adjust the signal tone volume by turning the control knob.

– **Adjusting** the **Front volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.
– **Adjusting** the **Rear volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

MMI touch volume

You can adjust the volume of the prompts for the MMI touch by turning the control knob.

Audi Heartbeat

You can adjust the volume of Audi Heartbeat by turning the control knob.

Restarting the MMI (reset)

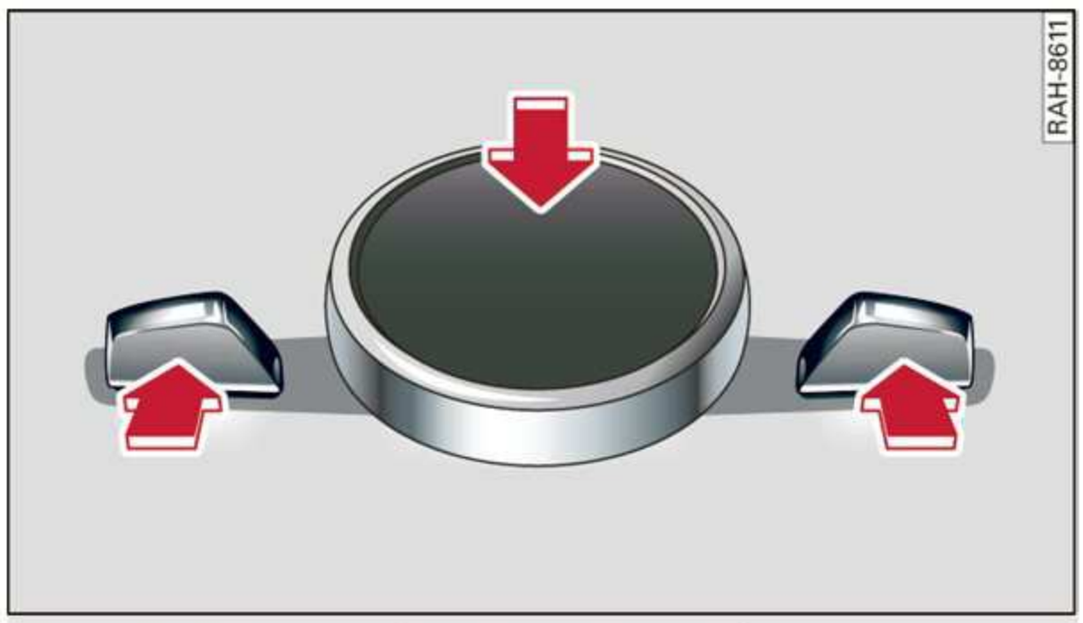


Fig. 142 Button combination to restart the system

▸ Briefly press the control knob and both buttons *at the same time* to immediately open the menu upward ⇨ *fig. 142*.

Software license information

Information on MMI software and licensing agreements

– Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information**.
– online at www.audiusa.com/softwareinfo.

Information on instrument cluster software and licensing agreements

Press the reset button O.O twice within five seconds after switching the ignition on.

Safe driving

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

The individual safety features of your vehicle can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passenger, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 54*, ⇨ *page 54*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust seat and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 211, Child safety*.
- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passenger do the same ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.
- ▸ Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passenger to fasten his safety belt properly ⇨ *page 180*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- ▸ Do not let yourself be distracted by passenger or by using a cellular telephone.
- ▸ NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- ▸ Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ▸ ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.

- ▸ Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- ▸ Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

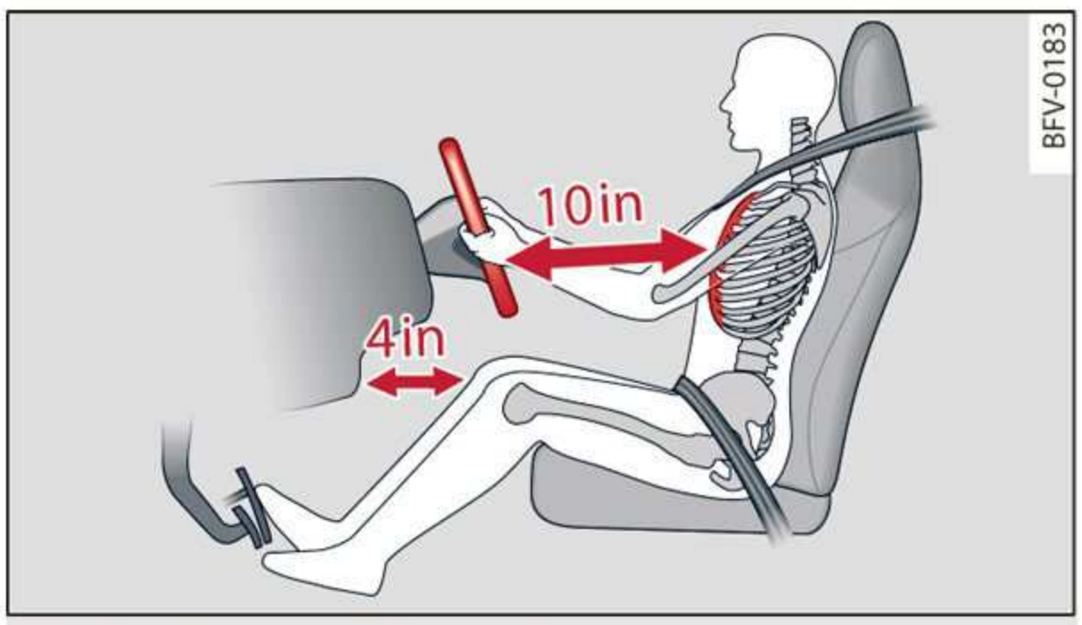


Fig. 143 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- ▸ Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- ▸ Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 143*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- ▸ Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- ▸ Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- ▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 183*.
- ▸ Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- – Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
- – Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 in (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- – Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- – Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates
- – Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
- – Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- – Before driving, always adjust the front seats properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained. ▶

– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 211*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 187*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

- ▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
- ▸ Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
- ▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 183*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 50*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 in (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Always make sure that there are at least 4 in (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 211*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 187*.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore: ▶

▸ Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– never stand up in the vehicle
– never stand on the seats
– never kneel on the seats
– never ride with the seatback reclined
– never lie down on the seats
– never lean up against the instrument panel
– never sit on the edge of the seat
– never sit sideways
– never lean out the window
– never put your feet out the window
– never put your feet on the instrument panel
– never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
– never ride in the footwell
– never ride in the cargo area

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver and passenger side footwell

Important safety instructions

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

– No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
– No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

► Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Active rollover protection system

Function

Applies to: vehicles with active rollover protection system

The active rollover protection system helps protect vehicle occupants in the event of a rollover.

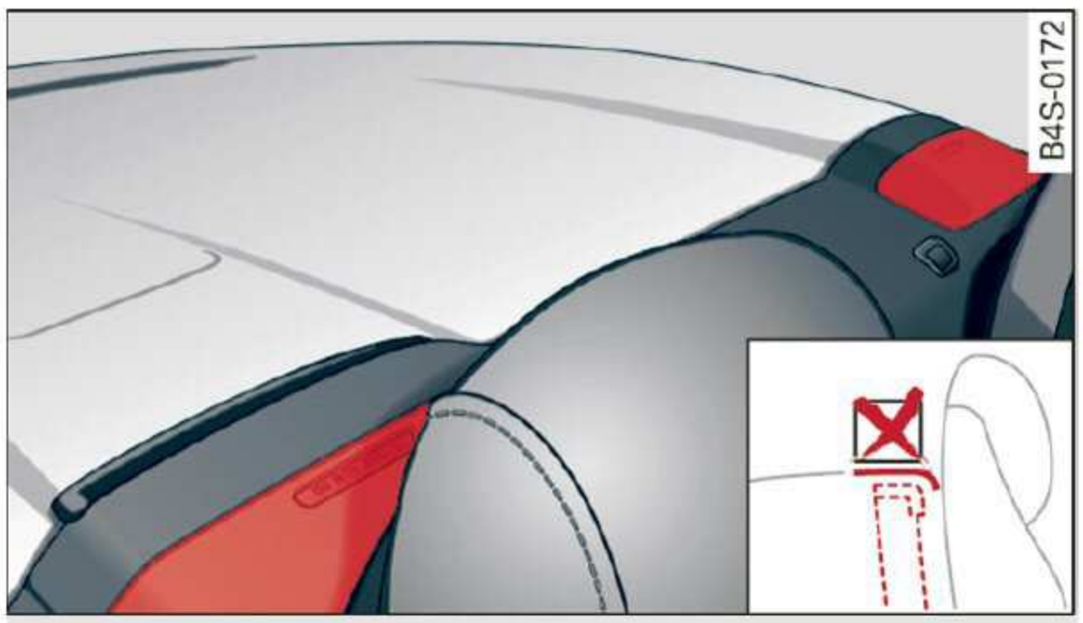


Fig. 144 Rollbar deployment range



Fig. 145 Rollbar deployment range

The active rollover protection system consists of:

– two rollbars
– the safety belts with belt tensioners
– the windshield frame
– the rollover sensors.

The active rollover protection system provides additional safety in the event of a rollover. Within milliseconds, sensors deploy two rollbars located behind the head restraints ⇨ *fig. 145*.

The rollbars, reinforced windshield frame and belt tensioners help protect vehicle occupants in the event of a rollover.

The rollover protection system functions when the power top is both open and closed. ▶

4S1012721BA

WARNING

Do not use the area behind the head restraints ⇨ *fig. 144* as a seat or storage area. This is the area where the rollbars deploy. If the rollover protection system is triggered, objects placed there can be propelled through the vehicle and make it more difficult for the rollbars to deploy. This increases the risk for serious or life-threatening injuries.

When is rollover protection deployed?

Applies to: vehicles with active rollover protection system

Rollover protection deploys in a collision or rollover.

Depending on the collision, sensors throughout the vehicle and the control module trigger the rollover system to deploy.

For safety reasons, rollover protection also deploys during front, side and rear collisions above a certain level of severity.

Retracting rollover protection

Applies to: vehicles with active rollover protection system

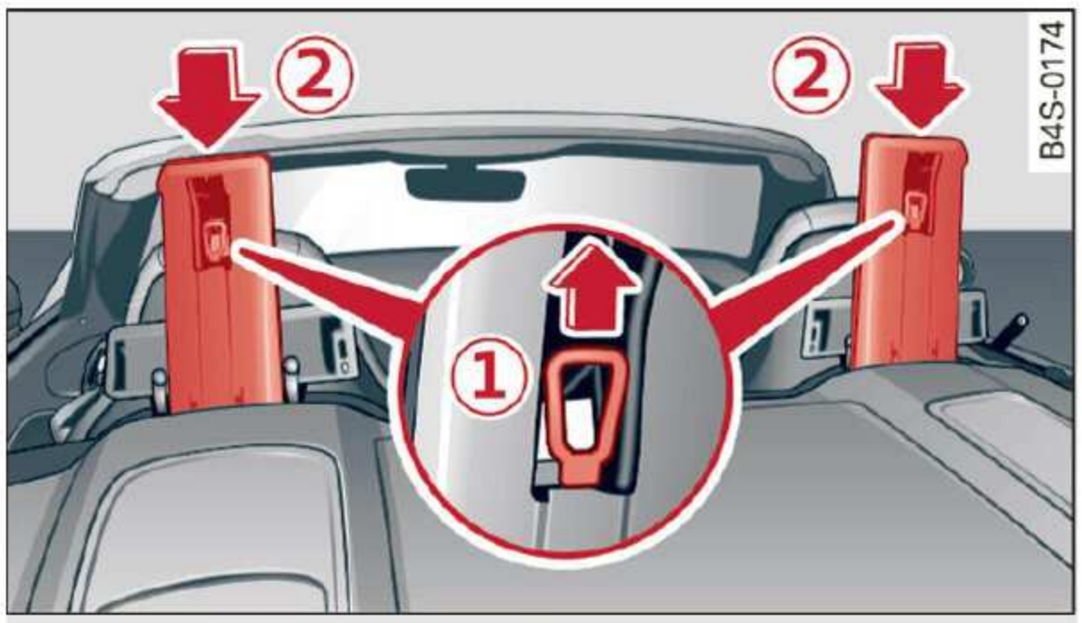


Fig. 146 Deployed rollbar with release loop

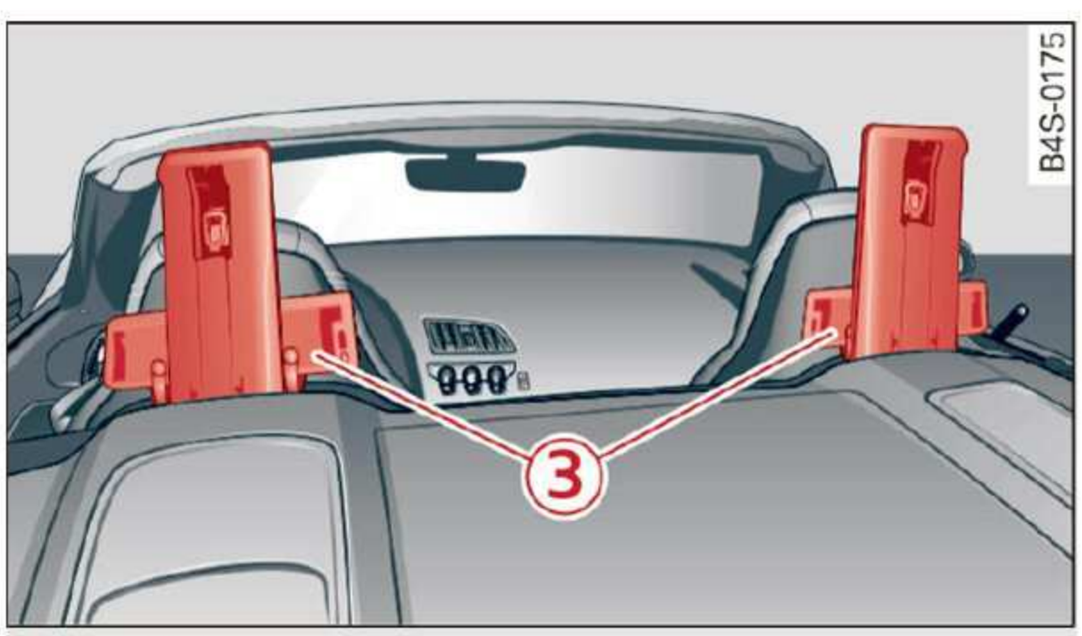


Fig. 147 Deployed rollbar with power top frame facing upward.

If the rollover protection has triggered but the vehicle was not involved in an accident, you can retract the rollover protection yourself in an emergency. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

- ▸ Remove the wind deflector, if necessary ⇨ *page 34*.
- ▸ Retract the rear window, if necessary ⇨ *page 35*.
- ▸ Pull the loop upward in the direction of the arrow and hold it in place ① ⇨ *fig. 146*.
- ▸ Push the rollbar downward ② ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Release the loop just before the rollbar reaches its end position at 1-2 inches (3-5 cm).
- ▸ Press the rollbar down firmly until it stops.
- ▸ Make sure the rollbar is secure before releasing it.
- ▸ Close the cover ③ ⇨ *fig. 147*.
- ▸ Repeat the procedure on the other rollbar.

WARNING

– Make sure your head or other parts of your body are not located in the area above the rollbar when pressing the rollbar down. If the rollbar is not secured correctly, it could deploy again as soon as you release it and cause injuries.
– Have the rollover protection system checked by an authorized Audi dealer if it malfunctions. Otherwise the system may not deploy correctly in a collision.
– Modifying the rollover protection system or individual components is not permitted.
– Work on the rollover protection system should only be performed by an authorized Audi dealer. Otherwise the system may not function correctly in a collision or it could deploy unexpectedly.
– Have the system inspected at service intervals. This ensures the system will always be ready for use. Have an authorized Audi dealer check the rollover protection system every two years at the latest.

Note

If the rollbars deploy when the power top is closed, do not open the top. Doing so could result in damage to the vehicle. Please see an authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

Safety belts

General notes

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

► Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.

Number of seats

Your vehicle has two seating positions. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 148 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

► Fasten your safety belt and make sure you wear it properly.
► Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
► Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

Why safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

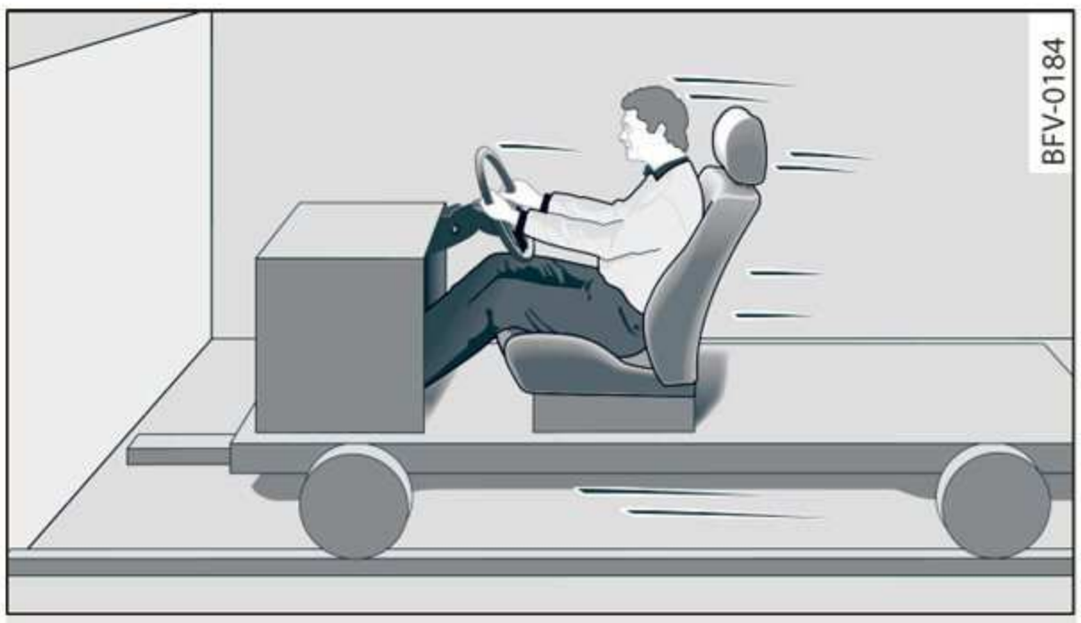


Fig. 149 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall

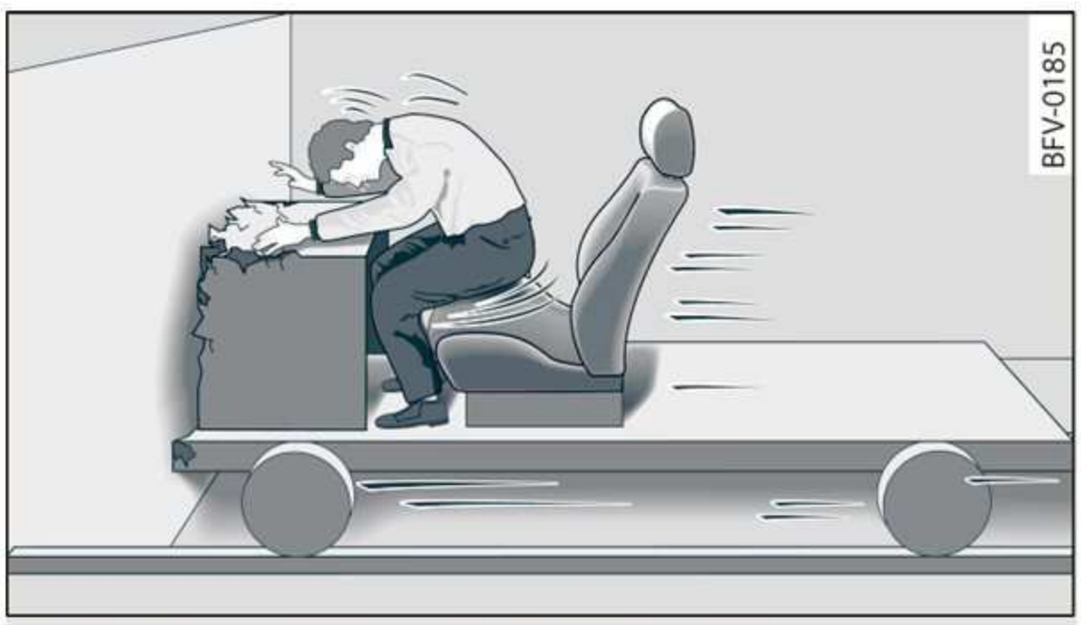


Fig. 150 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 149*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 150*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At higher speeds, these forces are even greater.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 151 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 151*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to ▶

offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 152 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver.

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in rollovers or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- ▸ Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- ▸ Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- – Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- – For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- – Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- – Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- – Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- – Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.

▶

- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table Interior cleaning on page 267*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everybody buckle up!

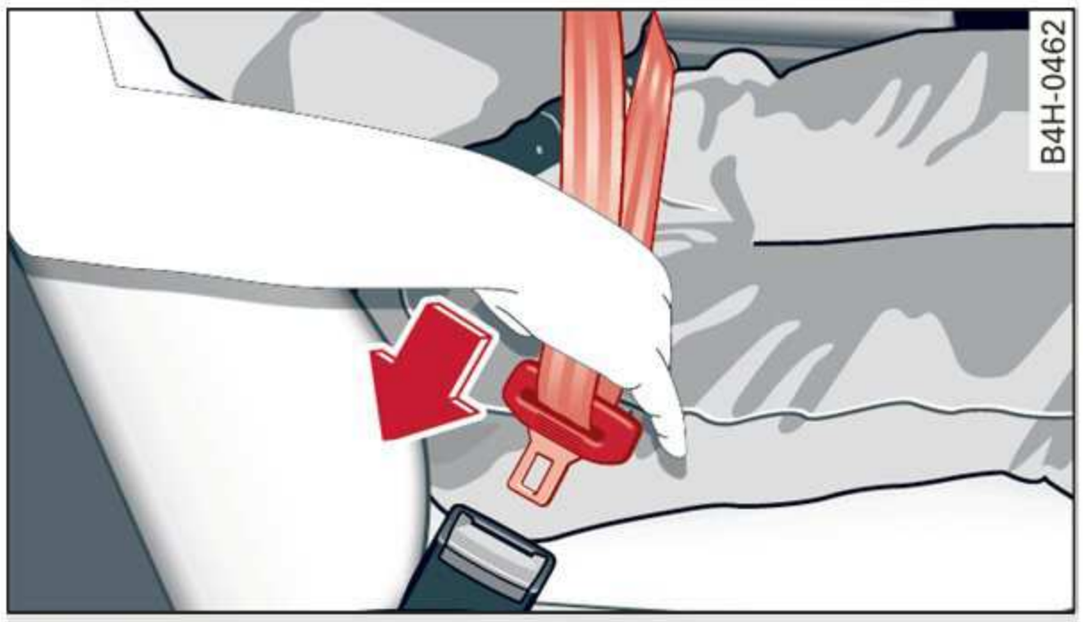


Fig. 153 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat properly ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 153*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

Safety belts with pretensioners help to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioners are activated ⇨ *page 185*. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 17*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is ▶

used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 220*.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 184, Safety belt position*.

– Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
– Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
– A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
– Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 221*.

Tips

For information on safety belt pretensioners, refer to ⇨ *page 185*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

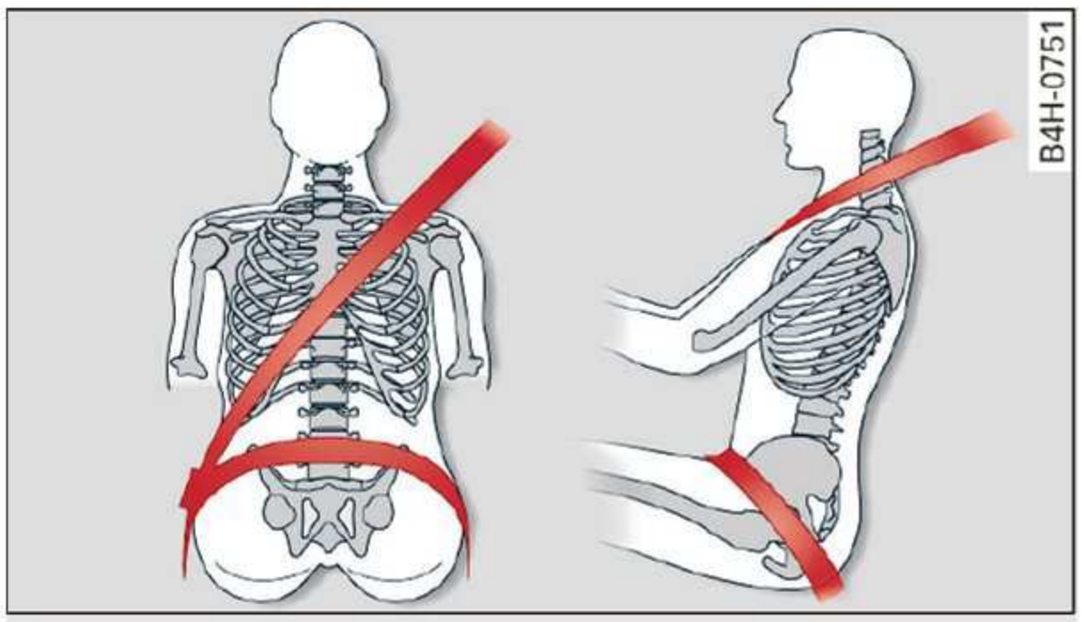


Fig. 154 Safety belt position

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 154*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 182*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 155 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 184*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat properly ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen ⇨ *fig. 155*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *page 183, fig. 153*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle. ▶

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 184*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

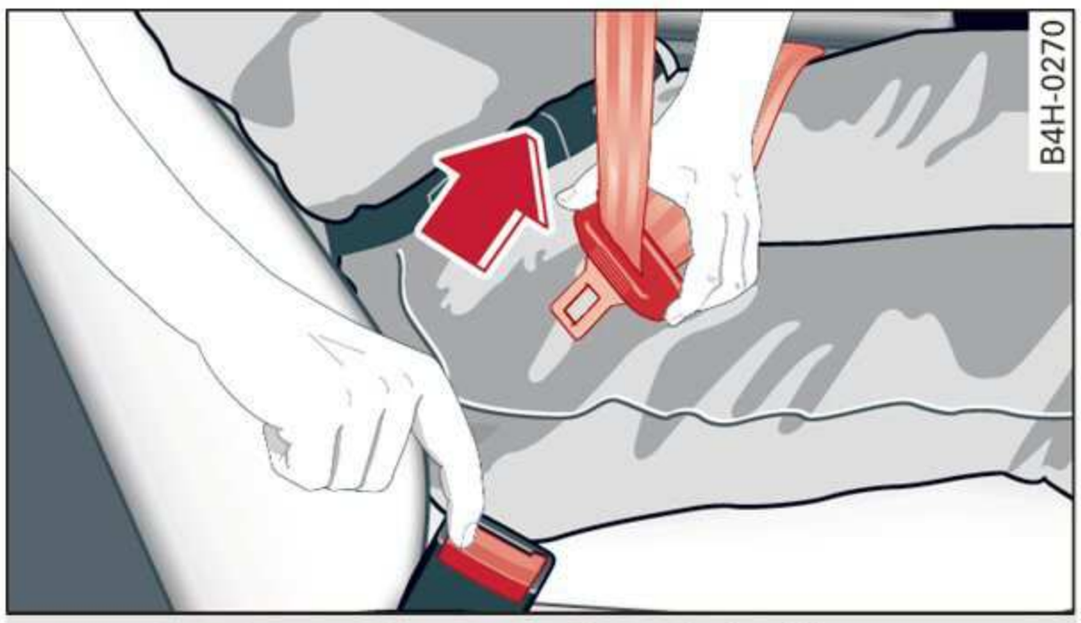


Fig. 156 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ► Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 156*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ► Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ► Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 182*.

Safety belt tensioner

How safety belt pretensioners work

Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

Seat belts with pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners are tensioned automatically in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

– It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
– Any work on the tensioner system or removal and installation of system components for other repairs must be performed by a qualified workshop.
– The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced. ►

Tips

– A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 174*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 175*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 182*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 211*.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 174, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 50*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 211*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passenger can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

4S1012721BA

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 180*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 in (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 in (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to held you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 183, Safety belts*.
- If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 174*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▶ Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 211*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for “suppression” for infants of about ▶

12 month old and younger and for “low risk deployment” for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the headliner tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will come on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will come on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 213*.
– **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will come on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system ⇨ *page 198, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 213*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the headliner and stays on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 199, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON light*.

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof. ▶

– Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 198, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 157 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 158 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 157* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 158*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Always make sure nothing is in the front airbag deployment zone that could be struck by the airbag when it inflates.
- Objects in the zone of a deploying airbag can become projectiles when the airbag deploys and cause serious personal injury.
- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors; never attach them to the doors or the windshield; never place them over or near or attach them to the area marked „AIRBAG“ on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the seat backrests; never place them between ▶

these areas and you or any other person in the vehicle.
– Never attach objects to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as accessory GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during breaking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the “low risk” option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
– For its own safety, a child should always ride properly restrained for its age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 213, Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 213*,
– a person is detected on the front passenger seat that has an electrical capacitance that is ▶

more than the total electrical capacitance of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total electrical capacitance on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 213*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the headliner will come on and stay on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 198*.

Always remember: Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 187*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.

– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇨ *page 199*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit “decides” whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also “decides” whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the headliner ⇨ *page 199, fig. 160* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the ▶

Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
- Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
- Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
- Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
- Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
- Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. The capacitive passenger detection mat in the front passenger seat will not function properly if it is punctured.
- Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
- Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
- Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
- Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.
- If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger frontal airbag. If this happens, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster.
- If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the passenger frontal airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will turn off.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger frontal airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front passenger frontal airbag will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 199*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 187*.

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 159 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags. ▶

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side frontal airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light ⇨ *page 199* and how they work comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 188*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Never install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat unless the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, the inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, door or roof. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
– Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Objects on the front passenger seat could cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier ▶

than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.
– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the  *light and the* **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** **ON** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light  will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light  **:**

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**  light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON light



Fig. 160 Section from the headliner: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light is located in the headliner ⇨ *fig. 160*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light burns out, the airbag indicator light will come on to signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front passenger's frontal airbag works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

– the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

As soon as the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the light is proper for the age, size and electrical capacitance of the person occupying the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF / PASSENGER AIR BAG ON light will show the status of the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

– will come on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
– will come on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified; For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 213*.
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...
– a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
– and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 188, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 211, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is ▶

met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight.
– make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket;
– make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
– make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
– make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light should NOT come on ...

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

– If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF ON** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your ▶

authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

- If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the frontal airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that ▶

4S1012721BA

have not been specifically approved by Audi.
- Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
- Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.

– The airbag system can deploy only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.
– For safety reasons in severe accidents, the alternator and starter are separated from the vehicle battery with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  - Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified technicians who have the experience, information and special tools necessary to perform the work safely.
  - If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.
- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

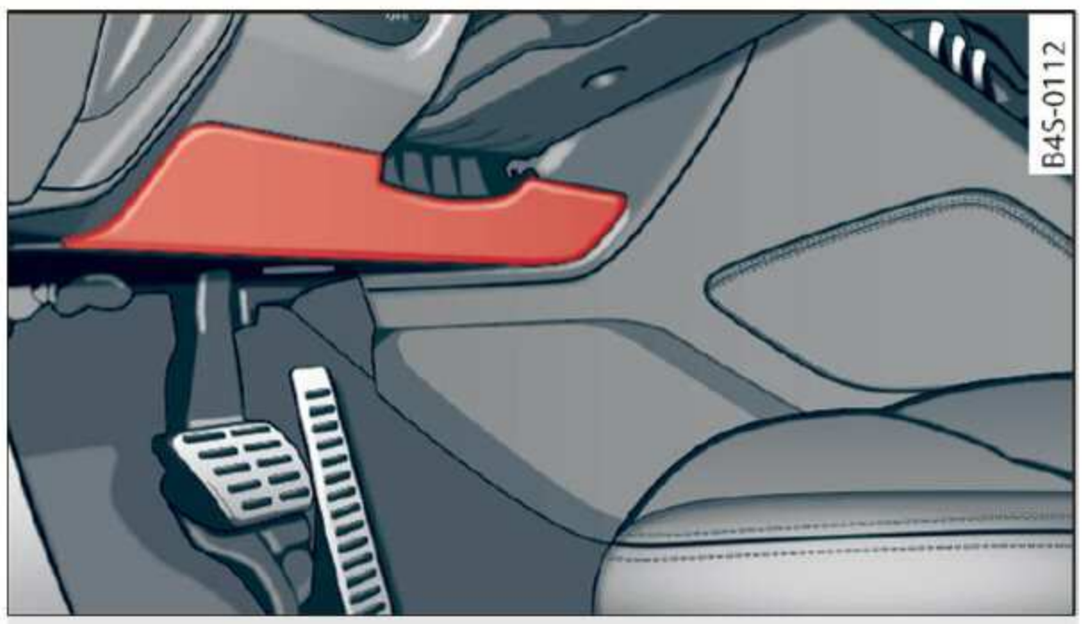


Fig. 161 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 161*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment ▶

threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 196, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 180, General notes*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module
– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag warning light in the instrument cluster

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 17*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 196*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.

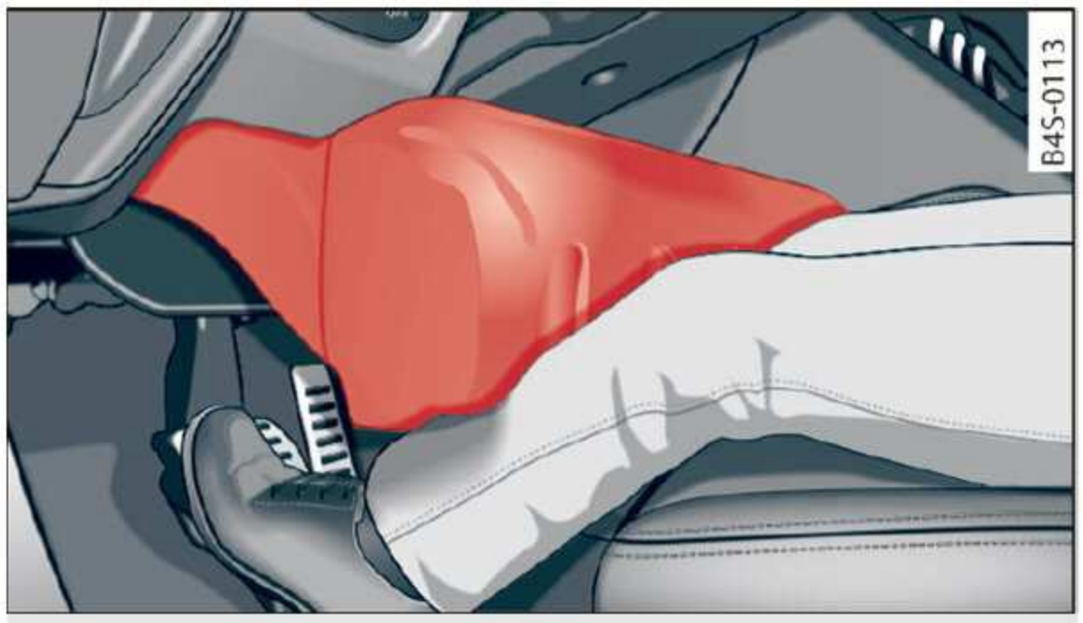


Fig. 162 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 196, fig. 159*. ▶

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passenger must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 in (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 in (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  - Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  - Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passenger.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 211, Child safety*.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

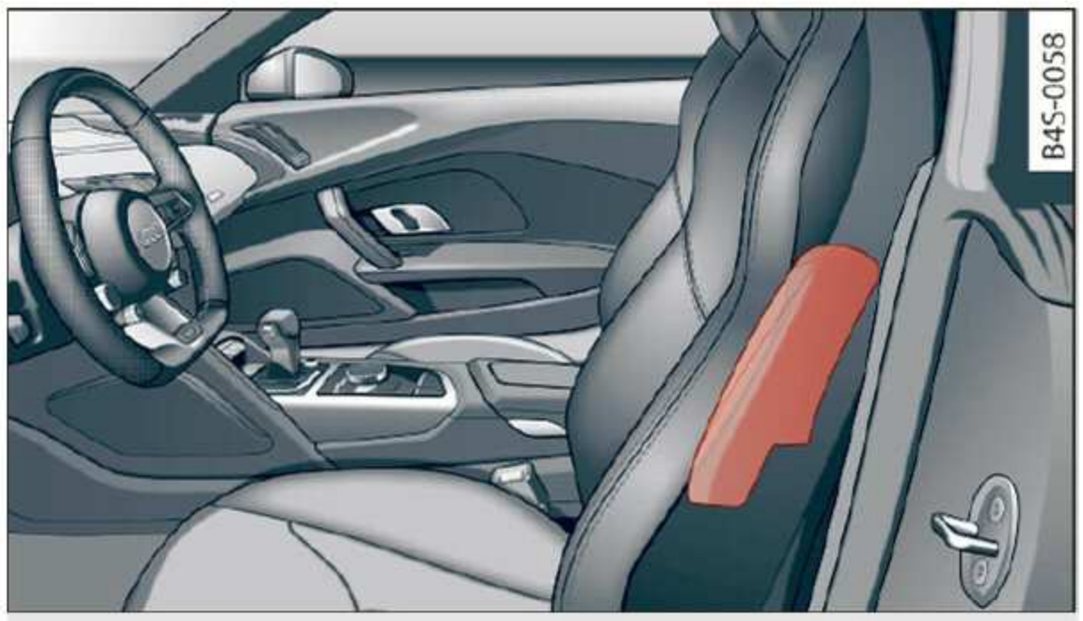


Fig. 163 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 163* facing the doors. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG". ▶

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly. The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Please be sure to read the important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Safety belts ⇨ *page 180*, Airbag system ⇨ *page 187*, Child safety ⇨ *page 211*.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 206, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 180, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags* and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

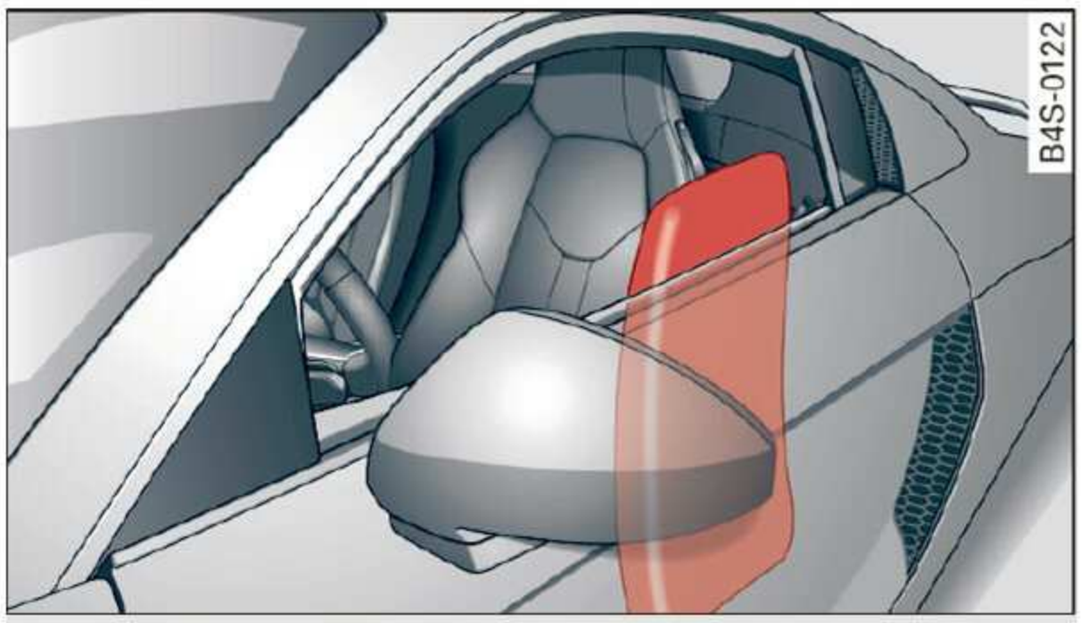
– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 206*.

4S1012721BA

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Applies to: vehicles without Power top

Fig. 164 Inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle



Applies to: vehicles with Power top

Fig. 165 Inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked “AIRBAG”. It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 211, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 164*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  – Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  – Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  – Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  – Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
– Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  – Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that ▶

have not been specifically approved by Audi.
- Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.
- Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.

– Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
- Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the seat backrests.
- Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
- Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
- Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 211, Child safety*.

– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
- Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
- Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
- Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
- Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
- Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 166 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 166*. They are identified by the word ▶

"AIRBAG" on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 209, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 180, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is switched off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How side curtain airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

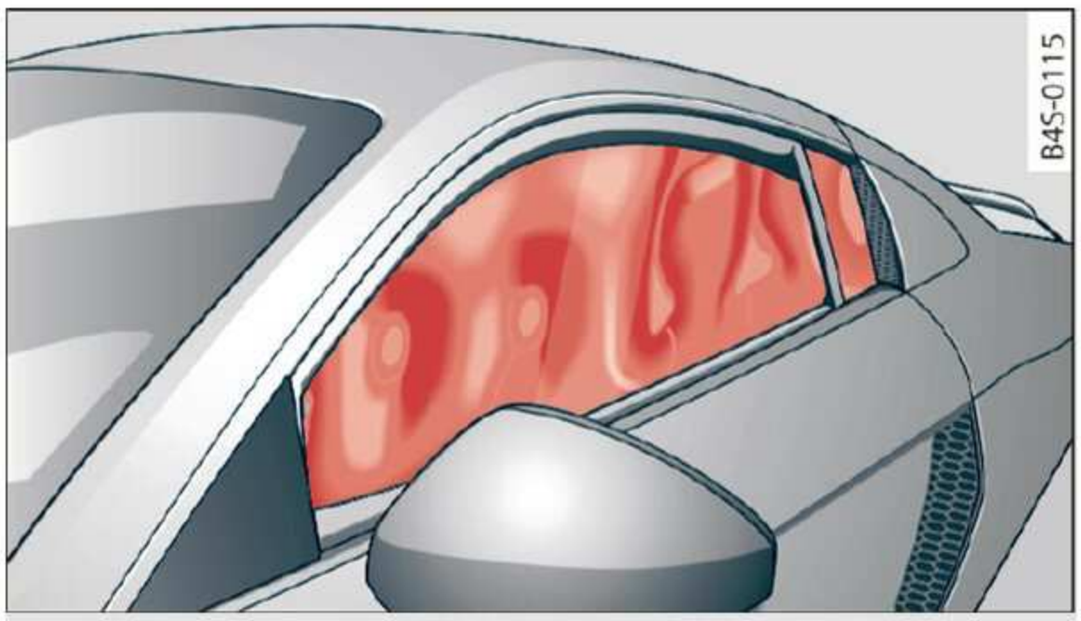


Fig. 167 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 167*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 211*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passenger must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbag inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Audi sun shades.
- A deploying airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and with great force.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a side curtain airbag.
- The airbag deployment zones must be kept clear at all times. Make sure there are no objects, pets, or other persons in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.

WARNING

- The airbag system can deploy only once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

– Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 181, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13 lbs (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 lbs (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings ⇨ *page 188*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information please see information provided by the:

– National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at : http://www.safercar.gov (for the USA)
– Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: http://www.tc.gc.ca (for Canada)

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 214, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.

– Never install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not turn on and stay on. Have the system inspected immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

– Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
– If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  – Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  – Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  – Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  – Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  – Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  – Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  – Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  – Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  – If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  – Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  – Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
  – Never install a forward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not turn on and stay on. Have the system inspected immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
  – Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
  – Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 187, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 211, Important information*.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, a child should always ride in the seat properly restrained for its age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system registers the changes that result in an electrical field when a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket are on the front passenger seat. The change in the measured capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The measured capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1-year old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child and child restraint are correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle. ▶

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Never install a reward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not turn on and stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 216*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 220*.

► Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, a child should always ride in the seat properly restrained for its age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
– Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
– When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
– Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
– Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
– Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
– Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
– Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
– The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.
– The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  – Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  – Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  – Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
  – Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  – Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  – Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. ▶

– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 187, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 211, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.
– Never install a reward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not turn on and stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Child safety seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.



Fig. 168 Rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the passenger seat

▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 220*.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 168*.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.
– Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing. ▶

– Never install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat unless the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on the inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 187, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 211, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

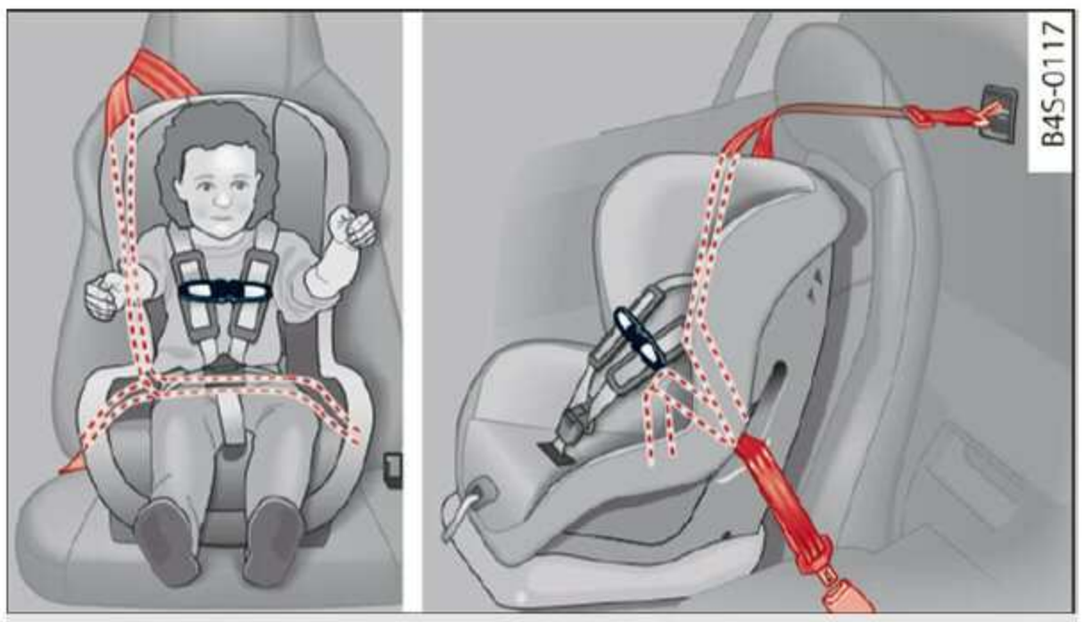


Fig. 169 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 220*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 220*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight and ⇨ *fig. 169*.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

– Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be ▶

seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
– Never install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat unless the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.
– The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 187, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 211, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs and 80 lbs (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft 9 in (57 in/1.45 m) tall.



Fig. 170 Passenger seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft 9 in (57 in/ 1.45 m) tall and weigh about 80 lbs (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used.

Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 180*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.

▶

– Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
– Never let a child stand or kneel on the seat.
– Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
– Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
– If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 198, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on the inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 180, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 187, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 211, Important information*.

Securing child safety seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belt emergency locking retractor for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, a child should always ride in the seat properly restrained for its age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.
– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 211*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 188, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

– Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 198, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on the inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light signals the correct front passenger frontal airbag status.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:

– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

▸ Place the child restraint on a seat.
▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**. ▶

- ► Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
- ► Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- ► Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- ► Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- ► You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- ► Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- ► Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward and sideways more than 1 in (2.5 cm).

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.
– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 211*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 188, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- ► Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
- ► Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 211*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 188, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Tether anchors and tether straps

Applies to: vehicles with Tether anchors and tether straps

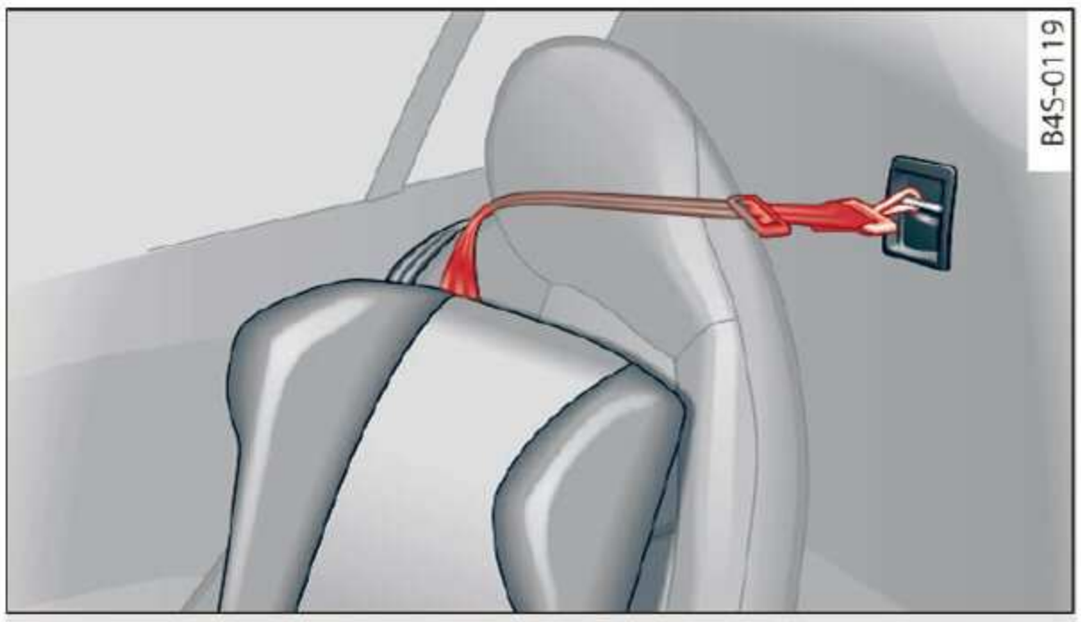


Fig. 171 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting (Version A)

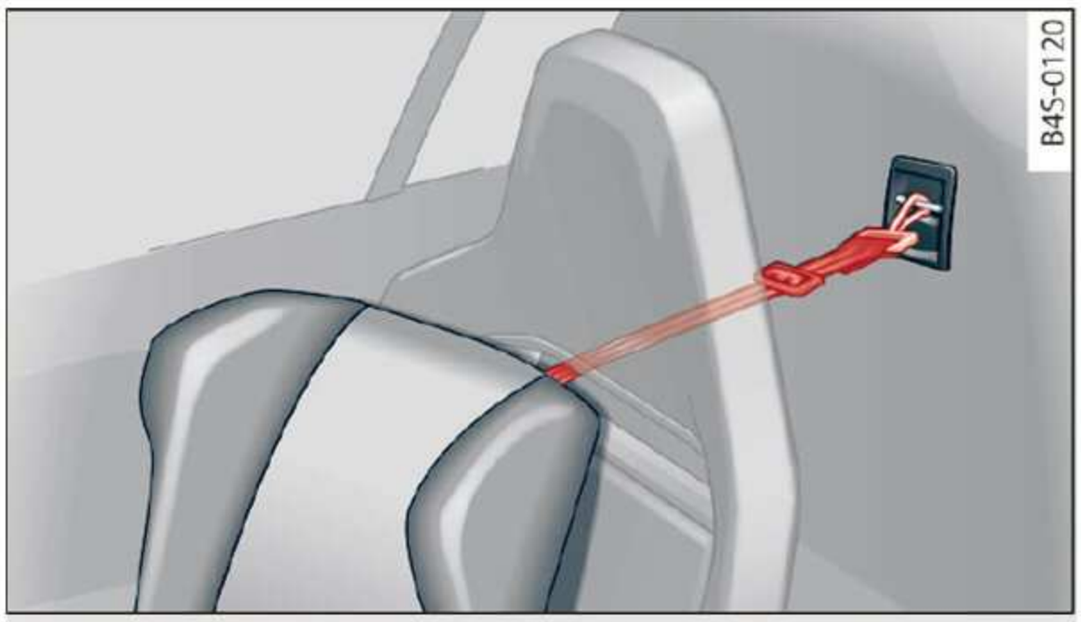


Fig. 172 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting (Version B)

The tether strap anchor bracket is located behind the front passenger's seat at the rear panel to the engine compartment.

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the tether anchors.
- If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.
- The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Never install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat unless the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on the inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, door or roof. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.

Installing the tether strap on the anchorage

Applies to: vehicles with Tether anchors and tether straps

Installing the tether strap

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **sideways (Version A)** ⇨ *page 223, fig. 171* or **under (Version B)** ⇨ *page 223, fig. 172* the head restraint.
- ▸ Remove the cover to expose the anchor bracket.
- ▸ Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook is engaged.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Applies to: vehicles with Tether anchors and tether straps

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- – The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest or door.
- – Never install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat unless the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on the inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, door or roof. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
www.nhtsa.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A.
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Experience Center
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

4S1012721BA

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Types of gasoline

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R +M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The headings below match the sticker in the fuel filler door.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ (!).

Audi recommends using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON to achieve the rated horsepower and torque.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R +M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

Note

– Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
– When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

Tips

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Gasoline mixture

Gasoline with alcohol or MTBE (Methyl-Tert-Butyl-Ether)

You can use unleaded gasoline mixed with alcohol or MTBE (generally labeled as oxygenated compounds) as long as the fuel meets the following conditions:

Gasoline with methanol content (methyl alcohol or methanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 3% methanol
– More than 2% solvent

Gasoline with ethanol content (ethyl alcohol or ethanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% ethanol

Gasoline with MTBE content

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% MTBE

Gasoline adapted to the season

Many gasoline fuels are adapted to the seasons. When the season changes, we recommend refueling at high-traffic gas stations. It is more likely that the gasoline will be suitable for the season there.

Note

– Gasoline with methanol content that does not meet the specified conditions may cause corrosion damage and damage to plastic or rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use gasoline that does not meet the specifications.
– If you are unable to find out if a specific gasoline mixture meets the specifications, ask the gas station operator or their fuel supplier.

– Do not use any gasoline mixture whose composition cannot be identified.
– Audi does not assume any responsibility for damage to the fuel system or for performance problems caused by using gasoline mixtures different from those specified. This type of damage also does not fall under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty or under the emissions control system warranty.
– If you notice a higher fuel consumption or poor handling or performance problems due to such gasoline mixtures, we recommend fueling with unblended gasoline.

Gasoline additives

An important issue for many automobile manufacturers is combustion residue in the engine that results from the use of certain fuels.

Although types of gasoline differ depending on the manufacturer, there are similarities. Certain substances in the gasoline may cause deposits in the engine. Additives in the gasoline that should keep the engine and fuel system clean do not all function equally.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

If you use incorrect fuels over a long period of time, the maximum engine performance may be impaired by combustion residue.

Note

– Damage or malfunctions caused by the use of incorrect types of gasoline are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
– Only gasoline additives that have been approved by Audi may be used.

Refueling

Fueling procedure

Your vehicle is equipped with a capless fuel filler system.

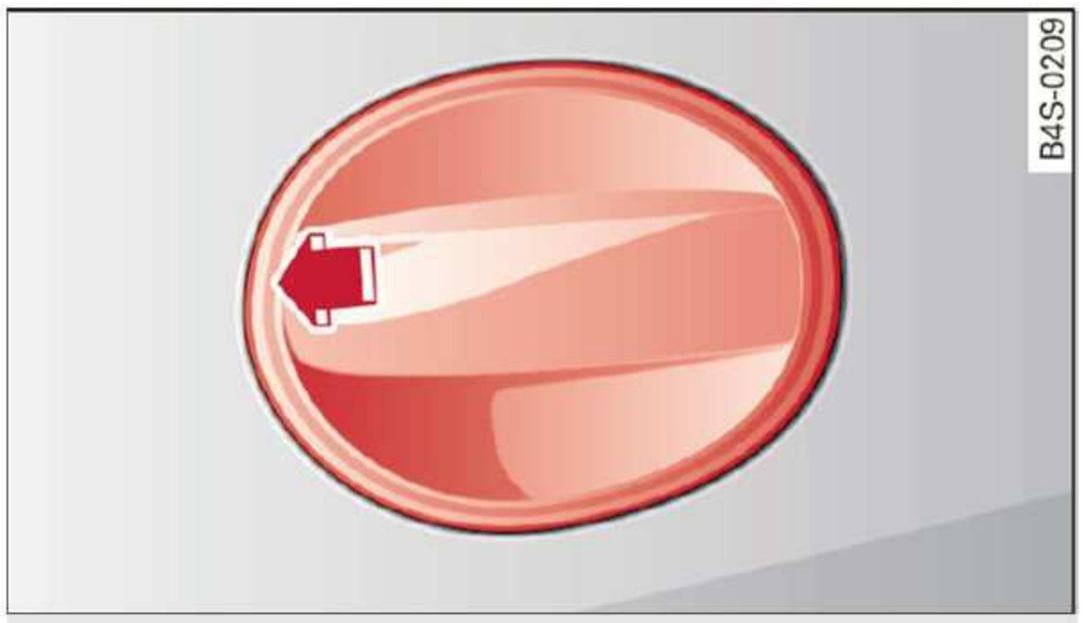


Fig. 173 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

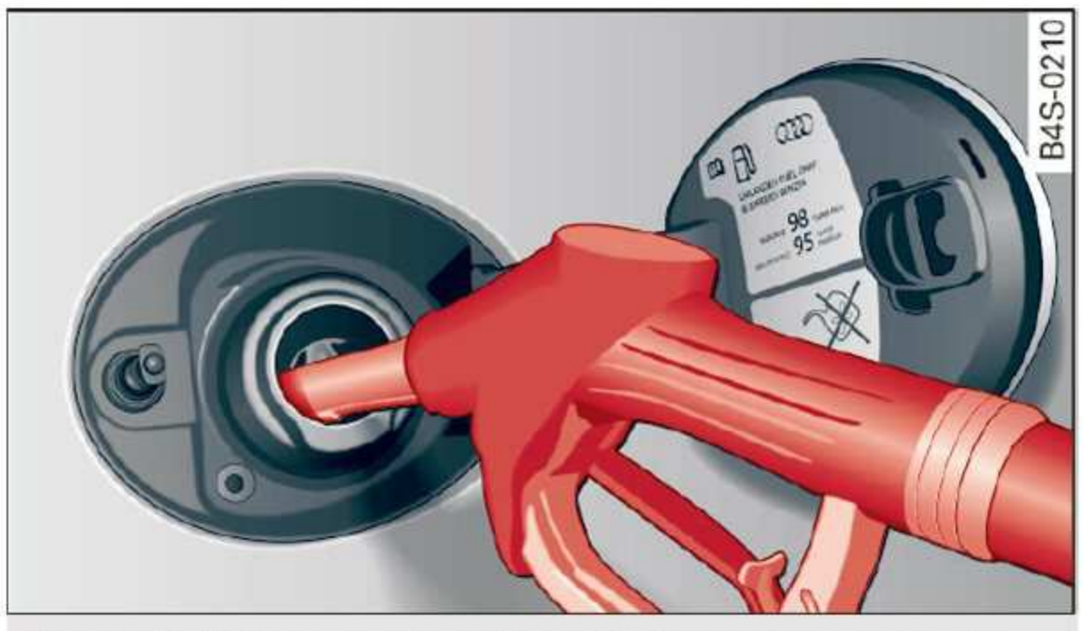


Fig. 174 Right rear side of the vehicle: fuel pump nozzle inserted

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *fig. 173*.
▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel tank filler neck ⇨ *fig. 174*. Make sure it is seated correctly.
▸ Begin fueling. Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel.
▸ After the fuel pump has switched off, wait five seconds before removing the nozzle to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank.
▸ Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches. ▶

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 226*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 290*.

WARNING

Improper fueling procedures and improper handling of fuel can lead to explosions, fires, severe burns, and other injuries.

– Do not smoke. Keep away from open flames.
– The ignition must be switched off when refueling.
– Mobile devices, radio devices, and other radio equipment should always be switched off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
– If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
– Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where you must enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.

WARNING

The vehicle must not be refueled with a reserve canister due to the risk of fire.

Note

– Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
– Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel may enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.
– Never insert any portable nozzles, funnels or after-market containers into the fuel filler neck.
– Do not pry open the fuel filler neck forcefully or press against it with foreign objects to open the tank system.

For the sake of the environment

– Do not overfill the fuel tank, or fuel could leak out when the vehicle is warming up.
– Fuel should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.

Tips

– If adverse weather conditions cause the fuel filler door to freeze shut, press on the center of the filler door with the heel of your hand and then try opening it again.
– The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking switch.

Tips

– Your vehicle is equipped with a misfueling guard. It allows the vehicle to be fueled only with the correct fuel pump nozzle.
– A worn or damaged nozzle or a nozzle that is too small may not be able to open the diesel misfueling guard. If this is the case, try turning the nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different fuel pump, or see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Emissions control system

General information

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

– Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
– Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because ▶

the high temperature of the emissions system could start a fire.
– Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.

Catalytic converter

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 228, General information*.

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, or the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel could enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

The On Board Diagnostic System monitors the engine and transmission components that influence emissions.



Fig. 175 Footwell on left side of the vehicle: connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

On Board Diagnostic System

Engine data can be read out at the On Board Diagnostic System connection port using a special testing device ⇨ *fig. 175*.

Indicator light

If the indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction that is causing poor emissions quality and that could damage the catalytic converter. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.
– Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the engine data.

Engine compartment

General information

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Turn the engine off.
– Switch the ignition off.
– Set the parking brake.
– Select the “P” (Park) selector lever position.
– Allow the engine to cool.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
– Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
– Never reach into the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly, even when the ignition is switched off.
– Never open the engine compartment lid when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping. ▶

- Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a thick cloth when opening.
- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- Due to the risk of electric shock, never touch the ignition cable or other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system when the engine is running or is starting.
- If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
- If inspections or repairs must be performed while the engine is running, moving components (such as the ribbed belt, generator, and radiator fan) pose an additional risk.
  - Set the parking brake first and select the "P" (Park) selector lever position.
  - Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewelry, ties, loose clothing, and long hair can be caught in moving engine components. Before any work, always remove any jewelry and/or ties, tie back long hair, and make sure all clothing fits close to the body to reduce the risk of anything becoming caught in engine components.
- Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near open flames.
  - Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to add any fluids to the wrong reservoirs. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening and closing the engine compartment lid

The engine compartment lid is released from inside the vehicle.

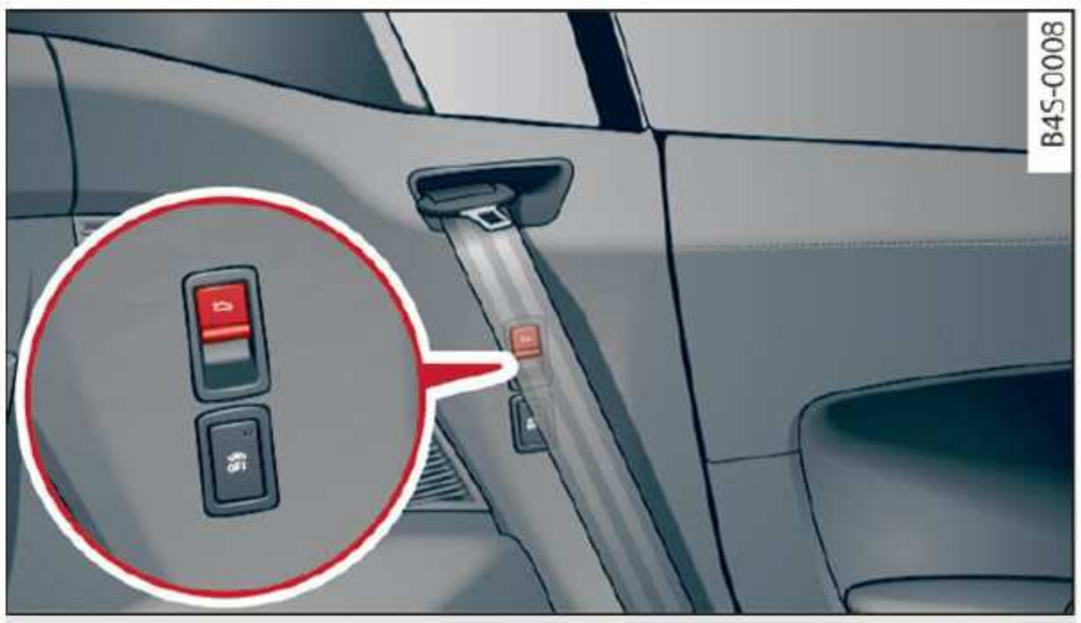


Fig. 176 Driver's side: unlocking the engine compartment lid

Opening the engine compartment lid

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Pull the switch. The engine compartment lid opens ⇨ ⚠.

Closing the engine compartment lid

- ▸ Push the engine compartment lid down until it locks into place ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– Never open the engine compartment lid when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.

– For safety reasons, the engine compartment lid must always be latched securely while driving. Because of this, always check the engine compartment lid after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. When latched correctly, the engine compartment lid will be flush with the other body panels.

Tips

An emergency release can be used if the engine compartment lid cannot be released with the switch ⇨ *page 231*.

Engine compartment lid emergency release

The emergency release loop is located under the trim panel behind the front passenger's seat.

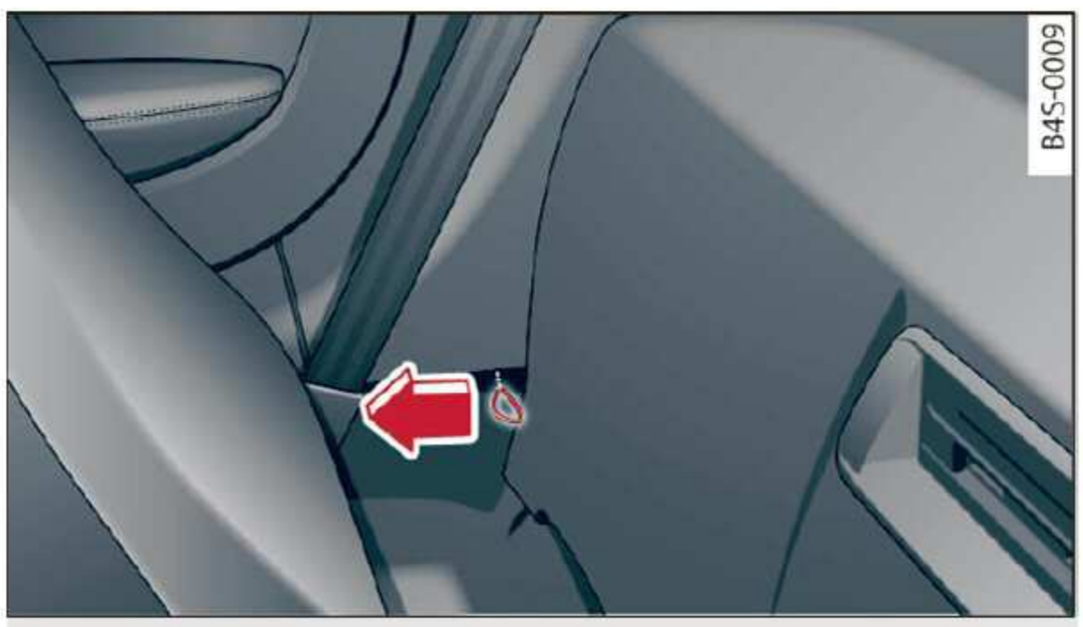
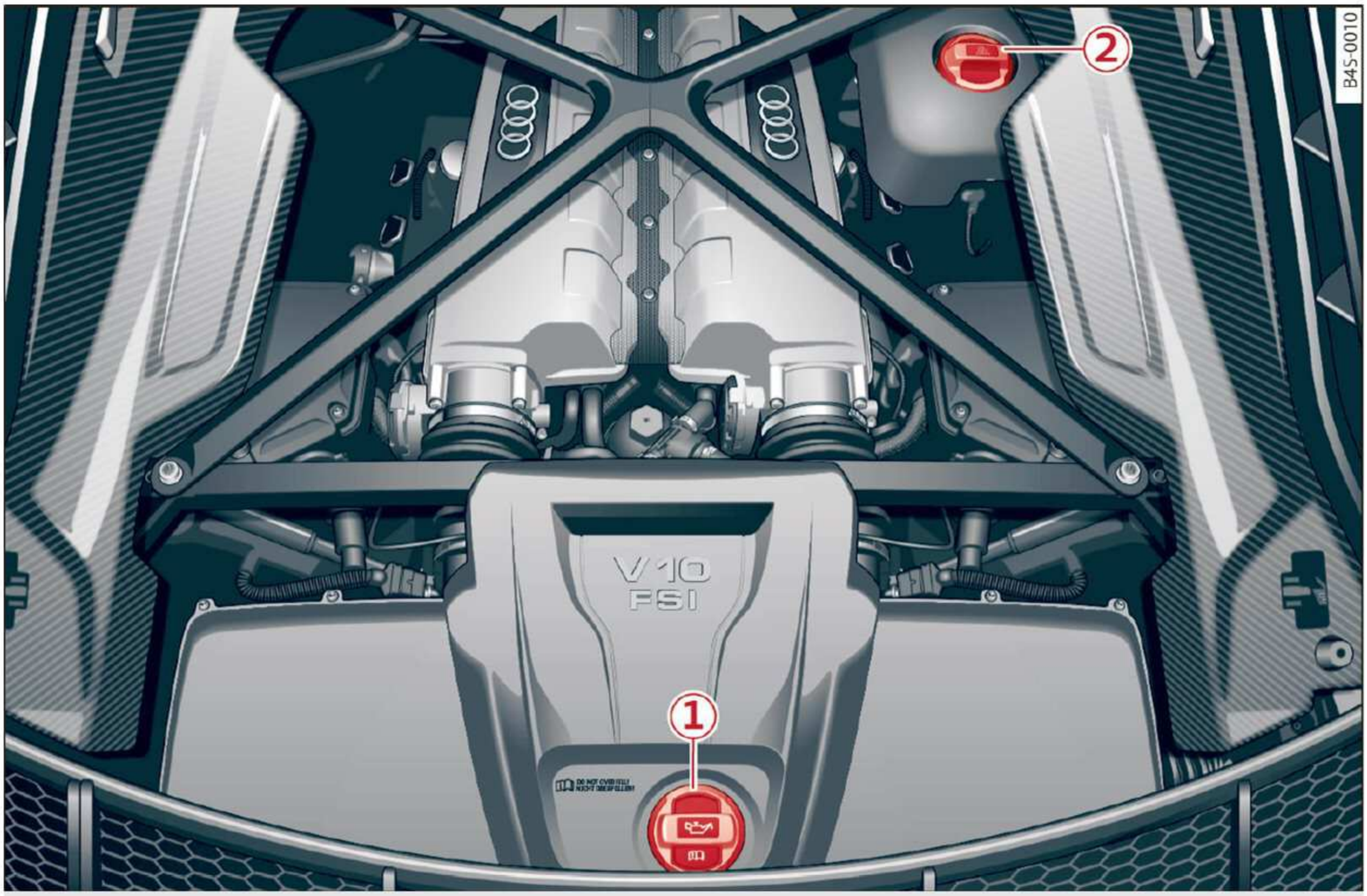


Fig. 177 Front passenger's seat: emergency release loop

- ▸ Pull the loop forward to release the engine compartment lid. The engine compartment lid opens ⇨ ⚠ *in Opening and closing the engine compartment lid on page 231*.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.



Applies to: vehicles without power top

Fig. 178 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filling opening



Applies to: vehicles with power top

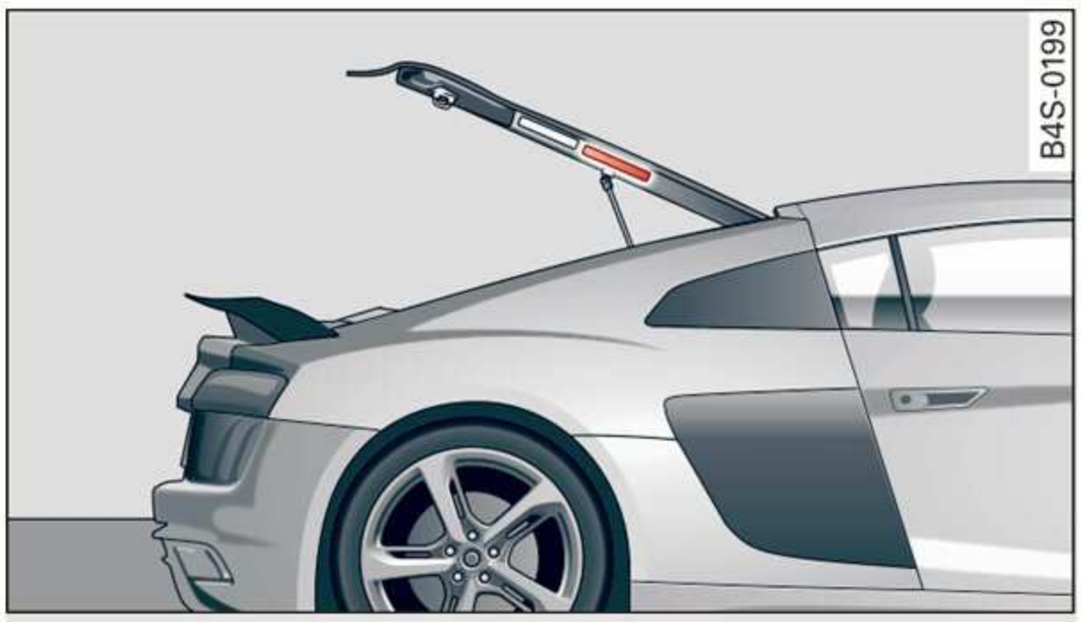
Fig. 179 Typical location of the engine oil filling opening

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 229*.

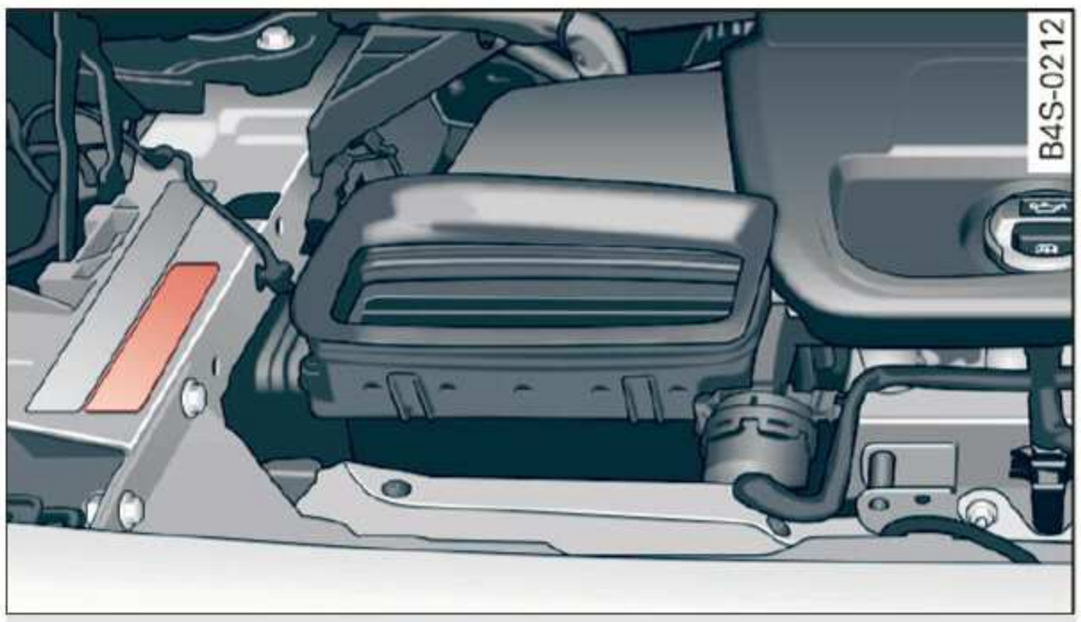
① Engine oil filler opening 234
② Coolant expansion tank (🌡) 237

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low



Applies to: vehicles without a power top
Fig. 180 engine compartment: engine oil sticker



Applies to: vehicles with a power top
Fig. 181 engine compartment: engine oil sticker

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that is listed on the sticker. The sticker is located on the side of the engine compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 180* or in the engine compartment ⇨ *fig. 181*.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 1 quart (1 liter) of ACEA C3 or API SN engine oil **one time** until the next oil change.

For more information on the correct engine oil for your vehicle, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility.

Audi recommends
Castrol EDGE Professional
Audi recommends using the LongLife high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Messages

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine! Oil pressure too low

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 234*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 235*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Engine oil level

Applies to: vehicles with oil level warning

Please add oil immediately.

Stop the engine and do not continue driving. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 234* and add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 235*.

Please check oil level

– You may continue driving for the time being. Check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 234, Checking the engine oil level*.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, drive at low engine speed to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Reducing the oil level

Please reduce oil level.

There is too much oil in the engine and there is a risk of damaging the catalytic converter or engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor: oil change necessary. Please contact Service

Fuel has entered the engine oil. This will cause the engine oil level to rise slowly and the engine ▶

oil quality to decrease. Do not extract engine oil to reduce the level, because this will increase the risk of engine damage. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted.

Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil level has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Oil pressure sensor: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil pressure has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Engine warm-up request*

Please drive to warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either due to low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating, and heavy engine loads when doing this.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil level can be checked in the Infotainment system

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 229*.

- Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- Let the engine run at idle.
- Wait approximately two minutes.
- Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Oil level**
- Read the oil level in the display. Add engine oil if the bar in the oil level indicator is just below "min" ⇨ *page 235*.

Note

If the engine oil level is too low or too high, there is a risk of engine damage.

Tips

The oil level indicator in the display is only an informational display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil and close the engine compartment lid. The current oil level is displayed in the Infotainment system the next time the ignition is switched on.

Tips

– The engine oil consumption may be up to 1 quart per 600 miles (0.8 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). The engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.
– Because of the lubrication and cooling of the engine, combustion engines consume oil. The oil consumption varies depending on the engine and may change during the service life of the engine. Engines generally consume more oil at the beginning during the break-in period. Then oil consumption stabilizes after the break-in period.
– Under normal conditions, oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the engine RPM, the climate conditions, and the road conditions. The dilution of oil from condensation or fuel residue as well as the age of the oil also play a role. Because engine wear increases with mileage, oil consumption will increase again over time until it may be necessary to replace worn components.
– Because all these variables play a role, it is not possible to define an oil consumption standard. Therefore, the oil level must be checked regularly. ▶

– If you believe that your engine has increased its oil consumption, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to determine the cause. Please note that an exact oil consumption measurement must be done with the necessary care and accuracy and may take time. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is trained in accurately measuring the oil consumption.
– You can find information on engine oil and engine oil capacities for the USA at www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance, or for Canada at www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/customer-area/care-and-maintenance/audi-service-schedules.html, or call 800-822-2834.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 182 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 229*.

- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Open the engine compartment lid ⇨ *page 231*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 182*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 233*.
- ▸ Close the engine oil filler opening cap.
- ▸ Close the engine compartment lid.
- ▸ Check the oil level again ⇨ *page 234, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Add more oil if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

– When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
– You must close the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
– Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
– Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
– Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

Note

– The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions if the recommended intended use of the vehicle and maintenance measures listed in the Audi Owner's Manual and the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet were not followed.
– Only use high-grade engine oil that explicitly meets the Audi oil quality standard for your vehicle. Using another oil may cause severe vehicle damage.
– Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
– Follow the legal regulations in the country where you are located when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing engine oil

We recommend having the oil changed at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 229, General information*. ▶

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet. This is very important because the lubrication function of the oil gradually declines during regular vehicle operation.

The engine oil should be changed more frequently under certain circumstances. Have the oil changed more frequently if you often drive short distances, your vehicle is predominantly in stop-and-go traffic situations, is in very dusty environments, or is operated for long periods of time in temperatures below zero.

Cleansing additives in the oil make fresh oil appear darker after the engine has run briefly. This is normal and no reason to change the engine oil more frequently than recommended.

Because correctly disposing of engine oil is difficult and special tools and technical knowledge are needed for an oil change, having your engine oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is recommended.

If you change the engine oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

If you change the engine oil on the vehicle yourself, the following precautions must be followed:

- Wear protective eyewear.
- Due to the risk of scalding, allow the engine to cool down sufficiently.
- Maintain enough distance when you are removing the oil drain plug. While doing this, keep your forearm parallel to the ground to reduce the risk of hot oil dripping down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose that is large enough to hold the full amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Always store out of reach of children.
- Prolonged contact of used engine oil with the skin may cause skin damage. Always wash oil off immediately with soap and water to protect your skin.

Note

Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Before changing the engine oil, make sure you can dispose of the used engine oil correctly.
- Engine oil must always be disposed of correctly. Do not dump it in the yard, in the forest, or in open water, river channels, or sewers.
- Have your used engine oil recycled by bringing it to a used oil collection site or contact a gas station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored through the indicator light ⇨ *page 17*. However, occasionally checking the coolant level manually is recommended.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	**TL 774 L**
G12++	TL 774 G
G13	TL 774 J

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine. ▶

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

– Before the start of winter, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.

Tips

In certain weather conditions, water can evaporate on the radiator and exit the side vents as steam after stopping the engine.

Adding coolant

Applies to: vehicles without power top

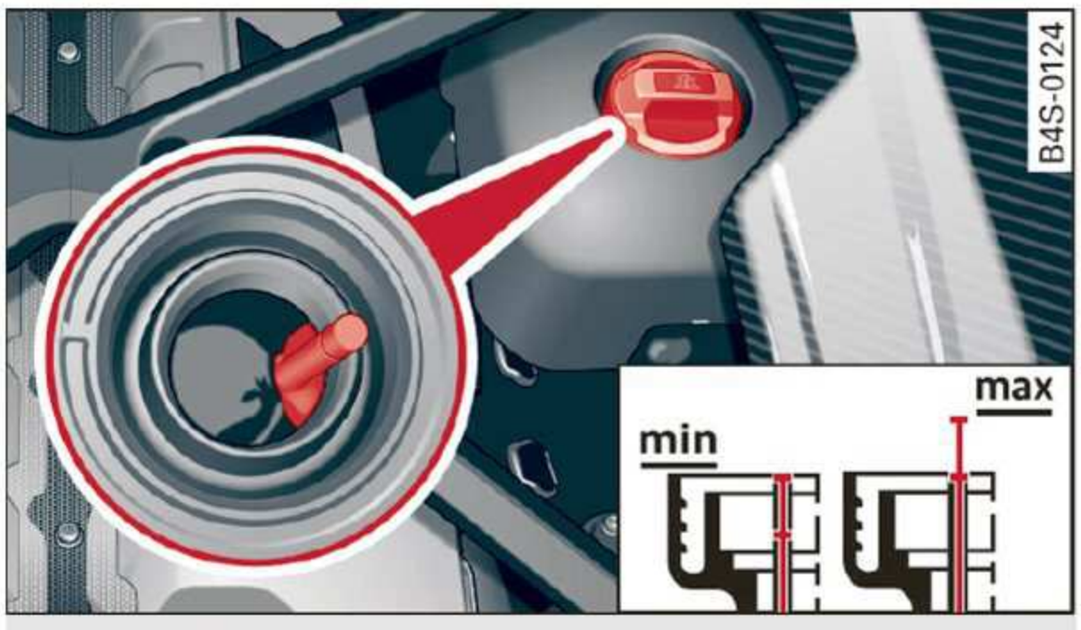


Fig. 183 Engine compartment: markings on the coolant expansion tank

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 229, General information*.

Checking the engine coolant level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Allow the engine to cool.
- ▸ Place a large, thick cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap and unscrew the cap counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Read the coolant level using the coolant level float. The coolant level float may only stick out over the edge of the coolant expansion tank a maximum of 0.39 in (1 cm) when the engine is cool.

Adding coolant

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

- ▸ Add coolant in the correct mixture ratio ⇨ *page 236* until the dipstick is no more than 0.39 in (1 cm) above the edge of the coolant expansion tank.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Close the cap securely.

Coolant loss usually indicates that there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, coolant loss can result from the coolant boiling due overheating and then being forced out of the cooling system.

WARNING

– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 229, General information*.
– Never open the engine compartment lid if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. The cooling system is under pressure. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine compartment with caution. ▶

– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.
– Coolant additive and coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, store the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.

Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Adding coolant

Applies to: vehicles with power top

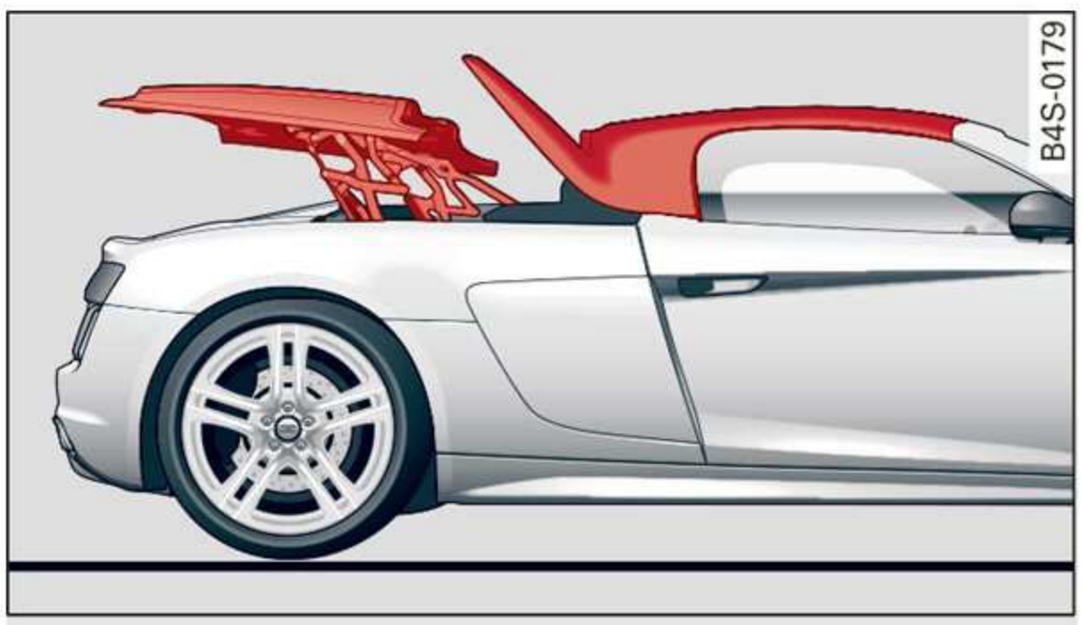


Fig. 184 Power top: service position

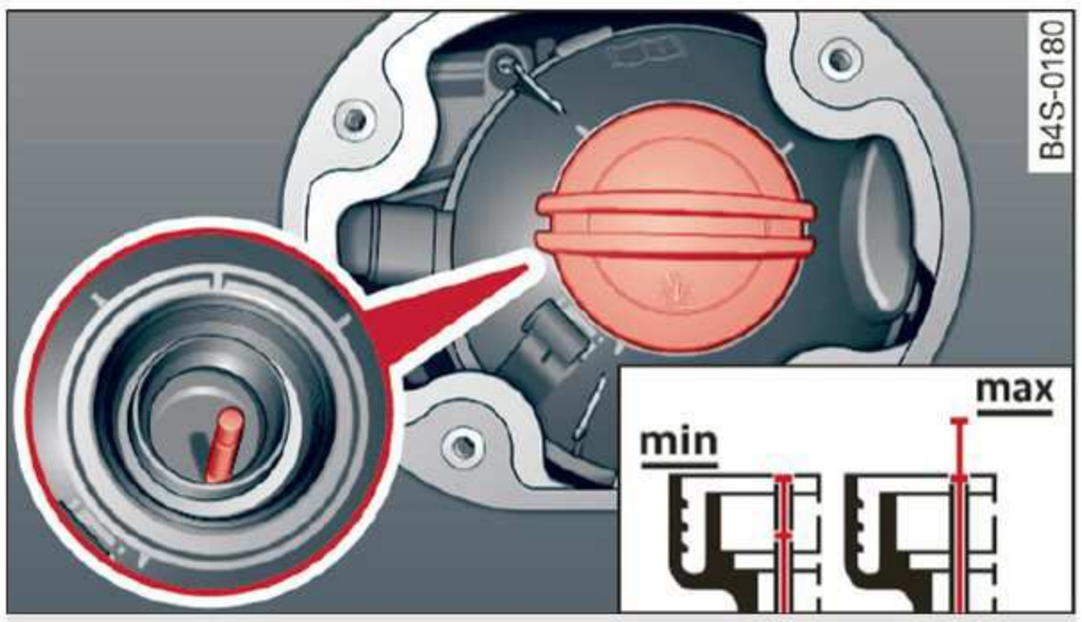


Fig. 185 Power top storage bay: coolant expansion tank

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 229, General information*.

The coolant expansion tank is located in the power top storage compartment cover on the right side under the oval metal cover ⇨ *fig. 185*. To check the coolant level, the vehicle must be level and the power must be in the service position ⇨ *fig. 184*.

Bringing the closed power top into the service position

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Pull and hold the power top switch.
- ▸ Press and hold the rear window switch as well until the power top moves into the service position ⇨ *fig. 184*.

Bringing the open convertible to into the service position

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press and hold the power top switch.
- ▸ Press and hold the rear window switch as well until the power top moves into the service position ⇨ *fig. 184*.

Opening the coolant expansion tank cover

- ▸ Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Carefully remove the bolts in the cover ① using a screwdriver and remove the cover. The coolant expansion tank is located underneath ⇨ *fig. 185*.

Checking the engine coolant level

- ▸ Place a cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap and unscrew the cap counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Read the coolant level using the coolant level float. The coolant level float may only stick out over the edge of the coolant expansion tank a maximum of 0.39 in (1 cm) when the engine is cool.

Adding coolant

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

- ▸ Add coolant in the correct mixture ratio ⇨ *page 236* until the dipstick is no more than 0.39 in (1 cm) above the edge of the coolant expansion tank.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Close the cap securely. ▶

▸ Tighten the cap (1) again.

Coolant loss usually indicates that there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, coolant loss can result from the coolant boiling due overheating and then being forced out of the cooling system.

WARNING

– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 229, General information*.
– Never open the engine compartment lid if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. The cooling system is under pressure. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine compartment with caution.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.
– Coolant additive and coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, store the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.

Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid

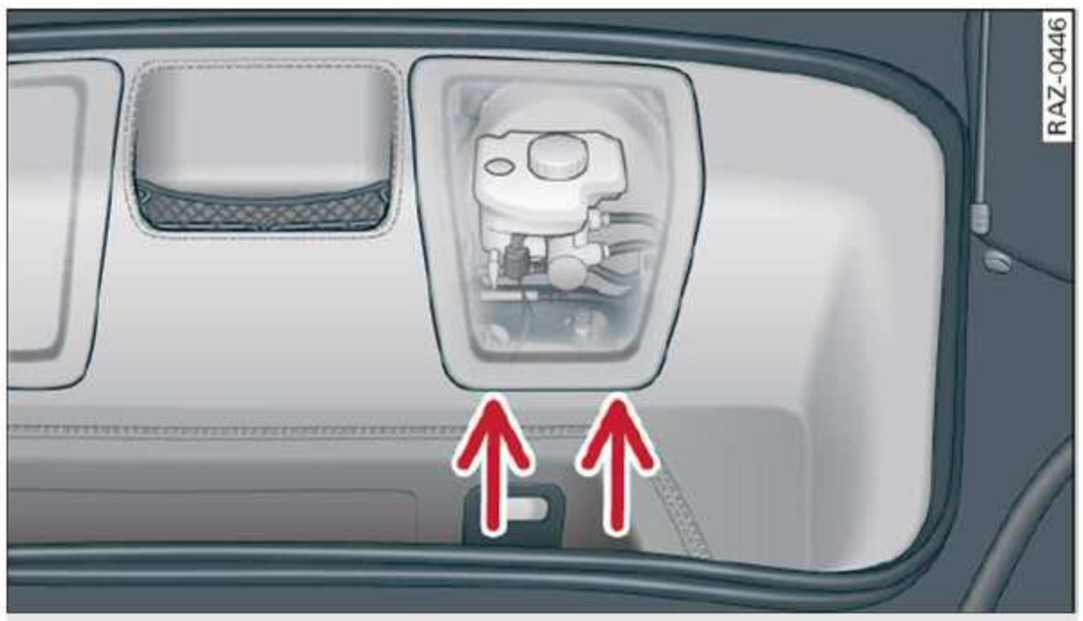


Fig. 186 Luggage compartment: brake fluid reservoir cover

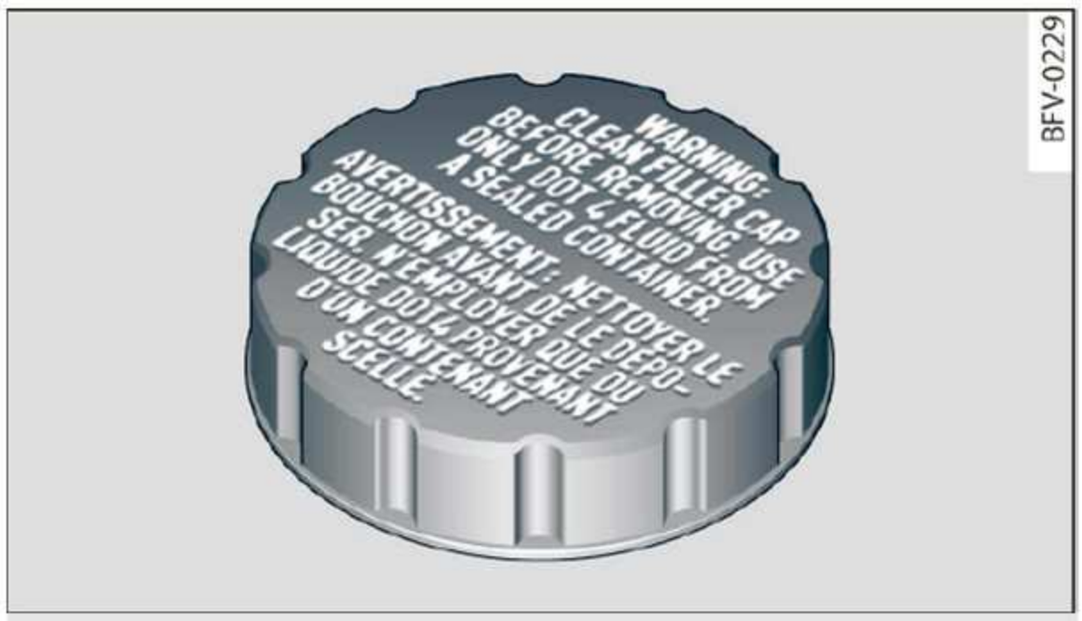


Fig. 187 Luggage compartment: brake fluid reservoir cap

Checking the brake fluid level

▸ Open the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *page 27*.
▸ Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit and position it on the cover (driver's side) (arrow) ⇨ *fig. 186*.
▸ Lift off the cover carefully.
▸ Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. The authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will inform you of the replacement intervals.

WARNING

– If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an ▸

authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This could impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
– The brake fluid in your vehicle must meet the standard VW 501 14 and is available at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If this brake fluid is not available, another high-grade brake fluid of equivalent quality may be used, and it must meet the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6.

Note

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
– Do not allow any brake fluid to come into contact with the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Electrical system

If the or indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the generator, the battery, or the vehicle electrical system.

Electric system: malfunction! Battery is not being charged

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment because it will drain the battery. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the battery charge level is too low.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery has charged enough while driving.

If this message does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Battery

Battery general information

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

Multiple batteries with different technologies may be installed in your vehicle:

– Vehicle battery (for example, for starting the engine, basic power supply) ⇨ *page 241, Lead battery* or ⇨ *page 241, Other battery types*
– Auxiliary battery (for example, for recuperation or optional equipment) ⇨ *page 241, Other battery types*

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

The battery will gradually drain if the vehicle does not run for long periods of time. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. The convenience functions will be available again when you start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the battery. The battery must be charged every month to prevent this ⇨ *page 242*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before cold weather begins. ▶

WARNING

– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Never connect the charging cable or jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 242*.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect the battery against the cold so that it will not be destroyed by "freezing" ⇨ *page 242, Charging the battery*.

Lead battery

Explanation of warnings:

	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection.
	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
/	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

For the sake of the environment

Lead-acid batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash. They contain harmful substances, such as sulfuric acid and lead, and also recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Other battery types

Explanation of warnings:

	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
/	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

WARNING

All work on the batteries must **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Gases that escape from these different battery types can be poisonous or flammable.
– The contents of these battery types can be corrosive. If any battery contents come into contact with the skin, flush the affected area for at least 15 minutes with clean water. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.

Note

Components must not be connected to the battery terminals and wires on these battery types because this increases the risk of damage, for example due to overvoltage.

For the sake of the environment

These types of batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash. They contain harmful substances and recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

4S1012721BA

Charging the battery

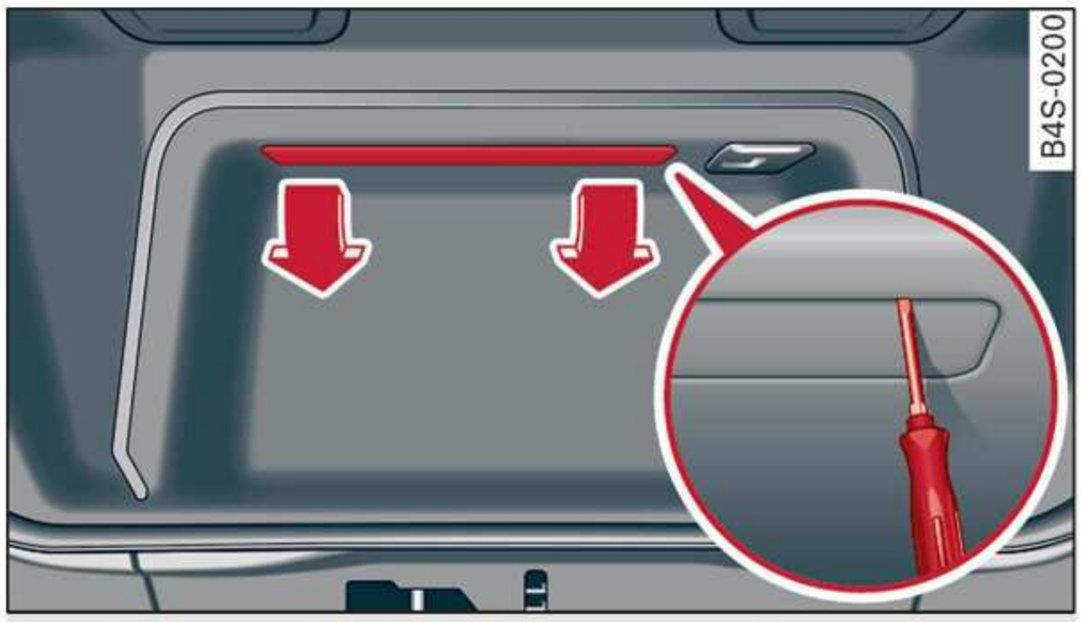


Fig. 188 Luggage compartment: battery cover



Fig. 189 Luggage compartment: connectors for a charger or jump start cables

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 229, General information*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Battery general information on page 241* and ⇨ ⚠.

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging current of 14.8 volts**. The battery cables remain connected.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *page 27*.
- ▸ Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit and position it at the upper edge of the trim panel ⇨ *fig. 188*.
- ▸ Carefully pry the trim panel out and fold it in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 188*.
- ▸ Clamp the terminal clamps on the charger correctly onto the ground point ⊖ and the positive terminal ⊕.
- ▸ Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Remove the charging device terminal clamps.
- ▸ Insert the trim panel again and close the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *page 27*.

⚠ WARNING

– A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the battery in well-ventilated areas.
– A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). Do not charge or use a frozen or thawed battery. If ice forms, the battery housing can crack and battery electrolyte can leak out, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

ⓘ Tips

Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the battery.

Windshield washer system

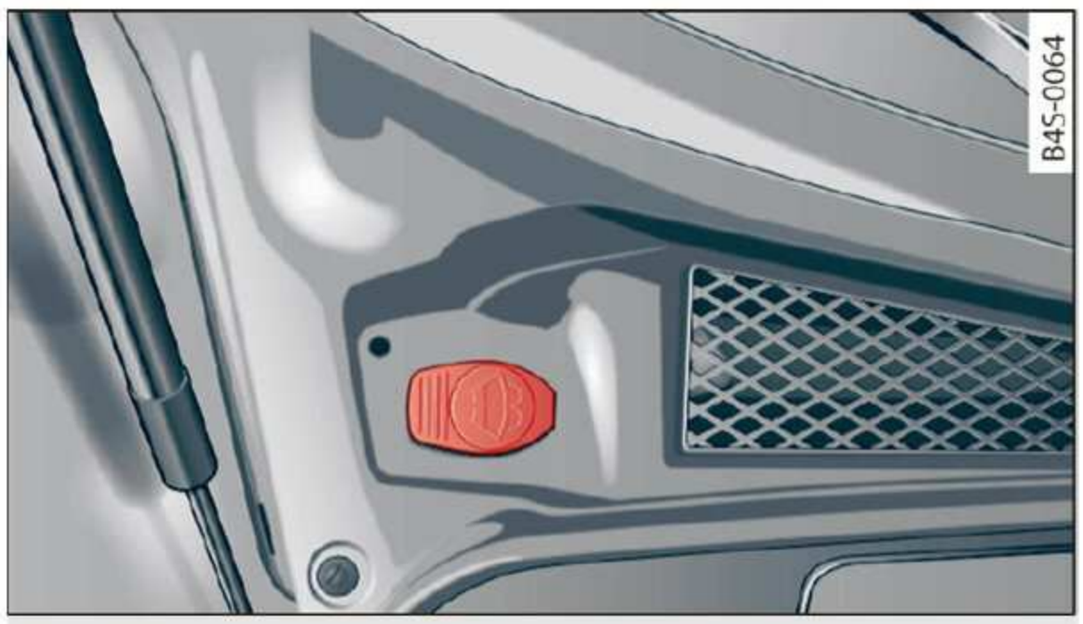


Fig. 190 Water drip tray: washer fluid reservoir cover

The washer fluid reservoir contains the windshield washer fluid. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 290*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze. ▶

Note

- The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions and the climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
- Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
- Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Note

- Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
- Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder**: after a certain distance driven, a message appears in the Infotainment system display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on or off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection. Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the display, select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

4S1012721BA

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

►Check your tires regularly for damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges. Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.

►If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.

►Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.

►Protect your tires from oil, grease, and fuel.

►Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.

►Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

WARNING

–Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.

–Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

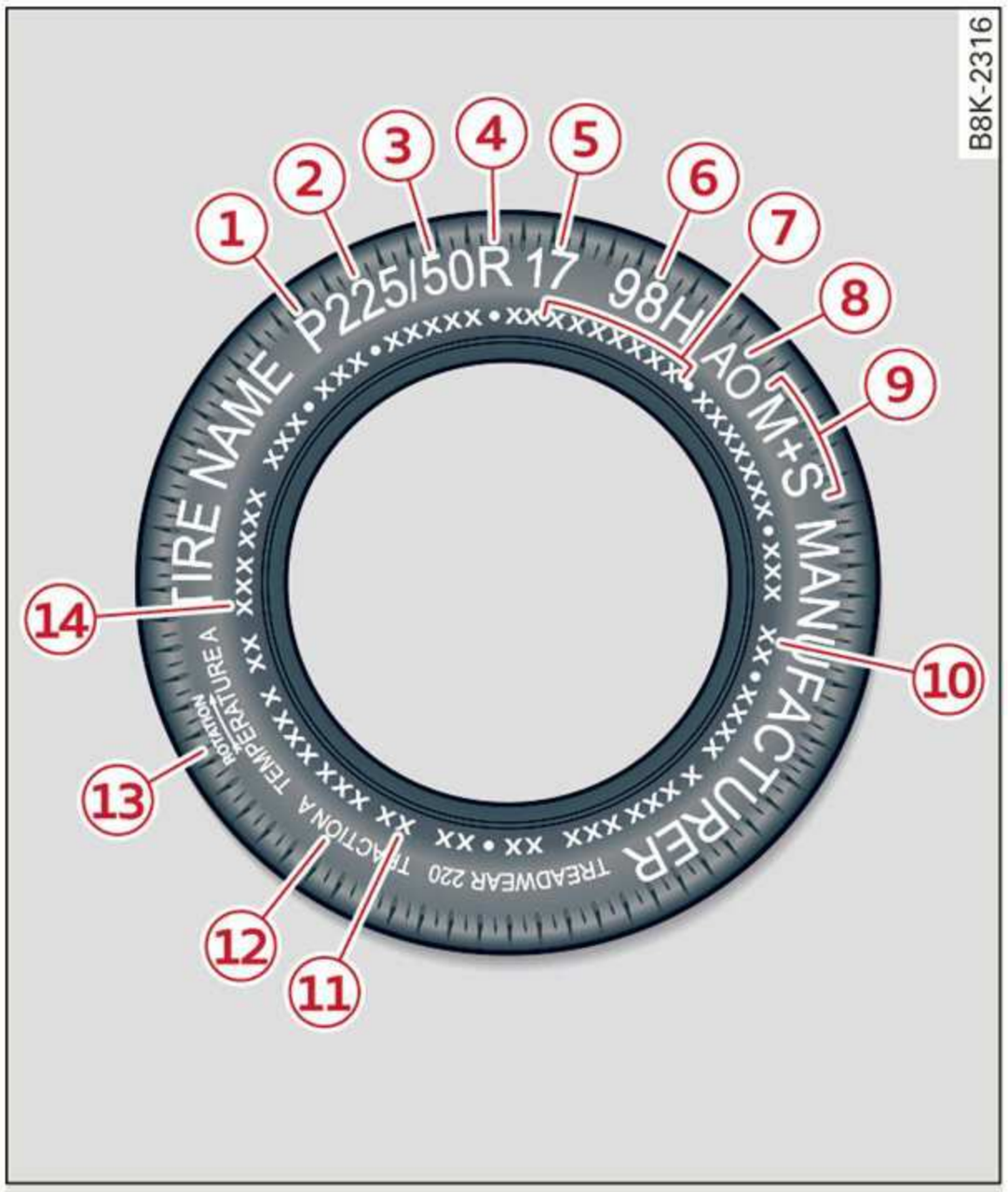


Fig. 191 Tire designation on the sidewall

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

"P" indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. "T" indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

"R" indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 244*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a)]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a)]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR". ▶

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2219 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2019.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

“M/S” or “M+S” indicates the tire has properties making it suitable to drive in mud or snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 260*.

⑬ Running direction

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power ▶

windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (“GAWR”)

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (“GVWR”)

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs. ▶

4S1012721BA

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called “maximum inflation pressure.”

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs (68 kg) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the ▶

beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 247, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 245*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 244*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road. ▶

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See

⇨ *page 253, Treadwear indicator*

for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2219 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2019. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by ▸

distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 256*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 256* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ►New tires do not yet have the optimal gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ►Only use tires with the same design and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ►Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ►Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- ►If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire and rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

Because the spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle (such as winter tires or wide tires), only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be ▶

4S1012721BA

replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive: All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different wheel speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles. In some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.

–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.

–Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.

–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear and damage

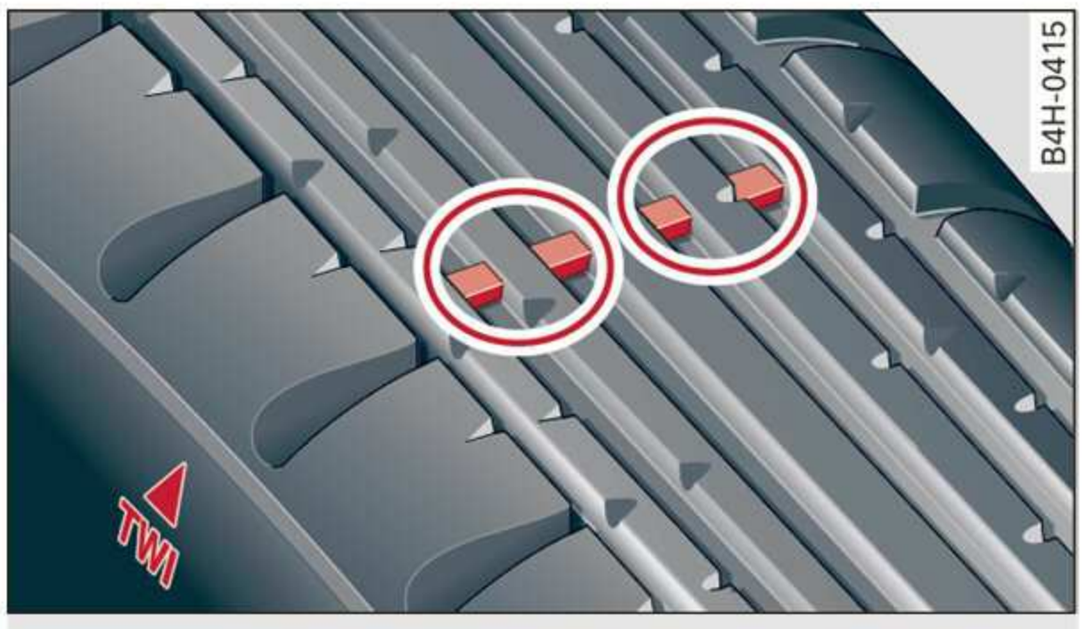


Fig. 192 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration, and heavy braking increase tire wear.
–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 192*. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1)] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or uneven tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the ▶

1) Obey any applicable regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.

Tire pressure



Fig. 193 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

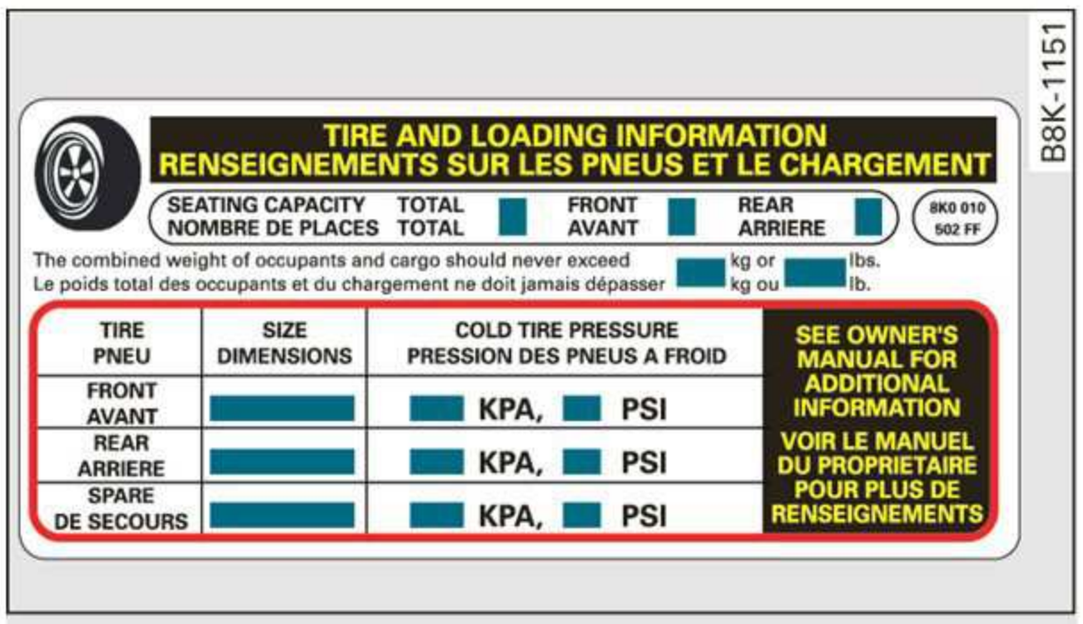


Fig. 194 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted at the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 193*, ⇨ *fig. 194*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 256*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking and correcting tire pressure

- ▶Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▶Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▶Check the label ⇨ *fig. 194* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▶Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▶Vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System*: store the modified tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 263*.
- ▶Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and the vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read ▶

and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 256, Tires and vehicle load limits*.

– The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are any differences, you should always follow the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 254, fig. 193*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed. ▶

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2 people)				Maximum load			
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
R8 Coupe: 5.2L 10-cylinder	245/35 ZR19 93Y	44	300	–	–	49	340	–	–
	295/35 ZR19 104Y	–	–	42	290	–	–	46	320
	Michelin 245/30 ZR20 90Y	41	280	–	–	49	340	–	–
	Michelin 305/30 ZR20 103Y	–	–	36	250	–	–	48	330
	Pirelli 245/30 ZR20 90Y	48	330	–	–	49	340	–	–
	Pirelli 305/30 ZR20 103Y	–	–	44	300	–	–	48	330
R8 Spyder: 5.2L 10-cylinder	245/35 ZR19 93Y	46	320	–	–	49	340	–	–
	295/35 ZR19 104Y	–	–	44	300	–	–	48	330
	Michelin 245/30 ZR20 90Y	45	310	–	–	49	340	–	–
	Michelin 305/30 ZR20 103Y	–	–	39	270	–	–	49	340
	Pirelli 245/30 ZR20 90Y	49	340	–	–	49	340	–	–
	Pirelli 305/30 ZR20 103Y	–	–	45	310	–	–	49	340

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 254* and load limits ⇨ *page 256*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop.

Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are ▶

technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

4S1012721BA

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS” on your vehicle’s placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 254, fig. 193*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from “XXX” kilograms or “XXX” pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 254, fig. 193*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

►Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 245, fig. 191*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠. ▶

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 276, Finishing*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

► Use winter tires on all four wheels.
► Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
► Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 244*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
► Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 254*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear, and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⚠ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve both driving and braking in winter road conditions.

► Only install snow chains on the rear wheels.
► Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
► Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Observe the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Snow chains can damage the rims and wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.
– Using snow chains that add more than 0.53 in (13,5 mm) of height can severely damage the wheel housings and other vehicle components.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be advisable to limit the ESC ⇨ *page 87*.

Low-profile tires

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving style. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition.

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers, and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure ⇨ *page 254*.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 mi (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 245, fig. 191*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors the pressure in the four tires when driving.

The system uses sensors that measure the temperature and pressure in the tires. The data is sent from these sensors to the control module by radio frequency.

The tire pressure monitoring system shows the current pressures and temperatures of the tires in the Infotainment system while driving ⇨ *page 262*. It also compares the current tire pressures with the stored tire pressures and gives a warning if the tire pressure is different from what is stored ⇨ *page 262*.

The system does not detect if the stored tire pressures match the recommended tire pressures. You must store the tire pressures again in each of the following situations ⇨ *page 263*:

– Each time the tire pressures change, for example when the load in the vehicle changes
– After replacing a tire

– If wheels with new wheel sensors are used

WARNING

– The tire pressure monitoring system assists the driver in monitoring tire pressures. The driver is responsible for having the tires inflated to the correct pressure.
– Do not change the tire pressure when the temperature of the tire is extremely high. This could result in serious damage to the tire and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
– A tire with low pressure flexes more. This heats the tire up too much. This could cause the tread to separate and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
– The tire pressure monitoring system does not warn about damage or defects in the tire construction that could cause the tire to burst, for example. Inspect your tires regularly.

Tips

– If tires are replaced, the sensors and valves do not need to be removed or replaced. Only replace the valve stem and, if necessary, the valve and the wheel electronics. If you have questions, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– An incorrect display or a malfunction in the tire pressure monitoring system can occur after using the tire mobility kit. Have the sensors replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 287*.

Displaying tire pressures and temperatures

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

Requirement: you must be driving the vehicle.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Display tire pressure**.

The current tire pressures are shown in green or as yellow numbers in the Infotainment system:

– **Green:** the current tire pressure and the specified tire pressure are approximately the same.
– **Yellow:** the current tire pressure is lower than the specified tire pressure.

The specified tire pressure is the last tire pressure that was stored ⇨ *page 263*.

Note that the tire pressure also depends on the temperature of the tire. The tire pressure increases as the engine becomes warmer while driving.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 261*.

Tips

The tire pressure or temperature is not displayed while the vehicle is stationary and in adaptation mode. Dashes **--.--** are shown in place of the pressure and temperature.

Tire pressure loss

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

If the (!) indicator light turns on, the pressure in at least one tire is too low or new sensors were not adapted:

(!) indicator lights turns on after turning the ignition on

The tire pressure is too low compared to the specified pressure.

▸ Check and store the tire pressure(s) the next time it is possible ⇨ *page 263*.

(!) indicator light turns on while driving

Wheels with new sensors were not adapted or the tire pressure has reached a critical level compared to the specified pressure.

▸ Avoid unnecessary steering and braking maneuvers.
▸ Adapt your driving style to the situation.
▸ Stop as soon as possible and check the tire(s).
▸ If it is possible to continue driving, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service ▶

Facility immediately and have your tire(s) repaired or replaced.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 261*.

Storing new tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure specifications must be stored correctly for the tire pressure monitoring system to function reliably.

It is always necessary to store the tire pressures when the tire pressures are modified, for example due to a change in load or when new sensors are installed.

- ▸ Before storing the tire pressures, make sure the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 254, fig. 194*. Only correct and store the pressure in tires whose temperature is approximately the same as the ambient temperature. If the temperature of the tire is higher than the ambient air temperature, the tire pressure must be increased approximately 3.0 PSI (0.2 bar) above the value on the sticker.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**. After storing the tire pressures, the tire pressure monitoring system measures the current pressures while driving and stores them as the new specified pressures.
- ▸ If the changed tire pressures are not displayed in the Infotainment system, drive the vehicle for approximately 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels is received again.

During this adaptation phase, **--.--** is displayed for the pressure and temperature and the tire pressure monitoring system is only partially available. It only provides a warning if one or more tire pressures is below the minimum permitted specified pressure.

If the (!) indicator light turns on and the message **Tire pressure: wheel change detected. Please check all tires and store pressures in MMI** also appears, the system has detected that the position of the sensors has changed because of a tire rotation, or that new sensors were installed. Store the new tire pressures.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 261*.

Malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

If the tire pressure monitoring system is not available, the TPMS indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display along with the message **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual**.

If the TPMS indicator light appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light also blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. The following are examples of situations that could cause a malfunction:

- If the message appears at the end of the adaptation phase, the system may not detect one or several of the wheel sensors necessary for pressure monitoring. This may result from one or more wheels without wheel sensors or with incompatible wheel sensors being installed.
- A wheel sensor or another component has failed.
- Using snow chains can affect the function of the system because of the shielding effect of the chains.
- The tire pressure monitoring system is not available due to a malfunction.
- Transmitters with the same frequency, such as headphones or remote-controlled devices, may cause a temporary system malfunction due to the strong electromagnetic field.

The TPMS indicator light and the message turn off once the tire pressure monitoring system is available again. If you cannot correct the malfunction and the TPMS indicator light stays on, drive ▶

immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products if possible.
- Do not dispose of cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits remain on the vehicle, the more the surface may be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not direct the stream of water directly onto seals for the side windows, doors, luggage compartment lid or engine compartment lid, or onto the tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car wash

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Only use car washes where the vehicle remains stationary and the washing equipment moves around the vehicle when washing and drying. Car washes that move the vehicle through the car wash using a chain are not recommended.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working downward using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To reduce the risk of damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots, and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To reduce the risk of damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois. ▶

4S1012721BA

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of accidents, only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator.
- To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
- After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried with a few careful brake applications.

Note

- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must retract the extendable rear spoiler* if necessary, and fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash decorative decals* with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash the power top with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges, or similar items.
- When washing matte finish painted vehicle components:
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  - Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  - Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle components painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner ⇨ *page 48*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ Camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution

Component	Situation	Solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Rear spoiler	Deposits	Clean similar to painted parts ⇨ *page 265*; remove dust in the rear spoiler compartment
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Power top	Deposits	Clean water, power top cleaning product, if necessary. Clean with the grain of the fabric using a soft brush and allow to air dry.
Wind deflector	Deposits	Water, mild soap solution, if necessary[a)]
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 289*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then treat with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Treat with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon components	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 265*
Decorative decals	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]

Component	Situation	Solution
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed using a soft brush.
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], allow to dry before letting them retract
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Specific types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather dried stains: Oil cleaning spray
	Specific types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use special colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as plastic components

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. They can also cause wiper blade chatter.

Note

– **Headlights and tail lights**
  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning products that contain alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.

- **Wheels**
  - Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  - Damage to the protective layer on the rims, such as stone chips or scratches, must be repaired immediately.
- **Camera lenses**
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  - Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
- **Power top**
  - Remove bird droppings immediately.
  - Never use gasoline, spot remover, benzene, paint thinner or other solvents to remove.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To reduce the risk of scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
- **Decorative parts and trim**
  - Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
- **Paint**
  - To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
  - To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
  - To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
  - Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately because they could damage the paint.
- **Decorative decals**
  - To reduce the risk of damage, do not use any rough powder or abrasive cleaning products.
  - To reduce the risk of damage, do not polish decorative decals that have a matte or printed finish.
  - Due to the risk of damage, do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice on windows with decorative decals on them.
- **Instrument cluster**
  - Make sure that the instrument cluster is switched off and has cooled off before cleaning it.
  - The instrument cluster and the trim surrounding it must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could get scratched.
  - Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.
- **Controls**
  - Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.
- **Safety belts**
  - Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
  - Never clean safety belts or their components with chemicals or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
  - If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors, or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- **Textiles, artificial leather, and Alcantara**
  - Never treat artificial leather or Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover, or similar products.
  - Have a cleaning specialist remove stubborn stains to reduce the risk of damage.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning. ▶

4S1012721BA

– Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
– Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
– Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
– Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
– Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
– Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
– Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
– To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

– Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
– Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.
– Decorative decals can age due to environmental conditions, which can result in damage such as brittleness. The color may fade if exposed to excessive sunlight.

Taking your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service, and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery.

Emergency assistance

General information

- Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. If you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- Set the parking brake.
- Switch the emergency flashers on.
- Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of others on the road.

Equipment

Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/ compressor

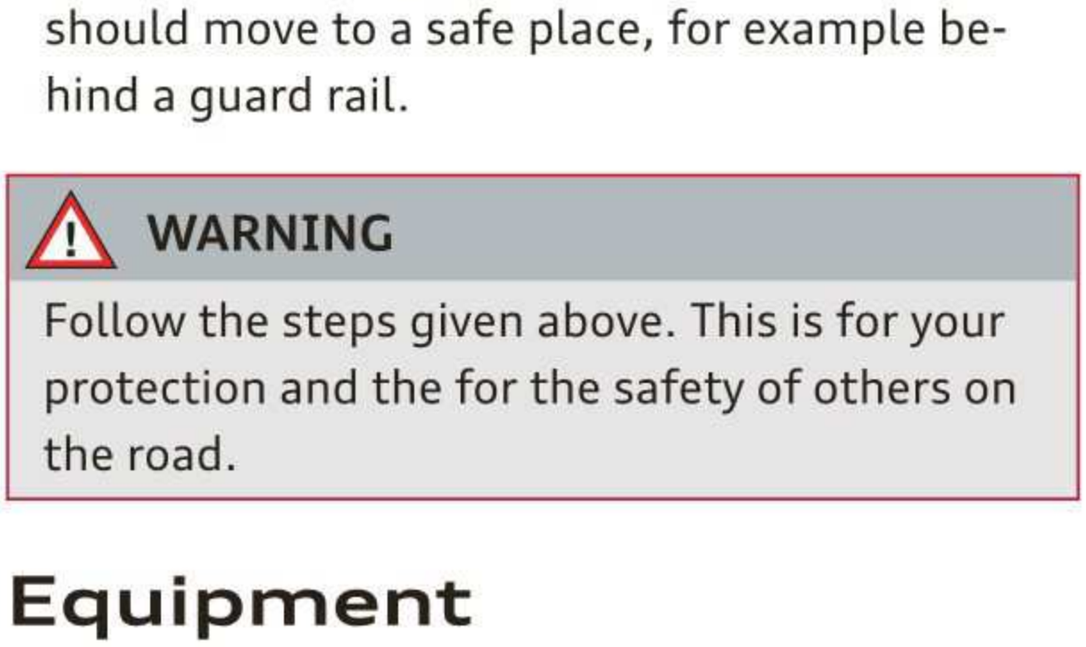


Fig. 195 Vehicle tool kit bag

The vehicle tool kit bag with vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit and the compressor are located in the luggage compartment.

Completely retract the vehicle jack arm before storing the vehicle jack*.

Tips

The vehicle jack* does not require any maintenance.

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 271, General information*.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the "P" selector lever position.
- Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 271*.

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit



Fig. 196 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the damaged tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire repair set is able to be used at temperatures as low as – 4 °F (– 20 °C).

The tire mobility kit must not be used:

– If the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 196*.
– If the rim is damaged ②
– If you have driven with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③

See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance in these situations.

WARNING

– Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily. ▶

– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothing.
– If tire sealant comes into contact with your eyes or your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothing immediately if it comes into contact with tire sealant.
– If an allergic reaction occurs, seek medical attention immediately.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.
– In vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring system*, using tire sealant can result in an incorrect display or a system malfunction. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
– Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor.
– Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

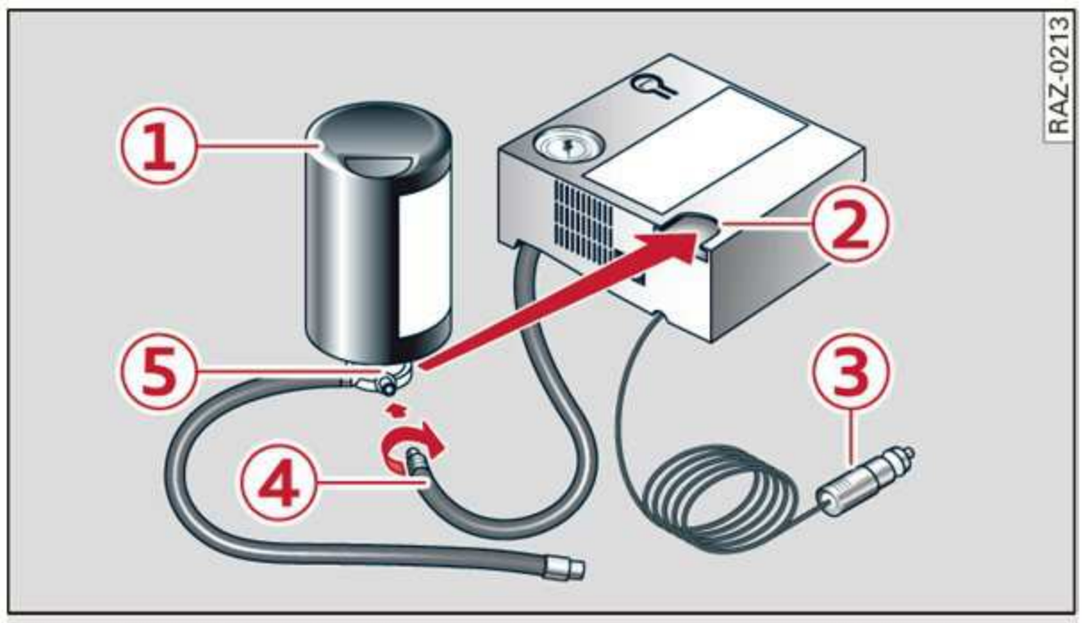


Fig. 197 Principle of operation: Components of the tire mobility kit

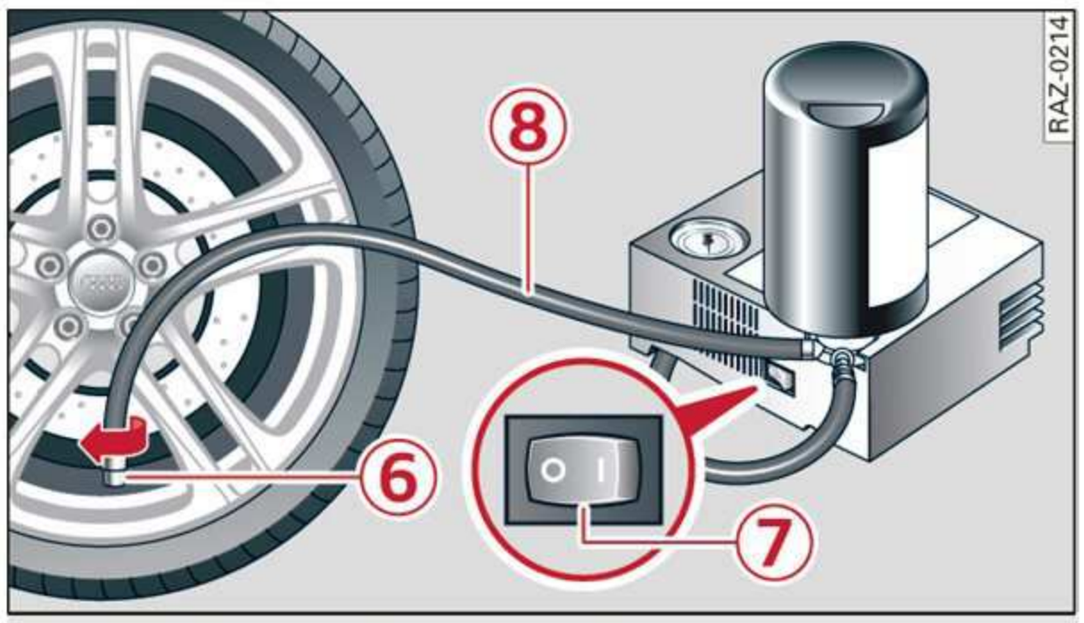


Fig. 198 Principle of operation: Tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 271*.

Setting up the tire mobility kit

- ▸ Remove the connector ③ and pressure hose ④ from the bottom of the housing.
- ▸ Connect the compressor pressure hose ④ [1] to the flange ⑤ on the tire sealant bottle ①.
- ▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening ② on the top of the compressor housing.
- ▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
- ▸ Connect the filler hose ⑧ to the valve ⑥ ⇨ *fig. 198*.
- ▸ Connect the plug ③ ⇨ *fig. 197* to an outlet in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.

Inflating a tire

- ▸ Move the switch ⑦ ⇨ *fig. 198* on the compressor into position **I**. ▶

1) The compressor may look different. However, the way it is operated is generally the same.

- ▸ Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
- ▸ If this tire pressure is not reached, remove the filler hose. Drive slowly approximately 33 feet (10 m) forward or in reverse so that the sealant can be distributed in the tire. Inflate the tire again ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- – Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
- – If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
- – If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat. Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Affix the sticker that says "max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)" that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- ▸ If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:

- – Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
- – Avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves.
- – The vehicle may become more difficult to control.

- – If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

Replacing wheels

Preparation

You must complete the preparation before changing a tire.

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ *page 271, General information*.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the "P" selector lever position.
- ▸ Lay out the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 271*.

WARNING

When using the vehicle jack* on a road with a steep hill or when offroad, you must take extra precautions to prevent the vehicle from rolling. Use suitable objects to block the front and back of the wheel that is diagonal from the wheel with the flat tire.

Removing the cover



Fig. 199 Wheel: wheel bolts with caps

- ▸ Slide the plastic clip from the vehicle tool kit onto the cap until it engages ⇨ *fig. 199*.
- ▸ Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

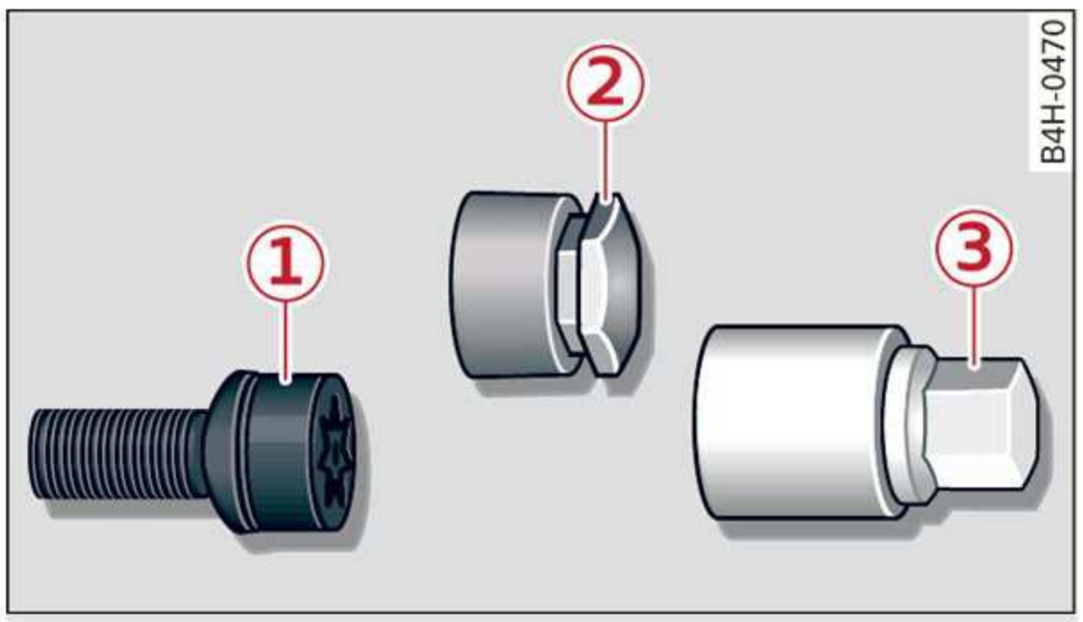


Fig. 200 Anti-theft wheel bolt with cap and adapter

You need a special adapter in the vehicle tool kit to remove the anti-theft wheel bolts.

- ▸ Remove the cap ②.
- ▸ Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the adapter ③.
- ▸ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 274*.

Tips

Note the code number for the wheel bolt adapter and store it in a safe place separate from the vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and give them the code number.

Loosening the wheel bolts



Fig. 201 Changing a tire: loosen the wheel bolts

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit all the way onto the wheel bolt[1)].
- ▸ Turn the wheel bolt approximately one turn to the left. To achieve the required torque, hold the end of the wheel wrench. If the wheel bolt will not loosen, press carefully on the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold onto the vehicle securely while doing this and make sure your footing is stable.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, only loosen the wheel bolts gently one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack*.

1) You need the matching adapter in order to loosen and tighten anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 274*.

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with vehicle jack

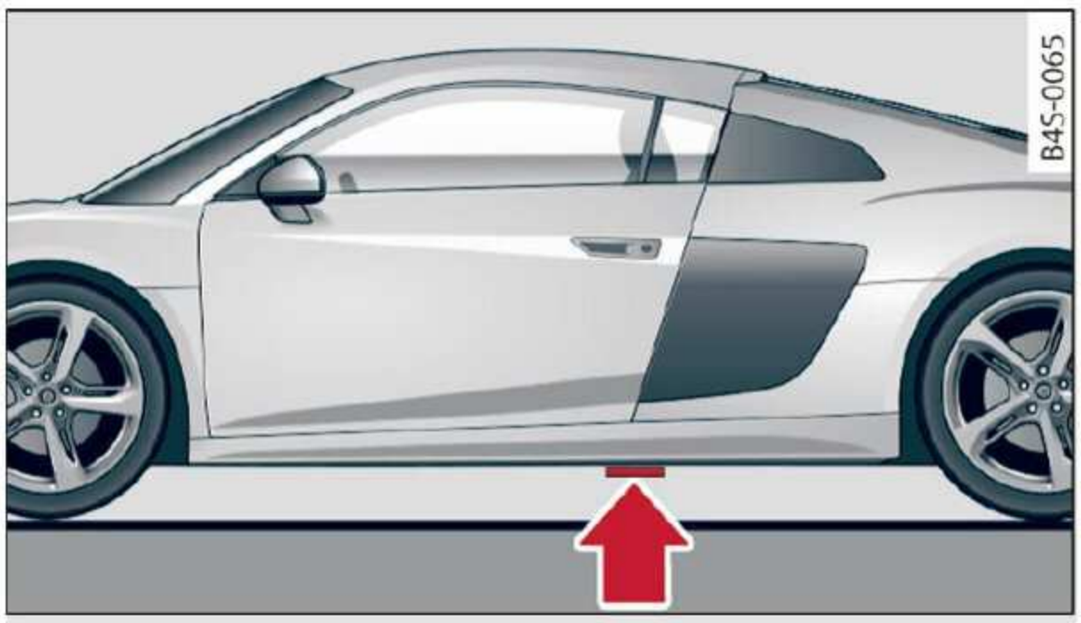


Fig. 202 Sill: contact point (example)

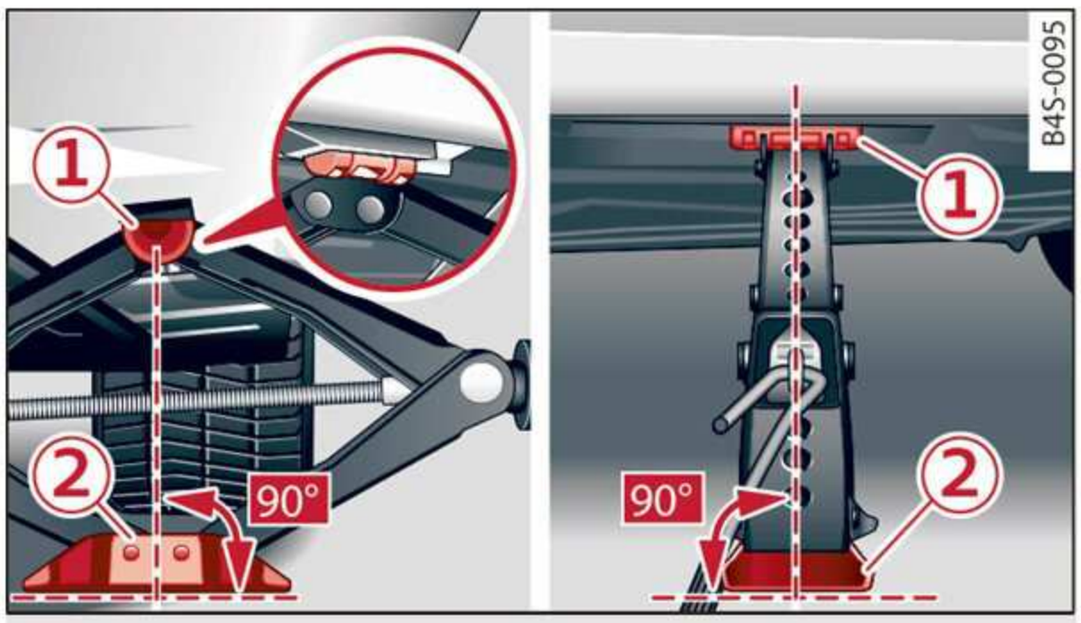


Fig. 203 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Place the vehicle jack from the vehicle tool kit on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad such as a rubber mat ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Find the mounting point in the sill on the side with the affected wheel ⇨ *fig. 202*.
- ▸ Turn the vehicle jack located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm ① ⇨ *fig. 203* is located under the designated plastic mount.
- ▸ Align the vehicle jack so the arm ① engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the base ② lies flat on the ground. The base ② must be directly under the mounting point ①.
- ▸ Continue raising the vehicle jack until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

⚠ WARNING

– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one is in the vehicle before raising it.
– Make sure the vehicle jack is stable. The risk of injury is increased when the ground is slippery or soft, because the vehicle jack could slide or sink.
– Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack designed for another vehicle, your vehicle could slip and cause injury.
– Position the vehicle jack only at the designated mounting points on the side sill and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of injury, do not raise any other vehicles or other loads using the vehicle jack provided by the factory.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, never start the engine when the vehicle is raised.
– To reduce the risk of injury, support the vehicle securely with suitable stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle.

! Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated mounting points on the side sill. Otherwise, your vehicle could be damaged.

Removing and mounting a wheel



Fig. 204 Wheel: internal hex socket to turn the wheel bolts



Fig. 205 Wheel: alignment pin in the top and bottom holes

Removing a wheel

- ▸ Remove the top and bottom wheel bolts completely using the hex socket in the screwdriver handle (in the vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 204* and place it on a clean surface.
- ▸ Install the alignment pins (from the vehicle tool kit) by hand into the empty holes ⇨ *fig. 205*.
- ▸ Remove the rest of the wheel bolts.
- ▸ Remove the wheel ⇨ (!). The alignment pins remain in the holes.

Installing a wheel

Read the directions on ⇨ *page 276* when installing unidirectional tires.

- ▸ Slide the wheel on over the alignment pins ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Install the wheel bolts and tighten them gently using the hex socket.
- ▸ Remove the alignment pins and also tighten the remaining wheel bolts.
- ▸ Carefully lower the vehicle using the vehicle jack*.
- ▸ Tighten the wheel bolts in a diagonal pattern using the wheel wrench.

The wheel bolts must be clean and loosen and tighten easily. Check the contact surfaces for the wheel and hub. Contaminants on these surfaces must be removed before installing the wheel.

WARNING

- – Read and follow the important information and notes under ⇨ *page 251*.
- – Never use the hex socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. Using the hex socket will not achieve the required tightening torque, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire profile is identified by arrows on the tire sidewall that point in the running direction. You must always maintain the specified running direction. This is necessary to ensure the tire's optimal performance in regard to adhesion, running noise, and friction, and to reduce the risk of hydroplaning.

To benefit fully from the advantages of the unidirectional tire design, you should replace faulty tires as soon as possible and restore the correct running direction on all of the tires.

Finishing

- ▸ Reinstall the caps on the wheel bolts if necessary.
- ▸ Store the vehicle tool kit in its designated place.
- ▸ Make sure that the wheel that was removed, the vehicle tool kit, and the vehicle jack* are securely stored in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 54*.

- ► Check the tire pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
- ► Check the tire pressure and store it in the Infotainment system.
- ► The wheel bolt tightening specification must be 90 ft lbs (120 Nm). Have it checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Drive carefully until then.
- ► Have the faulty wheel replaced as quickly as possible.

Jump starting

Preparation

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

If the engine does not start because the vehicle battery is drained, you can jump start your vehicle using another vehicle. Jump start cables are needed to do this.

Both vehicle batteries must have 12 V nominal voltage. The voltage capacity (Ah) of the vehicle battery that is giving power must not be less than the capacity of the drained vehicle battery.

Jump start cable

Only use a jump start cable with a large enough diameter. Note the manufacturer's specifications.

Only use a jump start cable with insulated terminal clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable - usually black.

WARNING

– A drained vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 ºC). If the vehicle battery is frozen, it must be thawed before connecting the jump start cables. If it is not, the risk of an explosion and chemical burns increases. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.

– Read the warnings when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 229*.
– Handling the jump start cables incorrectly may cause the vehicle battery to explode and lead to serious injuries.

Note

Jump start cables can cause considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system if they are connected incorrectly.

Tips

– There must be no contact between the vehicles, or else voltage could flow when connecting the positive terminal and drain the vehicle battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.
– The drained vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the electrical system.
– Switch off electrical equipment that is not needed.

Starting the engine

Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order.



Fig. 206 Luggage compartment: connectors for jump start cables or a charger

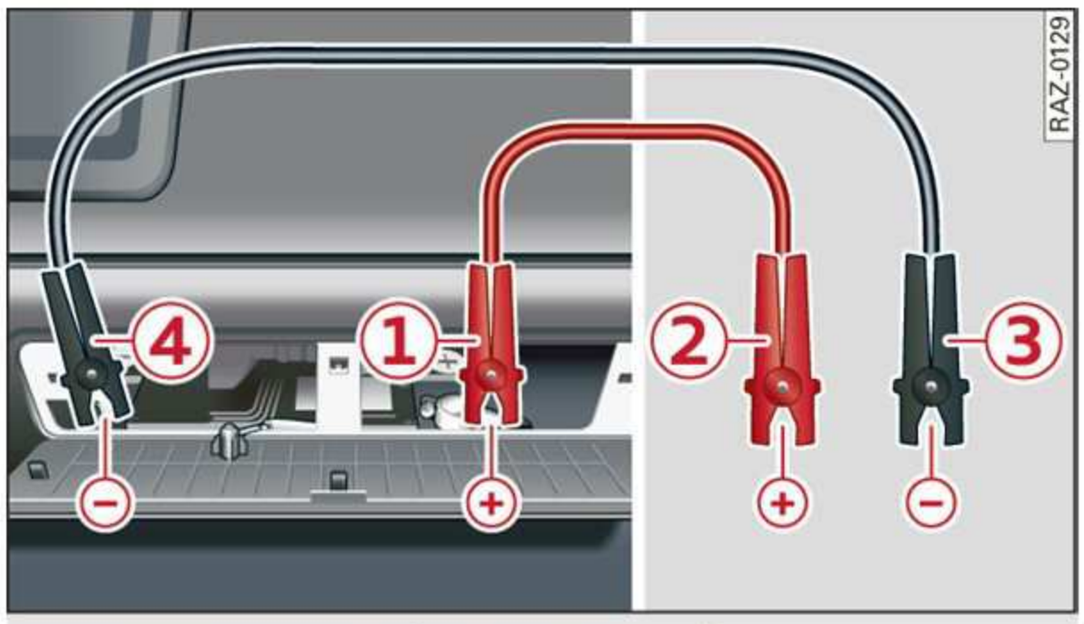


Fig. 207 Connecting the jump start cables

The jump start cable connections are located in the luggage compartment.

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 240*.

Connecting the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal

- ▸ Open the cover for jump starting ⇨ *page 242, fig. 188*.

1. Attach one end of the positive cable (red) to the jump start connection ① ⇨ *fig. 207* on your vehicle.
2. Attach the other end of the positive cable (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal

3. Attach one end of the negative cable (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
4. Attach the other end of the negative cable (black) to the jump start connection ④ on the vehicle.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
- ▸ Now start the engine in your vehicle, which has the drained battery.
- ▸ If the engine does not start: Stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
- ▸ Turn on the rear window defogger in your vehicle in order to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jump start cables. The headlights must be switched off.
- ▸ With the engines running, remove the cables in reverse order of the way they were installed.
- ▸ Close the cover.

WARNING

– Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive vehicle battery terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
– The locking bolts on the battery cells must be tightened securely.
– Keep ignition sources (open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
– If you jump start another vehicle, route the jump start cable so that it does not become caught in moving components in the other vehicle's engine compartment.

Note

Please note that the connecting process previously described for the jump start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump started. If you are jump starting another vehicle, connect the negative cable (–) to a large metal component that is bolted securely to the engine block, or to the engine block itself. If the vehicle battery in the vehicle being jump started is not vented to the outside, there is a risk of explosion due to hydrogen gas.

Tips

Make sure that the connected jump start cables have sufficient contact with metal.

Towing

General information

You should only perform the steps that follow if you have the necessary tools and technical expertise.

Towing requires a certain amount of practice. Audi recommends contacting a towing company to have the vehicle transported.

You should only have your vehicle towed by another vehicle when disabled in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not tow.

Notes on towing

When the engine is stopped, the transmission will not be sufficiently lubricated if traveling at high speeds and long distances: ▸

– The maximum permitted towing speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
– The maximum permitted towing distance is 30 miles (50 km).

Additional information on towing with a tow truck

The vehicle must not be towed with the front axle or rear axle raised. Do not wrap any chains or cables around the brake lines.

Tow bar and towing cable

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or towing cable. Both drivers should be familiar with the special considerations when towing, especially when using a towing cable.

Always make sure the traction force does not exceed the permitted level and there are no shock loading conditions. There is always the risk of the coupling becoming overloaded when driving off-road.

For the most safety and security, drive with a tow bar. You should use a towing cable only if a tow bar is not available. Use a towing cable made of synthetic elastic cable similar elastic material.

WARNING

– Towing highly increases the risk of an accident, for example from colliding with the towing vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not allow anyone to remain inside the vehicle when it is being transported by a tow truck or a special transporter.

Note

– If normal towing is not possible, for example if the transmission is faulty or if the towing distance is greater than 30 miles (50 km), then transport the vehicle on a special carrier.
– If the vehicle is towed by a tow truck at the axle that is not permitted, this can cause severe damage to the transmission.
– The vehicle must not be tow started for technical reasons.

Tips

– If the power supply is interrupted, the selector lever will not move out of the "P" position. The parking lock must be released using the emergency release before towing the vehicle ⇨ *page 73*.
– Follow the local legal regulations for towing.

Towing

Read and follow the important information under ⇨ *page 278*.

Preparations

- ▸ Only secure the towing cable or tow bar at the designated towing loop ⇨ *page 280*.
- ▸ Make sure the towing cable is not twisted. Otherwise it could disconnect from the towing loop while towing.
- ▸ Switch the emergency flashers on in both vehicles ⇨ *page 44*. However, do not do this if it prohibited by law.

Towing vehicle (front)

- ▸ Only start to drive when the towing cable is taut.
- ▸ Be especially careful when accelerating.
- ▸ Avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- ▸ Make sure the ignition is switched on so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that you can use the turn signals, the horn, and the windshield wipers if needed ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ The brake booster only works when the engine is running. Power steering only works when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is rolling [1]. If the brake booster and power steering are not functioning, you must press the brake pedal much harder and use more force to steer.
- ▸ Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 65*. ▶

[1] Requirement: the vehicle battery must have a sufficient charge level.

- ▸ Select the "N" selector lever position.
- ▸ Make sure the towing cable is always taut.

WARNING

Never tow a vehicle using a tow bar or towing cable if the vehicle does not have electrical power.

Front towing loop

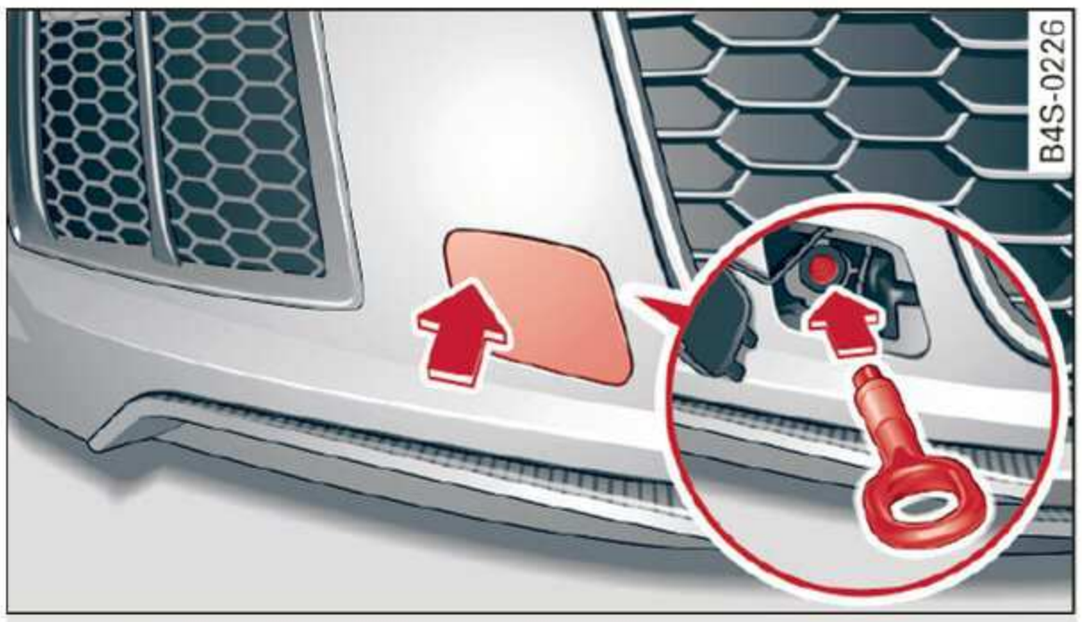


Fig. 208 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 271*.
- ▸ Press the cap inward with brief, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 208*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Replacing fuses

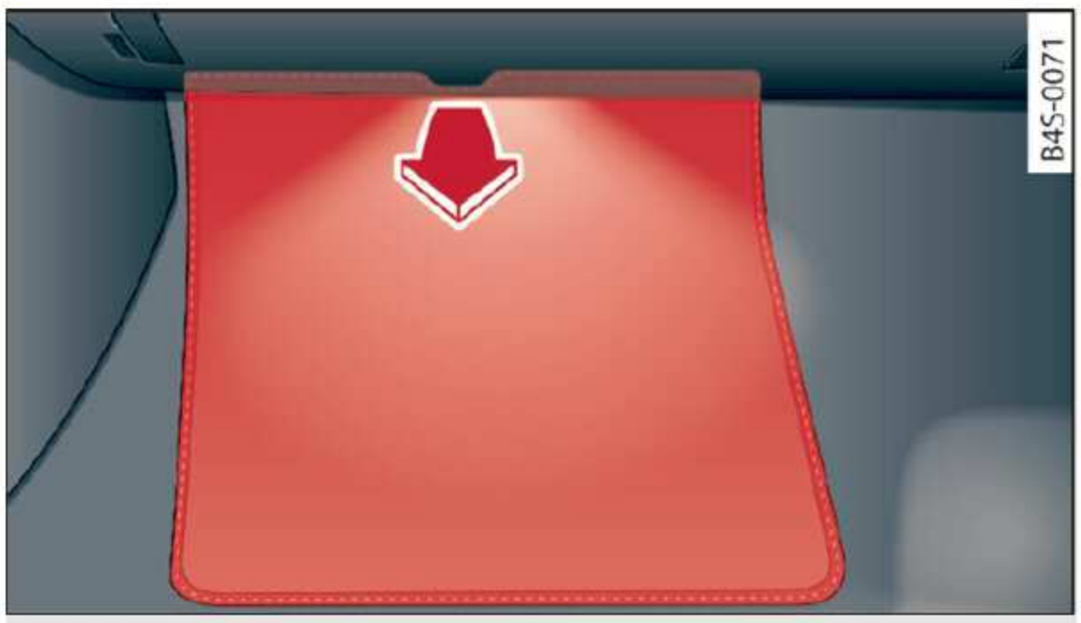


Fig. 209 Front passenger's side footwell: cover

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through. The fuses are located in the front passenger's side footwell behind a cover.

Fuses in the interior

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment ⇨ *page 281*.
- ▸ Fold the floor mat back.
- ▸ Remove the cover ⇨ *fig. 209*.
- ▸ Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clip.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with a fuse that has the same current rating.
- ▸ Reinstall the plastic bracket.
- ▸ Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

- The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
- Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Fuse assignment

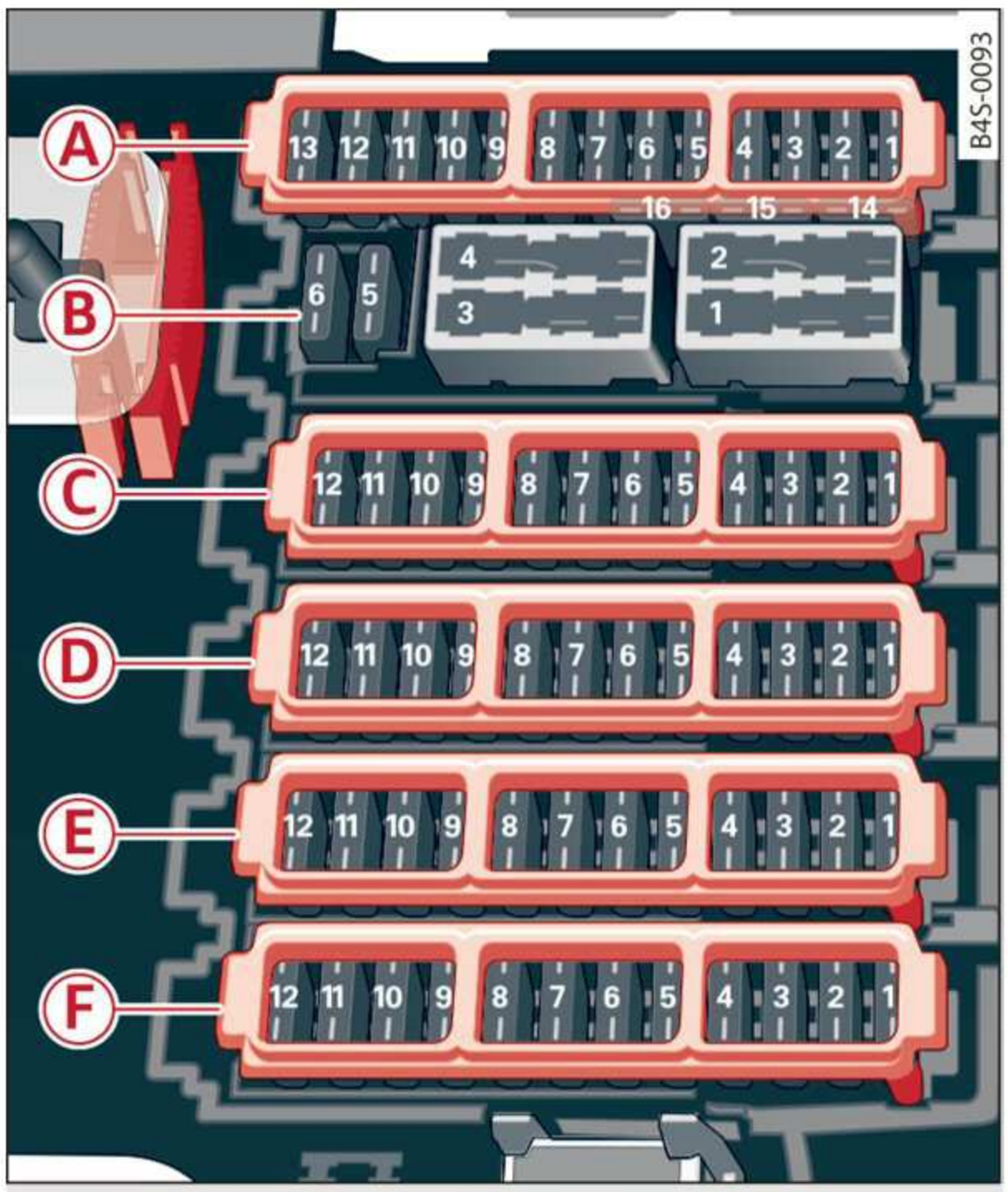


Fig. 210 Front passenger footwell: fuse panel

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Steering column switch module
2	Headliner interior light, Haldex clutch, air-bag, switch panel, steering
3	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
4	Dynamic steering
5	Garage door opener
6	Diagnostic port, light control panel, front central electric system control module
7	Gateway
8	ESC control module
9	Airbag
10	Climate control system, pressure sensor
11	Left LED headlight
13	Right LED headlight
14	automatic dimming rearview mirror
15	Engine start
16	Rear fuse panel

Fuse panel Ⓑ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
3	Climate control system blower fan
4	Front central electric system control module
6	Rearview camera

Fuse panel Ⓒ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Diagnostic connector
2	Electronic parking brake switch
3	Gateway
4	Brake booster
6	Cigarette lighter, sockets
7	Instrument cluster
8	Rear central electric system control module
9	Rear central electric system control module

Fuse panel Ⓓ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
3	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

Fuse panel Ⓓ (red)	
4	Terminal 15
5	Selector lever (automatic transmission)
7	Interior lights
8	Windshield wiper (driver's side)
9	Windshield wiper (front passenger's side)
10	Horn
11	Steering column switch module
12	Light switch

Fuse panel Ⓔ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	ESC control module
2	ESC control module
3	Climate control system
4	Vehicle positioning
5	Left door control module
6	Right door control module
7	Front central electric system control module
8	Front central electric system control module
9	Front central electric system control module
10	Anti-theft alarm system
11	Front central electric system control module
12	Rain/light sensor

Fuse panel Ⓕ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
7	Infotainment unit
8	Infotainment system control module
9	Infotainment system Bluetooth, safety belt microphone
10	Infotainment system sound amplifier
12	Infotainment system Audi music interface

Bulbs

Note

Your vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free headlights and tail lights. However, if a light bulb ▶

needs to be replaced, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Accessories and technical changes

Warranty

Your vehicle is covered by various warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
- Emissions Control System Warranties: *Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Federal Emissions Performance Warranty*
- Applies to: USA models: Kansas Safety Belt Limited Warranty
- Applies to: USA models: California Emissions Control Warranties: *Short-term Emissions Defects Warranty, Long-term Emissions Defects Warranty, TZEV models Emissions Defects Warranty, California Emissions Performance Warranty*

You can find detailed information in your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet and in the California Emissions Booklet*.

Audi Literature Shop

Service information is available as soon as possible after a model is introduced and can be ordered in the Audi Literature Shop: http://literature.audiusa.com

Driving in other countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require motor vehicles to comply with emissions regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles that were produced for the U.S. and Canadian markets are different from vehicles produced for other countries.

If you plan to use your vehicle outside of the United States or Canada, it is possible that:

- Fuel may have a significantly lower octane rating. Unsuitable fuels can cause engine damage.
- Proper maintenance and repair work may not be possible because special service equipment, tools, or measuring devices needed for your vehicle may not be available.
- Replacement parts may not always be available.
- Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries.

Note

Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from these country-specific differences.

Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 229, General information* and ⇨ *page 275, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

Due to the increasing complexity of technology in these vehicles, as well as the safety and environmental standards that apply, you can only perform a very limited amount of repairs and modifications to the vehicle yourself.

Proof of maintenance work may be required to submit a claim within the warranty period.

We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used. This helps to ensure that your vehicle's functionality, performance, and safety are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. Some regular maintenance is required to help ensure that your vehicle runs in a safe, economical, and reliable manner. Please refer to your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet for more detailed information about vehicle maintenance.

When operating the vehicle under more extreme operating conditions, for example when outside temperatures are very low or in very dusty environments, certain maintenance should be performed between the specified intervals. ▶

Usually maintenance and repair work requires special tools, measuring devices, and other equipment that is available to trained vehicle technicians in order to help ensure that your vehicle and all of its systems operate correctly, reliably, and safely. Performing work on the vehicle incorrectly can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may void one or more of your vehicle's warranties.

Technical Modifications

Interference with electronic components, their software, the wiring, and data transfer may cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected, such malfunctions can also impair systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and increased wear of vehicle components.

Some convenience functions, such as the convenience turn signal function, individual door opening function, and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If functions are reprogrammed, the information and descriptions about these functions in this Owner's Manual may no longer apply to the changed functions. Audi recommends that an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility perform and verify any reprogramming procedures.

WARNING

Maintenance procedures, repairs, or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly increase the risk of an accident and can lead to serious injuries.

WARNING

The engine compartment in any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the motor compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer, an authorized Audi Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Note

- Maintenance procedures, repairs or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly can cause damage to the vehicle, such as corrosion.
- If emergency repairs must be performed, take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.
- Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from failure to comply with these guidelines.

For the sake of the environment

- Regular maintenance can help protect the environment.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle can have a negative impact on fuel consumption and vehicle emissions.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners are classified as Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Tips

Because of your vehicle's aluminum body design, all service and repair procedures affecting the body should be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi ▶

Service Facility, who will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Only Audi Genuine Parts are used when Audi experts perform repair or service procedures. Failure to use Audi Genuine Parts or Audi Genuine Accessories or performing repairs incorrectly may result in severe vehicle damage, such as corrosion.

Accessories and parts

Consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before purchasing accessories or replacement parts. We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used.

Audi does not endorse the use of products and accessories that it has not evaluated, even if the product is approved by a certified testing agency or government agency.

WARNING

- Installing unapproved accessories or incorrect replacement parts can cause vehicle damage and can increase the risk of an accident.
- Never attach accessories, such as telephone holders or cup holders, to the airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zone, because this increases the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
- Do not use a license plate bracket on the front bumper that is different from the bracket installed at the factory, and do not attach any additional brackets.

Note

A correctly-installed exterior antenna is required for operating radio equipment in the vehicle. Otherwise, the increased electromagnetic waves can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Observe the regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated and the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying

Audi of America, Inc.
2200 Ferdinand Porsche Drive
Herndon, VA 20171

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; ▶

or write to:

Administrator NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Ave.,
S.E. West Building
Washington, DC
20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

English:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/menu.htm

French:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/menu.htm

Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

Equipment

The following equipment complies with FCC section 15 and RSS-Gen:

– Remote control key
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Tire pressure monitoring system*

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. ▶

4S1012721BA

FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen

This device complies with Industry Canada's licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle identification label

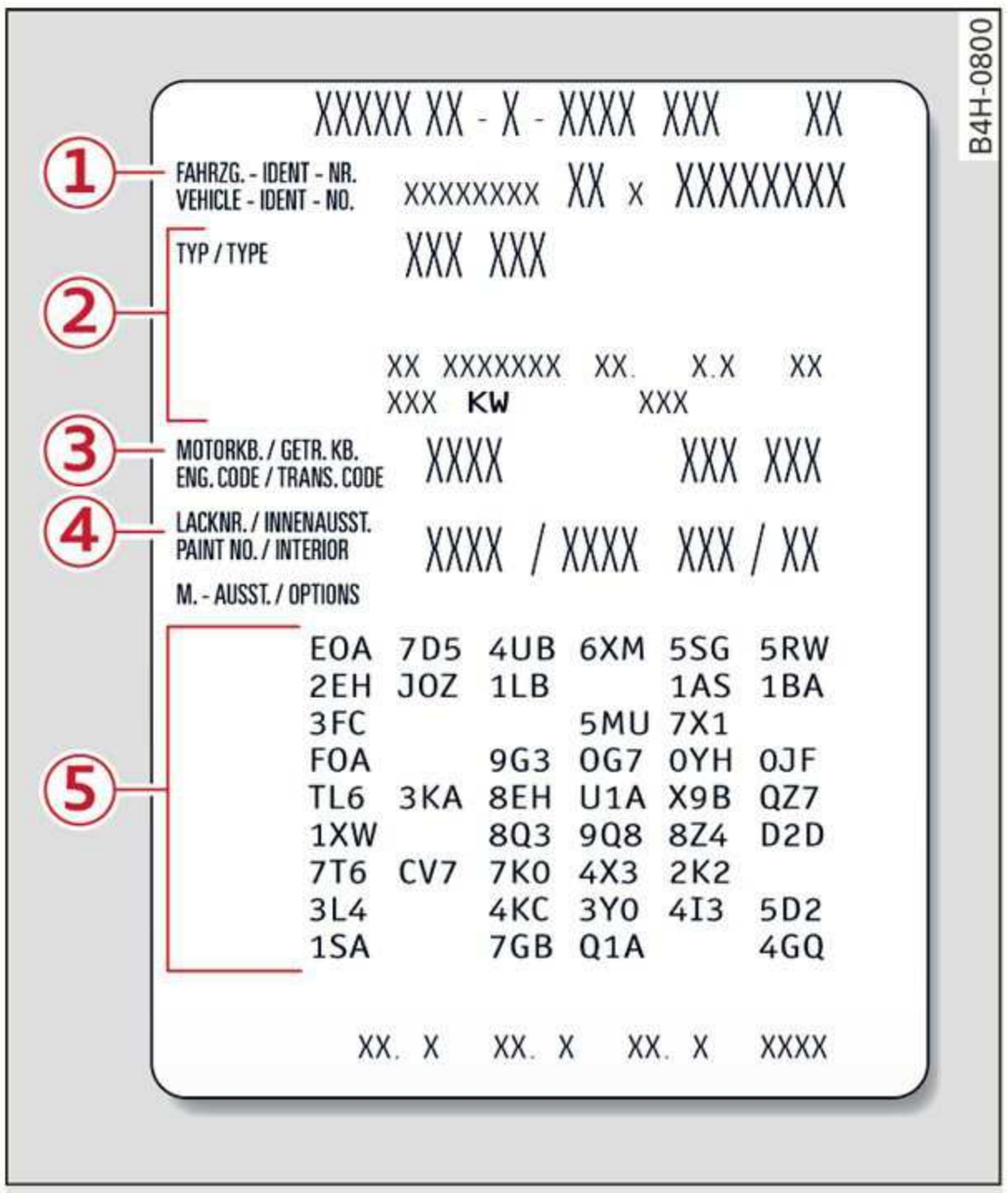


Fig. 211 Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 211* is located near the fuses in the front passenger's side footwell ⇨ *page 281*.

The vehicle identification label information can also be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

1. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
2. Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
3. Engine and transmission codes
4. Paint and interior codes
5. Optional equipment numbers

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The VIN is located in the following areas:

– Select: MENU button > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**.
– On the vehicle identification label
– At the front behind the windshield*
– Under the carpet under the right front seat

Notes about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Any technical data that is missing was not available at the time of printing.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
R8 Coupe	174.4 (4,429)	76.4 (1,940)	80.2 (2,037)	48.7 (1,236)
R8 Spyder	174.4 (4,429)	76.4 (1,940)	80.2 (2,037)	48.9 (1,242)

4S1012721BA

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank, Coupe	19.3 gal (73 L) / 21.9 gal (83 L)
Fuel tank, Spyder	21.1 gal (80 L)
Windshield washer system	3.0 qt (2.8 L)

Weights

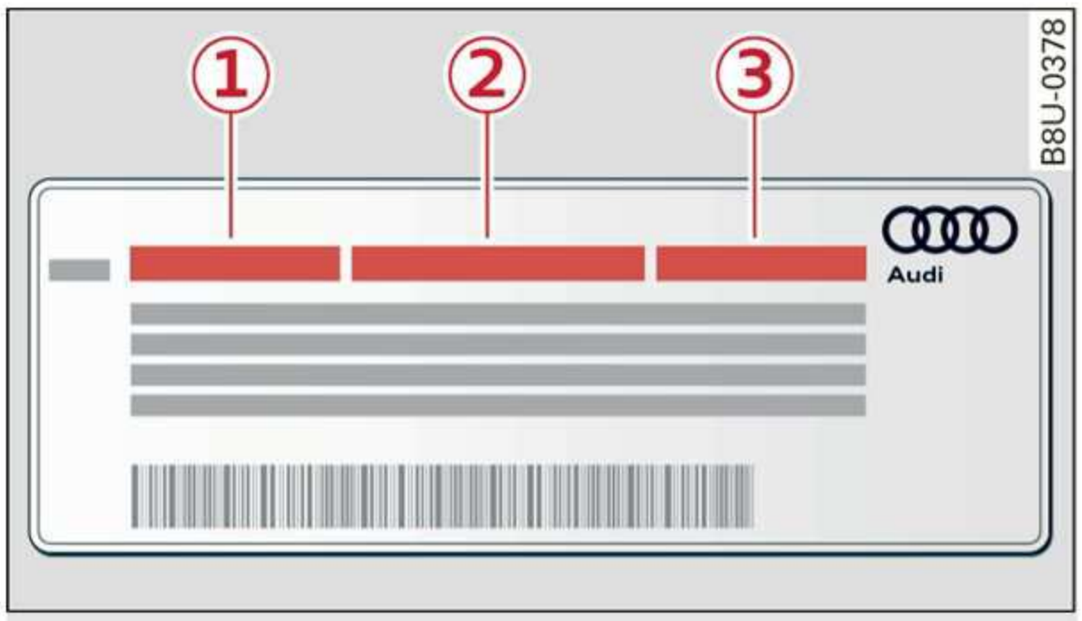


Fig. 212 Safety certificate

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight ① of the vehicle is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle ② or the rear axle ③ is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Load

The maximum permitted load is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

A

A/C (climate control system) 57
Accessories 53, 286
Active rollover protection system 177
  Retracting rollover protection 178
Adaptive light 78
Adaptive light (indicator light) 20
Adjusting the additional display 14
Adjusting the air distribution 57
Adjusting the center console lighting 45
Adjusting the sound 171
Adjusting the temperature 57
Advanced Airbag System
  Children 213
  Components 194
  Front airbags 192
  How the components work together 196
Airbag 187
  Indicator light 17
Airbag system 206
  Advanced Airbag System 191
  Care 201
  Child restraints 213
  Components (front airbags) 194
  Danger of fitting a child safety seat on the front passenger seat 188
  Disposal 201
  Front airbags 191
  How do the front airbags work? 196
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? . 194
  Important information 187
  Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system 204
  Knee airbags 202
  Monitoring 198
  PASSENGER AIR BAG light 199
  Repairs 201
  Safety instructions 200
  Side airbags 204
  Side curtain airbags 207
  Warning/Indicator lights 198
  When must the system be inspected? 198
Alarm system
  refer to Anti-theft alarm system 26
Alignment pin (tire changing) 271
All-weather lights 40
All season tires 259
All wheel drive 89
All wheel drive (indicator light) 20
Alternative routes 138
Ambient lighting 45
AMI
  refer to Audi music interface 155, 156
Android Auto
  refer to Audi smartphone interface 165
Announcements (settings)
  refer to Voice guidance 138
Anti-freeze
  Windshield washer system 242
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 86
Anti-Slip Regulation 86
Anti-theft alarm system 26
Anti-theft wheel bolts 274
Apple CarPlay
  refer to Audi smartphone interface 165
Armrest 52
Aspect ratio (video) 160
ASR
  refer to Anti-Slip Regulation 86
Audi connect
  refer to connect 124
Audi connect Infotainment
  Personal hotspot 125
  Services overview 127
Audi magnetic ride
  refer to Suspension control 78
Audi music interface 155
Audi music stream
  refer to Wi-Fi 129, 153
Audio files 157
Audio player
  Bluetooth audio player 153
  Wi-Fi audio player 153
Audio track 160
Audi phone box 112
Audi smartphone interface 165, 169
Audi virtual cockpit
  refer to Instrument cluster 10
AUTO
  Automatic climate control system 57
  Automatic headlights 40
Auto Lock (central locking) 21

4S1012721BA

Automatic belt retractor 183
Automatic climate control system
refer to Climate control system (automatic) . 57
Automatic post-collision braking system 86
Automatic transmission 67
Launch Control Program 70
Parking lock emergency release 73
Automatic transmission (S tronic)
Emergency program 72
Kick-down 71
Manual shifting 71
Selector lever positions 67
Automatic wiper/washer system 47
Automatic zoom (navigation) 141
AUX input 156
Average fuel consumption 14
Average speed 14

B

BACK button 93
Balance (sound) 171
Band
refer to Frequency band 146
Bass (sound) 171
Battery 240
Charging 242
Winter operation 240
Before driving 173
Better route (navigation) 144
Blower 57
Bluetooth
Audio player 153
Connecting a cell phone 110
Settings 169
Booster seats 218
Brake fluid
Checking the brake fluid level 239
Brakes 88
Brake assist 86
Brake assist system 86
Brake booster 88
Brake fluid 239
Electromechanical parking brake 65
Emergency braking function 65
Indicator lights 16
New brake pads 88
Break-in security feature 26
Breaking in
New brake pads 88
New tires 251
Browser
refer to Media center 158
Bulb failure (indicator light) 19
Bulb replacement 282
Buttons
Control panel (MMI) 93

C

Cable (USB adapter/AUX connector cable) . . 155
California Proposition 65 Warning 230
Battery specific 241
Call list 114
Call options 122
Capacities
Fuel tank 290
Washer fluid reservoir 290
Car key 22
Car wash 265
Catalytic converter 229
Cell phone
Playing music 153
also refer to Telephone 110
Cell phone compartment
refer to Audi phone box 112
Center armrest 52
Central locking 21
Auto Lock 21
Convenience key 24
Convenience opening and closing 29
Mechanically unlocking and locking 26
Remote control key 23
Setting 25
Central locking switch 25
Ceramic brakes 88
Certification 287
Changing light bulbs 282
Charging
refer to Power sources 53
Charging the battery (mobile devices) . 112, 156
Child restraint
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 188

Child restraints
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 224
Child safety 211
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 214
Tether anchors 223
Tether straps 223
Child safety seats 216
Booster seats 218
Convertible child seats 217
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 214
Infant seats 216
Safety instructions 214
Securing 220
Classic view 13
Cleaning 265
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 267
Cleaning Alcantara 268
Cleaning artificial leather 268
Cleaning carbon components 267, 268
Cleaning controls 268
Cleaning decorative parts and trim 267
Cleaning displays 268
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 267
Cleaning plastic parts 268
Cleaning rims 266
Cleaning seat covers 268
Cleaning textiles 268
Cleaning the Audi virtual cockpit 268
Cleaning the instrument cluster 268
Cleaning the tail lights 266
Cleaning the wind deflector 267
Climate control system (automatic) 57
Drive select 78
Clock 167
Closing
Convenience closing 29
Engine compartment lid 231
Luggage compartment lid 27
Windows 28
Cockpit (overview) 6
Color number 289
Coming home 44
Commands (voice recognition system) 104
Compartments 53
Compass in the mirror 49
Compliance 287
Conference call 115
connect 124
Data Privacy 130
Infotainment 124
Infotainment services 126
Connection manager 168
Connections
refer to Media 150, 157
Connection settings 168
Consumer information 284
Consumption (fuel) 15
Contacts 120
Additional directory 169
Importing/exporting 121
Memory capacity 122
Searching 120
Showing details 121
Storing as destination 137
Control buttons 13
Control buttons (operating the MMI) 94
Control knob with joystick function 97
Convenience key 22
Indicator light 61
Unlocking and locking 24
Convenience opening and closing
Setting 29
Windows 29
Convertible child safety seats 217
Convertible locking retractor
Activating 221
Deactivating 222
Using to secure a child safety seat 221
Cooling mode 57
Cooling system
Adding coolant 237, 238
Coolant 236
Coolant level checking 237, 238
Coolant temperature indicator 10
Indicator light 17
Crosshairs 133
Cruise control system 74
Cup holders 53
Current fuel consumption 14

4S1012721BA

D

Data Privacy 130
Data recorder 91
Date 167
Date display 167
Daytime running lights 40
Declaration of compliance 287
Defrosting (windows) 58
DEF (instrument cluster) 10
Deluxe automatic climate control
refer to Climate control system (automatic) . 57
Determining correct load limit 258
Digital compass 49
Digital Rights Management 150
Dimensions 289
Dimming the rearview mirror 46
Directory
refer to Contacts 120
Disposal 284
Distance driven 14
Doors
Mechanically unlocking and locking 26
Driver information system 12
On-board computer 14
Switching views 13
Driver information systems
Energy consumers 15
Drives
refer to Media 150, 157
Drive select 78
Driving safely 173
Driving through water 59
Driving time 14
Driving tips
Efficient driving 59
Driving track 67
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 56
DVD drive (media drives) 151
Dynamic steering 89
Dynamic volume
refer to System volume 171

E

E-mail 118
Economical route 138
EDL
refer to Electronic Differential Lock 86
Electrical system 240
Electromechanical parking brake 65
Electronic Differential Lock 86
Electronic immobilizer 22
Electronic stabilization control (ESC) 86
Sport mode 87
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
Indicator light 18
Emergency assistance 271
Emergency braking function 65
Emergency flashers 44
Emergency operation
Doors 26
Engine compartment lid 231
Luggage compartment lid 28
Power top 35
Emissions control system 228
Energy consumers 15
Energy management 91
Engine
Breaking in 59
Coolant 236
Jump starting 277
Start/Stop system 62
Starting 60, 61
Starting and stopping 61
Engine compartment
Lid emergency release 231
Opening and closing the engine compartment lid 231
Overview 232
Safety precautions 229
Engine compartment lights 45
Engine control (indicator light) 19
Engine data
refer to Sport displays 15
Engine oil
Adding 233
Changing 235
Checking oil level 233, 234
Consumption 233, 234

Indicator light 233
Replacement interval 243
Temperature indicator 15
Engine Start/Stop mode
refer to Start/Stop system 64
Enhanced view 13
Entering characters/numbers (speller) 99
Entering letters (speller) 99
Environment
Unleaded gasoline 226
ESC
refer to Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 86
ESP
refer to Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 86
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 91
Exterior lighting 40
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 45
Dimming 46
Folding settings 25
Heating 45
External voice operation 109

F

Factory default settings (MMI) 168
Fastening
Booster seats 218
Convertible child safety seats 217
Infant seats 216
Fast forwarding and rewinding (audio/video file) 157
Fast forwarding (audio/video file) 157
Fast route 138
Favorites
Media 160
Navigation 133
Telephone 116
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) . 287
File formats (media drives) 162
Floor mats 177
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) 40
Foot pedals 176
Footwell lighting 45
For the sake of the environment
Disposing of engine oil 235
Fueling 227
Leaks 230
Free text search 100
Media 159
Navigation 132
Radio 146
Telephone 120
Freeze protection
Coolant 236
Frequency band 146, 148
also refer to Frequency band 146
Front airbags
Description 191
How they work 196
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . . 181
Front lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 27
Front seats
Adjusting 175
Child restraints in the front seat 188
also refer to Seats 50
Fuel 226
Additives 227
Current fuel consumption 15
Fuel gauge 10, 12
Fuel tank capacity 290
Gasoline 226
Indicator light 19
Saving fuel 78
Saving fuel consumption 59
Fueling
Fuel gauge 12
Fuel tank capacity 290
Opening the fuel filler door 227
Fuses
Assignment 281
Replacing 281

G

GALA
refer to Speed dependent volume control . 171
Garage door opener 29
Garment hooks 54

Gasoline 226
Additives 227
Gasoline mixture 226
GAWR
refer to Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . 290
Global commands (voice recognition system) 105
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . . 246
Glove compartment 54
G meter
refer to Sport displays 15
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 290
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 290
GVWR
refer to Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 290

H

Handsfree 110
Headlight range control system (indicator light) 19
Headlights 42
Cleaning 266
Washer system 47
Heated
Exterior mirrors 45
Rear window 58
Seats 58
Washer nozzles 47
Hexagonal socket 271
High beams
Assistant 43
Hill hold assist 66
also refer to Hill hold assist 66
Home address 133, 136
HomeLink
refer to Garage door opener 29
Horn 6
Hotspot
refer to Wi-Fi 129, 153
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 194
How safety belt pretensioners work 185

I

Ignition (indicator light) 18
Imbalance (wheels) 252
Immobilizer
refer to Electronic immobilizer 22
Important things to do before driving 173
Importing and exporting (contacts) 121
Improperly worn safety belts 185
Indicator lights 7
Airbag system 199
PASSENGER AIR BAG 199
Infant seats 216
Input
Using the MMI touch 95
Using the speller 99
Input level (media) 160
Inspection interval 243
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts 220
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 224
Instrument cluster 10
Messages 16
Operating 12
Service interval display 243
Switching tabs 12
Instruments
Adjusting the lighting 45
Interior lighting 45
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 47
Internet
refer to connect 124
Internet radio 154
iPod
refer to Audi music interface 155, 156

J

Joystick function (MMI) 97
Jukebox 151
Jump starting 277

K

Key 22
Convenience opening and closing 29
Key not recognized 62
Key replacement 22
Mechanical key 22, 23

Messages 61
Replacing the battery 23
Unlocking and locking 23, 24
Vehicle code 22
Key recognition (climate control system) 56
Kick-down (automatic transmission) 71
Knee airbags 202
Description 202
How they work 203
Important safety instructions 204

L

Lap timer 76
Evaluating recorded times 77
Starting 76
Laser lighting 41
Launch Control Program (automatic transmission) 70
Leather care and cleaning 268
Leaving home 44
License agreement (MMI) 172
License plate bracket 286
Lifting points (vehicle jack) 275
Light
High beam assistant 43
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 40
Indicator light 20
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 47
Lighting
Engine compartment lights 45
Exterior 40
Interior 45
Lights
Coming/Leaving home 44
Daytime running lights 40
Engine compartment lights 45
Entry/exit lighting 44
Fog lights/rear fog light(s) 40
Headlight flasher 42
Headlights 42
Interior/reading lights 45
Low beam headlights 40
Parking light 40
Switching daytime running lights on and off . 44
Listening to music
refer to Media 150, 157
Load 290
Locking and unlocking
By remote control 23
With the convenience key 24
Low beam headlights 40
Luggage compartment
Emergency exit 28
Loading 54
also refer to Luggage compartment 54
Luggage compartment lid
Mechanically unlocking 28
Opening and closing 27
Lumbar support 50

M

Maintenance 284
Maintenance intervals 243
Making an emergency call 120
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 229
Map
Functions 140
Map contents 139
Operating 139
Settings 141
Update 131
Mechanical key 22, 23
Media 150, 157
Drives 151
Supported formats 162
Media center 158
Memory capacity
Directory 121
Jukebox 151
Memory card
SD card reader 151
Supported types and formats 162
Memory function 50
MENU button 93
Menu language
refer to Setting the language 167
Menu paths (Owner's Manual) 95
Menus and symbols 101
Messages 117
also refer to E-mail 118

Mirror compass 49
Mirrors
Adjusting the exterior mirrors 45
Dimming 46
Vanity mirror 47
MMI
refer to Multi Media Interface 93
MMI search
refer to Free text search 100
MMI touch 95
Mobile device
refer to Telephone 110
Mobile device reminder signal 167
Mobile hotspot
refer to Personal hotspot 125
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . . 198
MP3
refer to Jukebox 151
Multifunction steering wheel
Buttons 12, 14
Operating 12
Multi Media Interface 93
Music collection
refer to Jukebox 151
Mute 171
also refer to Muting 171
Muting 14
myAudi 126

N

Natural leather care and cleaning 268
NAV/MAP button 131
Navigation 131
Control panel (MMI) 131
also refer to Map 139
NHTSA 286
Number of seats 180

O

Occupant seating positions 174
Octane rating (gasoline) 226
Odometer 11
Resetting 11
OFF (climate control system) 58
Oil
refer to Engine oil 233
On-board computer 14
On/Off knob (MMI) 93
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 229
Online destinations
refer to Point of interest search 134
Online map 142
Online media 154
Online services
refer to connect 124
Opening
Convenience opening 29
Engine compartment lid 231
Fuel filler door 227
Luggage compartment lid 27
Windows 28
Opening and closing
refer to Unlocking and locking 21, 23, 24
Operating
Instrument cluster 12
Multifunction steering wheel 12
Multi Media Interface 94
Voice recognition system 104
Optional equipment number 289
Options menu 94, 97, 98
Overview (cockpit) 6

P

Paint damage 267
Paint number 289
Panic button 23
Panic function 23
Parental control 161
Parking aid 81
Malfunction 85
Parking brake
Indicator light 17
also refer to Electromechanical parking brake 65
Parking light 40
Parking lock emergency release 73
Parking system
Cleaning sensors and cameras 266
also refer to Parking systems 81, 83

Parking systems
Adjusting the display/warning tone 84
Cleaning the rearview camera 83
Parking system plus 81
Peripheral display 81
Rearview camera 83
PASSENGER AIR BAG light 199
Pause (audio/video file) 14, 157
Pedals 176
Perchlorate 284
Performance/torque display
refer to Sport displays 15
Performance mode 79
Peripheral display 81
Personal hotspot 125
Phonebook
refer to Contacts 120
Physical principles of a frontal collision 181
Playback (media) 157
Playlist 159
Point of interest 134
Point of interest search 134
Polishing 267
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 56
Pollutant filter 56
Power
Seat adjustment 50
Seat adjustment (memory function) 50
Power sources 53, 112, 155
Power top 32
Cleaning 267
Closing 32
Convenience closing 33
Convenience opening 33
Emergency operation 35
General information 32
Malfunction 34
Messages 34
Opening 32
Retracting/extending the rear window 35
Wind deflector 34
Power windows 28
Malfunction 29
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 184
Presets list
refer to Favorites 148
Presets (radio) 148
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system 261
Tires 254
Program guide
Radio 147
Programming (steering wheel button) 14
Prompt
refer to Commands (voice recognition system) 103
Proper occupant seating positions 174
Proper safety belt position 184
Proper seating position
Front passenger 175
Occupants 174
Protecting 267
Pyrotechnic elements 284

Q

quattro (all wheel drive) 89
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . . 181

R

Racing bucket seat 51
Radio 146
Additional station information 147
Presets 148
Radio text 147
Radio communications equipment 286
Radio equipment 286
Radio Standards Specification (RSS) 287
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 40
Indicator light 20
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 47
Random
refer to Shuffle 160
Range 14
Reading lights 45

4S1012721BA

Rear spoiler 90
Cleaning 267
Rearview camera
refer to Parking systems 81, 83
Rearview mirror dimming 46
Rear window 35
Rear window defogger 58
Recirculation mode 57
Recuperation 14
Refueling 227
Remote control
Garage door opener 29
Remote control key 22
Convenience opening and closing 29
Key replacement 22
LED 23
Mechanical key 23
Personalization 22
Replacing the battery 23
Unlocking and locking 23
Removing the caps (wheel bolts) 273
Removing the wheel hub covers 273
Repairs 284
Airbag system 201
Replacement key 22
Replacement parts 286
Replacing windshield wiper blades 48
Reporting Safety Defects 286
Reset
refer to Restart (MMI) 172
Restart (MMI) 172
Retractor 183
Reverse gear 67
Rewinding (audio/video file) 157
Rims 258
Ringtone settings 122
Route criteria 137
Route guidance
refer to Navigation 131
Running direction (tires) 276

S

Safe driving 173
Safe driving habits 173
Safety
Airbag system 187
Belts 180
Correct seating position 174
Telephone 110
Safety belt microphone 122
Safety belt position 184
Safety belts worn by pregnant women 184
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal 186
Safety belts 180, 183
Cleaning 268
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 181
Fastening 183
Improperly worn 185
Indicator light 18
Not worn 181
Safety belt position 184
Safety belt tensioner 185
Safety instructions 182
Securing child safety seats 220
Special considerations for pregnant women 184
Unfastening 185
Warning/indicator light 180
Worn properly 182
Safety belt warning light 180
Safety instructions
for side curtain airbags 209
for using child safety seats 214
For using safety belts 182
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 200
Safety systems (indicator light) 17
Saving fuel
Energy consumers 15
Recuperation 14
Scan (radio) 147
Screwdriver 271
SD card reader 151
Search
refer to Free text search 100
Search area (point of interest) 134
Searching for an entry 100
Seat heating 58
Seating capacity 180

Seating position
Driver 174
Front passenger 175
How to adjust the front seats 175
Incorrect seat position 175
Occupants 174
Seats
Adjusting 50
Adjusting bucket seats 51
Correct seating position 174
Number of seats 180
Secondary phone 112, 169
Selecting a source (media) 157
Selection menu 94, 97, 98
Selective door unlocking 21
Selective wheel torque control 86
Selector lever
Selector lever positions 67
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 186
Service interval display 243
Settings
Directory 122
Map 141
Media 160
Navigation 137
Radio 149
System 167
Telephone 122
Wi-Fi hotspot 129
Setting the language 167
Shift light indicator 15
Shift paddles 71
Shuffle 160
Side airbags
Description 204
How they work 206
Side curtain airbags 207
Description 207
How they work 209
Safety instructions 209
SIM card reader 125
Smartphone
refer to Telephone 110
Snow chains 259
Socket
refer to Power sources 53
Software update
refer to System update (MMI) 170
Software (MMI)
License 172
Update 170
Version 170
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 224
Speed dependent volume control 171
Speedometer 10
Speed warning system 74
Speller 99
Sport displays 15
Sport mode 87
Sport view 13
Sporty driving 67
Stabilization program
refer to Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 86
Start/Stop system 62
Engine does not switch off 64
Engine starts automatically 64
Indicator lights 63
Messages 65
Stopping/starting the engine 63
Switching off and on 64
START Engine STOP button 60
START ENGINE STOP (button) 61
Starting to drive 66
Starting (engine) 60
Steering 89
Indicator light 18
Locking 61
also refer to Steering 89
Steering wheel
Adjusting 60
Shift paddles 71
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel 12, 14
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 258
Stopover (navigation) 135
Storage compartments 53
Stored stations
refer to Favorites 148
Streaming
refer to Online media 154

S tronic (automatic transmission) 67
Subtitles (DVD) 160
Sun visors 47
Suspension control 78
Swapping calls 115
Switching daytime running lights on and off . 44
Switching the ignition on 60
Symbols 101
Navigation 139
Traffic 144
also refer to Indicator lights 7
System settings (MMI) 167
System update (MMI) 170
System volume 171

T

Tachometer 10, 11
Technical data 289
Technical modifications 284
Telephone 110
Audi phone box 112
Connecting a mobile device 110
Dialing a number 114
Options during a phone call 115
Settings 122
Temperature display
Coolant 10
Temperature display (outside temperature) . . 11
Tether anchor 223
Tethering
refer to Personal hotspot 125
Tether strap 223
Text messages 117
also refer to Text messages 117
Tightening specification (wheel bolts) 276
Time 167
Tire Mobility System (tire repair set) 271
Tires 244
All wheel drive 89
Low-profile tires 260
Repair set 271
Replacing 273
Service life 252
Tire pressure 254
Tire pressure monitoring system 261
Tire pressure table 255
Treadwear indicators 252
Unidirectional 246, 276
Uniform tire quality grading 260
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 246
Tires and vehicle load limits 256
TMC
refer to Traffic information 144
Tone (sound)
refer to Adjusting the sound 171
Tool 271
Touch
refer to MMI touch 95
Towing 278
Towing loop 271
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system)
Indicator light 263
Tire pressure monitoring system 261
Traffic information 142, 143, 144
Traffic reports 140
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) . . . 72
Treble (sound) 171
Trunk lid
Trunk escape handle 28
Turn signals 42

U

Unfastening safety belts 185
Uniform tire quality grading 260
Unlocking and locking
By remote control 23
Using the lock cylinder 26
With the central locking switch 25
With the convenience key 24
Updating stations (radio) 146
USB charging port 53
USB stick
refer to Audi music interface 155, 156

V

Vanity mirror 47
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 265
Dimensions 289
Identification data 289

Out of service 270
Raising 275
Vehicle battery
Charge level 91
Vehicle care 265
Vehicle control modules 91
Vehicle identification number 289
Vehicle jack 271
Lifting points 275
Vehicle tool kit 271
Version information 170
VIEW button 12
Voice guidance 138
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel 12, 14
Voicemail 119
Voice recognition system 14, 104
Commands 105
External 109
Settings 168
Volume 172
Volume 171
Multifunction steering wheel 14
Voice recognition system 14, 104

W

Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system 198
Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 7
Washer fluid level (indicator light) 19
Washing matte finish paint 265
Wave band
refer to Frequency band 146
Weights 290
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 184
What happens to unbelted occupants? 181
What impairs driving safety? 173
Wheel bolts 258
anti-theft 274
Loosening 274
Removing the cover 273
Tightening specification 276
Wheels 244
Changing 276
Cleaning 266
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 246
Replacing 273
Tire pressure monitoring system 261
Tires and vehicle load limits 256
Wheel wrench 271
When must the airbag system be inspected? .198
Why safety belts? 181
Wi-Fi
Audi music stream 153
Audio player 153
Hotspot settings 129
Online media 154
Personal hotspot 125
Using a hotspot 126
also refer to Wi-Fi 129, 153
Wind deflector 34
Windows
Cleaning/removing ice 267
Convenience opening and closing 29
Defrosting 58
Opening and closing 28
Power windows 28
Windshield
Cleaning 47
Defrosting 58
also refer to Windshield 47
Windshield washer system 47, 242
Reservoir capacity 290
Windshield wipers
Cleaning wiper blades 48
Folding up 48
Indicator light 19
Replacing windshield wiper blades 48
Switching on and off 47
Winter operation
Battery 240
Car washes 265
Cooling system 236
Defrosting the windows 58
Removing ice from windows 267
Seat heating 58
Snow chains 259
Tires 259
Windshield washer system 242

4S1012721BA

Winter tires 259

Z

Zoom (map) 12, 133, 139

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This owner's manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations, and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most current information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 01.2019
4S1012721BA

4S1012721BA

www.audi.com